

Victoria, University of Victoria Libraries, MS Eng.1
Accession No. 1977-005, Drawer 5A/08
John Lydgate's *Fall of Princes* (imperfect)
England s. XIV^{ex}

This document contains transcription of folios [1r-29rb8](#) (Book I.120-Book II.532), [29va39-30rb21](#) (Book II.624-805), [32vb24-37vb11](#) (Book II.1464-2793), [38ra43-44va12](#) (Book II.2962-3731), [42ra42-44va12](#) (Book II.3963-4592), [94rb8-102vb5](#) (Book VI.3501-Book VIII.665), [104va-105va](#) (Book VIII.1170-1463), [109vb5-11rb35](#) (VIII.2662-3129), and [120va60-122vb69](#) (Book IX.2434-3015). Both the transcription and its [textual notes](#) were completed by University of Victoria students as part of coursework for manuscript studies classes with Dr. Adrienne Williams Boyarin, as follows:

- Merida Zeindler, Book I.120-424 (1ra-2ra), December 2015
- Hayden Hayer, Book I.425-866 (2rb-3rb), December 2015
- Justin Head, Book I.867-1001 (4ra-4va), December 2015
- Ashley Augustus, Book I.1002-3157 (4va-12rb), plus additional editing and textual notes for Book I.120-1001, April 2015 and April 2016
- Mahsa Ebadpour, Book I.3158-3843 (12rb-14vb), December 2016
- Quinton Yates, Book I.3844-4557 (14vb-17va), December 2016 and April 2019 (*N.B.: half of this work was done for a Medieval Studies class taught by Stephanie J. Lahey.*)
- Duncan Calveley, Book I.4558-5037 (17va-19rb), December 2016
- Jordan Wille, Book I.5038-5551 (19rb-21rb), December 2016
- Joe Hansen, Book I.5552-5662 (21rb-22va), April 2021
- Kira Keir, Book I.5663-5853 (21vb-22ra), April 2021
- Josie Wendling, Book I.5854-5901 (22va), April 2021
- Emma Arps, Book I.5902-6335 (22va-24rb), December 2022
- Nasstasia Ellefsen, Book I.6336-6734 (24rb-25vb), April 2021
- Krystafer Carrol, Book I.6735-6832 (25vb-26ra), December 2023
- Lorna McVey, Book I.6833-Book II.161 (26rb-27vb), December 2016
- Gwendolyn Jamieson, Book II.162-532 (27vb-29rb), April 2021
- Josie Wendling, Book II.624-805 (29va-30rb), April 2021
- Tanvir Parhar, Book II.1464-1666 (32vb-33va), April 2021
- Shianne Adams, Book II.1667-1898 (33va-34rb), December 2023
- Catriona Duncan, Book II.1899-2338 (34rb-36ra), April 2016
- Emma Robertson & Maria Ross, Book II.2339-2548 (36r-36vb), December 2018
- Mikkel Klausen, Book II.2549-2793 (36vb-37vb), April 2021
- Emma Robertson & Maria Ross, Book II.2962-3346 (38r-39v), December 2018
- Sage Dunn-Krahn, Book II.3347-3731 (39vb-41rb), April 2021
- Pascale Cadieux-Johnson, Book II.3963-4263 (42ra-43rb), April 2021
- Jay Becker, Book II.4264-4592 (43rb-44va), December 2022
- Sky Dragushan, Book VI.3500-Book VII.45 (94rb-95vb) and Book VII.278-319 (95vb), December 2022
- Orion Denroche, Book VII.46-277 (95ra-95vb), December 2022
- Hailey Brown, Book VII.320-928 (95vb-98ra), December 2022
- Julia Peasland, Book VII.929-1663 (98ra-100va), December 2022
- Karine Hack, Book VIII.1-665 (100va-102vb), December 2018
- Colleen Bidner, Book VIII.1170-1463 (104va-105va), December 2022
- Dayne Pettyjohn, Book VIII.2662-3129 (109vb-111rb), December 2023
- Zoe Nilson, Book IX.2434-2510 and 2728-3015 (120vb-121vb), December 2023
- Megan Kazakoff, Book IX.2511-2727 (122ra-vb, end of manuscript), December 2016

To his name non increce of glorie
To remembre no cronicle nor storie
But þeis þat ben for þeir merite notable
Auctorized famose and commendable
¶ In his labour hauyng a delite
That the maitier gretelie myght availe
Do plesaunce to the comyn profite
Of notable stories to make rehersall
Shewyng a myroure hough all þe world shall fayle
And hough fortune for all þeier high renoune 160
Hath vpon princes Iuridiccioun

¶ The which thyng in ful sobre wyse
He considred in his inwarde intente
In his reson began to aduertise
Seyng of princes þe blynd intendement
With wordlie worshipes hough þei be blent
As þei shuld euer þeire estatez kepe
And as fortune wer layde on slepe
¶ As thei hadde of fortune the maistrise
Hyr enchauntid with þeir pacience 170
By sum crafte of new sorcerie
Or by power [o]f incantancioun
To make stable þeir dominacioun
With Iren cheynes for to laste longe
Lokked to Rokkes of adamaunt stones

¶ Supposyng in their surquedie
Their estatez shulde be durable
But fortune began frowardlie denie
Pleinelie preve þat þei be chaungeable
And to princes for thei be not stable 180

[1r, col. b]

ffortune full oft for all their grete estate
Vnwarlie chaungeth and seith to them chekmate
¶ ffor lordes sume in their magnificence
Of Roiall power set of godde right nowght
They wyl not considre his longe pacience
No[r] aduertiseth his power in their thought
Bu[t] in their hertes if it were well sought
Hough he is meke and pacient to abide
They wolde of reson þeire pompe ley on syde
¶ But for their taryng and þeir negligence 190
That þei to [hym] wyl not resort agayn
Yit of his m[erci]e and his beneuolence
Withoute veng[eau]nce rigour or disdeigne
As a meke fadre in all his werkes pleine
Assaieth his yerde of castigacioun
So for to bringe them to correccioun

¶Som he can ful fadrelie chastise
Where he loveth by punysshing of seknes
And of his mercy many a ~~sonire~~ ^another^ wyse
Bathuertise of som wordlie distresse 200

And he not asketh for his kyndnes
^of^ High ne lowe · who so can aduerte
Noon othyr tresour · but oonly a mannes hert

¶And as myn auctour liste to comprehende
This John Bochas by grete auctorite
It is almes to correcte and amende
The vicius folke of euery comenalte
And by examples which þat notable be
Of princes holde þat whilom did fall
The lowere peple from ~~them~~ ^theire^ errour calle 210

¶By smale whelpes · as som clerkys write
Chastysed is the myghty force lio[un]
And whan the sworde of vengeaunce eke doth bite
Vpon *princes* for their transgressioun
The comyn peple in their opinion
ffor verray drede tremble doon *and* quake
And by suche meanes þeir vices doon forsake

¶And such also · as haue ben defoilede
In their vices by longe continuance
Or in their synnes rustid and emoulyde 220
By good example may com to temperance
Who hym repenteth the lorde wil hym avaunce
And hym accepte in high *and* lowe estate
The meke preferre · punyssh the obstinate

¶This said matier touchyng such thynges
Myn auctour Bochas here aftyr shal declare
By example of *princes* and of myghty kynges
What was þeir fine · and not the truthe spare
And thof my stile naked be and bare
In rethorik myn auctour for [to] sewe 230
Yit for the truthe shal I not remewe

¶But on the substance by goode leysir [abide]
Aftyr myn auctour lyk as I may attein[e]
And for my parte set eloquence [aside]
And on his booke bewepen and [compleyne]
Thassaut of fortune frowarde and [sodeyne]
Hough she in *princes* hath kid h[ir variaunce]
And of hir malice þe dedelie mortall ch[auce]

¶But · o · alas · Who shal be muse

[1v, col. a]

Or vnto whom shal I for helpe calle 240
Calliope my callyng wyl refuse
And on Pernaso hyr worthi sustren all

Thei wyl theire sugre tempre with no gall
 ffor then swetnes *and* lusty fressh syngyng
 fful ferre discordeth fro matiers compleynyng
 ¶ My maistre Chaucer with his fresh comedies
 Is dede alas chefe poete of Britaine
 That whilom made ful pietus tragedies
 The fall of *princes* he did also compleine
 As he þat was of makyng souereigne 250
 Whom all this londe shuld of right *preferre*
 Sith of oure language he was þe lode sterre
 ¶ Senec in Rome · thirgh his high prudence
 Wrote tragedies of grete moralite
 And Tullius of Retorik þe chefe welle
 Made in his tyme many a fressh dite
 ffrancise petrark of fflorence þe cite
 Made a boke as I can reherce
 Of · two fortunes wylfull and *peruerse* ·
 ¶ Agayn both wrote ij· remedies 260
 In bokes tweine made a diuisioun
 Among rehersyng many fressh stories
 The fyrste boke is thus conueyed downe
 A dialoge · betwene gladnes *and* resoun
 The secund can bere me wele witnes
 Made betwen reson *and* worldlie hevines ·
 ¶ The matier is right wondre delectable
 Though wo with ioye haue an Interesse
 And John Bochas wrote matiers commendable
 The fall of *princes* where he doth *expresse*
 Hough from þeire Ioye they fell in grete distres 270
 And all other writers thirgh þer famus renoune
 Grete worship did vnto this nacioun
 ¶ And semleable as I haue tolde toforne
 My maistre Chaucere did his besynes
 And in his dayes hath so well hym borne
 Oute of oure tonge to auoide all rudnes
 And to reforme it with colours of swetnes
 Wherefor let vs yeve hym laude *and* glorie
 And put his name with poetes in memorie
 ¶ Of whos labour to make mencion 280
 Wherethurgh he shuld of right commendid be
 In youth he made a translacioun
 Of a booke which called is Trophe
 In lumbarde tonge as men may rede *and* se
 And in oure vulgare longe or þat he diede
 Gafe it the name of Troilus and Cresseide
 ¶ Which for to rede lovers them delite
 Thei have þerin so grete deuocion
 And this poet also hym self to quite 290

Of Boeces booke the consolacion
 Made in his tyme an hole translacion
 [A]nd to his sonne þat called was lowys
 [He] made a tretis full noble *and* of grete price
 ¶[V]pon this booke in ful notable forme
 [S]et them in ordre with their diuisions
 [M]en wittes to applie and conforme
 [To un]drestand by expert reso[ns]
 [Be do]myfyng of sundrie mansiones
 [Th]e rote oute sought at þe ascendent 300
 [To]forne or he gave eny iugement
 ¶[He] wrote also many days agon

[1v, col. b]

In englissh hym self so doth expresse
 The pietus story of Ceyx and Alcion
 And the deth eke of Blonche the duchesse
 And notable did hys bysynes
 By grete avice his wittes to dispose
 To translate þe romanes of the rose
 ¶Thus in vertu he set all his intent 310
 Idlenes and vices for to fle
 Of foules also he wrote the parlement
 Therin remembryng of royall egles thre
 Hough in their chase þei felt aduersite
 To for nature proferd þe bataile
 Eche for his partie yef it [w]olde availe
 ¶He did also his diligence and p[eyne]
 In oure vulgare to translate an[d] endite
 Origene vpon the magdalene
 And of the lion a booke he did write 320
 Of Armelida e and of fals Arcite
 He made a compleint dolefull and piet[us]
 And of the broche which þat Vulcanous
 ¶At Thebes wrought full diuerse of nature
 Ovide writeth who þerof hadde a sight
 ffor high desire he shuld not indure
 But he it hadde neuer be gladde ne light
 And yf he hadde it onys in his myght
 Lyke as my maistire saith *and* writeth in dede
 It to conserue · he shulde ay lyve in drede
 ¶This poet wrote at request of the quene 330
 Of goode women to fynde oute nyntene 332
 That did excelle in beaute and feyrnes
 But for his labour and bysynes
 Was importable his wittes to encombre
 In all this worlde to fynd oute so grete a noubre
 A legend of parfite holynes 331

¶ He made a booke of Cantrebury tales 337
 When the pilgrimes rode on pilgrimage
 Thurghoute kent by hylles and by vales
 And all the stories tolde in their passage 340
 Endited them full well in oure language
 Summe of knyghthode summe of gentillez
 And summe of love and summe of parfitnes
 ¶ And summe also of grete moralite
 Summe of disporte includyng grete centence
 In prose he wrote þe tale of Melibe
 And of his wyf þat called was Prudence
 And of Grysilides of parfite pacience
 And hough þe monk of stories newe and olde
 Pitevous tragedies by the way tolde 350
 ¶ This saide poet my maistre in his dayes
 Made and compiled ful many a fresh dite
 Compleintez ballades Roundell *and* virrelayes
 fful delectable to here and to se
 ffor which men shuld of right and equite
 Sey he of english in makyng was þe beste
 Pray we vnto godde to yeve his soule gode reste
 ¶ And theis poetes I make of mencion
 That were be olde tyme hadde grete ~~deyn~~ deynte
 With kynges princes in euery region 360
 Gretely *preferrede* aftyr their degre

[2r, col. a]

ffor lordes hadde plesaunce for to se
 To studie emonge and to caste their lokes
 At goode leyser vpon wyse bookes
 ¶ ffor in the tyme of Cesar Iulius
 [W]han he the triumphe wann in Rome town
 [H]e entre wolde þe Scole of Tullius
 [A]nd here his lecture of grete affeccioun
 [A]nd notwithstanding his conquest *and* renoune
 [Vn]to bookes he gave grete attendaunce 370
 [An]d had in ~~seeor~~ stories ioy *and* grete plesaunce
 ¶ [E]k[e] in this lande I dare afferme a thyng
 [Ther] is a prince ful myghty of puisaunce
 [A] kynges son and vncler vnto the kyng
 [Hen]ri the Sexte which is now in ffraunce
 [An]d is lewetenaut *and* hath the gouernaunce
 [Of] oure Breteine thurgh whos discrecioun
 [He h]ath *conserued* in this Region
 ¶ [Dury]ng his tyme of full high prudence
 [Pes] and quiete · and susteineth right 380
 [Yit] not withstandyng his noble *providence*
 He is in deede preved a goode knyght

Iede as Argus with reson and foresight
Of high lecture I dare of hym eke telle
And trulie deme þat he doth excelle
¶ In vndrestondyng all oþer of his age
And hath grete ioye with clerkes to comyn
And no man is more experte of language
Stable in studie all way he doth continue
Setting on syde all chaunges of fortune 390
And where he loveth yf I shal not tarie
Withoute cause ful loth he is to varie

¶ Duk of Gloucestre men this duke ^prince^ calle
And not withstandyng his state his dignite
His corage neuer doth appalle
To studie in bookes of antiquite
Therin he hath so grete felicite
Vertueslie hym to occupie
Of vicius slouth he hath the maistrie

¶ And with his prudence and his manhode 400
Trowth to susteine · he favour set asyde
And holy chyrch maintenynge in dede
þat in this lande no lollarde dare abide
As verrey support vpholdar and eke gyde
Spareth non but make hym self stronge
To punish all þoo þat doon þe chyrch wronge

¶ Thus is he ^both^ manlie and eke wyse
Chosen of godde to be his own knyght
And of oon thyng he hath a singler price 410
That heretik noon dare comm in his sigh
In cristes feith he stand so hoole vpryght
Of holy chyrch defence and Champion
To chastise ^all^ þoo · þat do þerto treson

¶ And to do ples[a]unce to oure lorde Ihesu
He studieth euer to haue intelligence
Redyng of bookes bryngeth in vertu
Vices excludyng slouth and negligence
Maketh a prince to haue experience
To know hym self in many sondre wyse
Wher he trespasseth · his errour to chastise 420

¶ And emonge bookes pleinlie þus þe case
This sayde prince considred of reson
The noble boke of this Iohn Bochas
Was acordyng in his opinion

[2r, col. b]

Of grete nobles and reputacion
And to princes greteli necessarie
To yeve example hough þis world doth varie
¶ And for this cause in his intende

To shew the vntruste of all worldlie þinges
 He gave me in *commandment* 430
 As # hym semyd it was right wel sitting
 That I shuld aftyr my cunning
 This booke *translate* · hym to do plesaunce
 To shewe the chaunge of worldlie variance
 ¶ And with the supporte of his magnificence
 Vndre the wynges of his correccioun
 Thof þat I haue lake of high eloquence
 I shal procede in this translacion
 ffro me avoidyng all presumpcion
 Louly submittyng euery oure and space 440
 My rude language to my lordes grace
 ¶ And as I haue oon þing well in mynde
 He bad I shulde in especiall
 ffolow myn auctour writen as I fynde
 And for no fauour be nothyng partiall
 Thus I mene to speke in generall
 And noon estate singlerlie depraue
 But þe sentence of myn auctor saue
 ¶ All this conceived I gan my stile dresse 450
 Thof I wolde in my matier *procede*
 And for the matier obreyed on hevynes
 Off fresh colours I toke no *maner* heede
 But my *processe* pleinlie for to leede
 As me semyd it was to me moste neede
 To set apart of rethorikes swete ·
 ¶ Dites of mornyng and of compleynyng
 Not apparteine vnto Calliope
 Nor to the Muses þat on Parnaso syng
 Which be remembred in noumbre thrys thre ·
 And vnto matiers of aduersite 460
 With their sugred aureate liquour
 They be not wyllly for to do fauour
 ¶ But of disdeigne me setting ferre abak
 To hyndre me of þat I wolde endite
 Havyng no coloures but onlie whit *and* blak
 To the tragedies which I shal write
 And for I can my selfe no bettyr aquite
 Vndre supporte of all þat shall it rede
 Vpon Bochas right þus I wyll *procede*
**Explicit prologus · Et incipit prima Tragedia
 de Casu Adam Prothoparentis**
 Whan Iohn Bochas considred had *and* sought 470
 The woful fall of myghty *conqueros*
 A remembrance entred in his thought
 Reknyng the noumbre of oure *predecessoures*
 And fyrste to mynd com the progenitoure

Of all mankynd ferre Ironne in age
 And towarde hym holdyng þeir passage
 ¶As hym thought in his inward sight
 In their coming full pitevouslie tremb[lyng]
 Quakyng for age and lak of myght
 There grete febles by signes *and* shewyn[g] 480
 And oon of them first at þere *commyn*[g]
 Our fadre Adam sodenlie abrayed
 And to myn auctor ~~Eue~~ euen thus [he sayed]
 ¶Cosyn Bochas I wyl well þat þu lere
 Þu þat arte bysy to serche onto ouer a[l]

[2v, col. a]

Of infortune the maner to inquire
 Hyr soden chaunge turnyng as a ball
 Of erthlie princes from the estate royall
 It is moste fityng or we asondre twynn 490
 At vs tweine þi processe þer begynne
 ¶Considre fyrst þe lorde in his advice
 When he vs made vnto his lyknes
 He put vs both into paradise
 Ther to haue lyuen in *parfite* stablenes
 Tyl the *serpent* did hys bysynes
 Of fals envie to make vs lese oure grace
 Perpetuelly to exile vs from þat place
 ¶And when Iohn Bochas naked them beheld
 Withoute þe hande ~~na~~ maked of nature 500
 Of slyme of the erth in damascene þe felde
 Godde made them feyrest aboue iche creature
 And for thei shuld *perpetuallie* indure
 By discrecion for a prerogitiue
 He induede them with a soule of lyfe
 ¶Perfite of age as men of xxx^{ti} yere
 Put them aftyr in possession
 Of paradise a place moste entiere
 And of delicez a chosen mansion
 Wher Adam made an imposicion 510
 To ffyssh and foule and to bestes all
 Of verrey reson · what men shuld them call
 ¶Oute of a ribbe while þat Adam slepe
 Eue was drawe ful fayre of hyr visage
 All sodenlie or þat he toke kepe
 Aftyr to hym ioyned in mariage
 ffor his disporte and for his avauntage
 So as the lorde fyrste vyues did ordeiyne
 Outhir for helpe or for increce of peine
 ¶Godde onto them yaue the *souereiynete*
 Of paradise and dominacion 520

A place fulfilled of all felicite
 The frutez all in there subieccion
 Saue þat of oon was made excepcion
 Which godd badde þe Bible can deuise
 Þat thei shuld touche it in no wyse
 ¶ All delicez of þat heuenlie place
 God gaue to them and put in their kepyng
 To vse them in eny oure and space
 To þeire moste ese as was to þem lykyng
 ^[Bloomys] blossomes þer fayrnes ay kepyng^ 530
 And the frute all way of oon freshnes
 ffor wyntre stormes might do them no duresse
 ¶ The soile enbrowded ful of somyr floures
 Ther wedes wekked hadde noon interesse
 ffor godd and kynde with freshnes of coloures
 And with their tapitez and motleis of gladnes
 Had made þat place habounde in all swetnes
 And fresh flora · which us of floures quene
 Hyr liste made of a *perpetuel* grene
 ¶ The trees raughten almoste to the heuyn 540
 Which caste aboute a ful plesaunt shade
 Þat storme ne reyne thondre wynde ne levyn
 No powere hadde þeir leues for to fade
 ffor euer þei were eliche fressh and glade
 [A]nd when þei þer þei might see
 Mydde of þere gardenie of lyfe þe holsom tre
 [¶] Which vertu hadde agayn all maladie
 ffolke to preserue of youth in þeir freshnes
 [W]ho ete þerof shulde neuer die
 [But] euer lyve in ioy and gladnes 550
 [An]d nethir feele trouble ne seknes
 [But] in þat place haue all weye hertes ese
 [And] su]ffisaunce of all þat might þem plese ·

[2v, col. b]

¶ Euer endure and neuer falle in age
 ffor which it was called the tre of lyf
 But when Adam was fallen in dotage
 And ageyn godde gan holden stryfe
 Thurgh þe excityng of hyr þat was his wyfe
 And wyfully gaue to hyr assent
 To breke þe precepte and commaundment 560
 ¶ Of godde the lorde thurgh wyfull negligence
 To approche the tre þat bare no name 562
 ffor of the frute who did atame 564
 He sothelie shulde the bible seith þe same
 Of goode and evyll haue cunnyng in hi[s thought]
 The tre of cunnyng *and* also of science 563

Wher as befor of evyl [he] knew right no[wght] 567
 ¶ Thus hadde thei fyrste of euyl experienc[e]
 Where as befor þei knewe no wykkydne[s]
 Presumpcion and Inobedienc 570
 Brought them from ioy in to wrechedn[es]
 ffor afor tyme myn auctour bereth w[itnes]
 Helthe and goodnes were called verre[y lyf]
 Euel named seknes fyrst rote of all oure [stryf]
 ¶ In paradise myn auctour seith certeine
 The ryuers were so orient and fyne
 Lyk quyksyluer vpboylyng on the pleyne
 And in their rennyng verrey cristalline
 Which from a well heuenlie and diuine
 In their vpspryngyng *and* þeire avalyng down 580
 Of all plesaunce gaue so swete a sown
 ¶ That it wold rauissh a corage
 Whos bawmy liquour endewede all þe place
 And with the freshnes and cours of his passage
 The holsum e aer hertes did embrace
 Ther was such plente of plesaunce *and* of grace
 That every spice herbe greine and rote
 Were founde growyng in þat gardenn soote
 ¶ Ther was also a delectable sown
 Of songe of byrdes in their armonie 590
 The aer was clene frome all corrupcioun
 ffor þerin engendred was no maladie
 Ther was all myrth þer was all melodie
 Of ioye and blys soueraigne suffisaunce
 With all þat may to hertes do plesaunce
 ¶ And of clerkys lyk as it is tolde
 In their bookes lyke as thei determ[i]ne
 Hough in his spere the sunne manyfolde
 Was of more vertu *and* more clere did shyne
 Then it doth nowe in his mydday lyne 600
 The mone whitter with hyr bemys clere
 And euery sterre bryghter did appere
 ¶ Euery thyng was þer more vertuus
 Pan þei be now who can beholde and se
 ffor in þat place þer was no thyng noyus
 But parfite gladnes knytte vnto surte
 Perpetuel pes ioy and prosperite
 And in þat blys to maken more stronge
 To þeire comfort godde spake with þem among
 ¶ Of his goodnes he bare þem companie 610
 Shewyng vnto them his gracios presence
 Aungels also þeir state to magnifie
 Amonge to serue them did þeir diligence
 In diuerse officz with humble reuerence

And nature wrought for þe nones
Of ryall purple and of Rya~~ll~~ rych stones ·
¶Tyssues ^of^ golde · and oþer oþyr ^ornamentes^ ~~climat~~ ordinaunce

[3r, col. a]

ffor tenviron þere bodilie beaute
[S]hapyng to þem such manner of garnementes
As anngels vse in their felicity 620
[N]akede thei were fayrest on to se
[f]for while thei stode in state of Innocence
[Th]ey hadde of clothyng noon experience
¶[An]d of their blys to mak mencion
[And] of their ioies þat were celestiall
[Ther] may be made no comparison
[Of] noo ioy which is temporall
[Whic]h shoulde haue bien lastyng *and* imortall
[Euer t]o haue lyved in myrth and gladnes
[Sauff] agayn reson of verrey wylfulnes 630
¶[Thei] banshid them self out of þat blysful lyfe
[Whan] Adam gave credence to a snake
[And w]recched[li]e gan truste to his wyfe
[Which g]an an appil of the serpent take
[And pl]esauntlie did a present make
[Onto] Adam as she þat fyrste began
[Deth t]o devise a poyson un to man
¶[Bu]t as þere ioye was incomparable
[Gre]ttest þeire lordeship above al erthly þing
So þeire fall was to them importable 640
ffor he þat was ^ouer^ ~~ouer~~ all oþer suremountyng
In paradise reignyng as a kyng
Was it not a dedelie mortall peine
ffro þat place to haue a fall sodeine
¶ffor þat sorowe surmountith all sorowe
Which nexte foloweth aftyr felicity ·
No wo more grevous at euen ne at morowe
As is in dede soden aduersite
Which comyth vnwarlie aftyr prosperite
Nor no thyng more may hertys disavaunce 650
Then of olde ioye newe remembraunce
¶Taketh example of Adam *and* of Eue
Maketh of them a mirroure in youre mynde
Where of reson it dide them gretlie greve
ffor to be put allas so ferre behynde
Oute of þat blys þei and all þeire kynde
Chaungyng þe state of immortalite
And become subiecte to deth *and* pouerte ·
¶Theire soden chaunge *and* þer vnwar myschefe
And þeir vnhappy transmutacioun 660

It was to them full vncouth *and* vnlefe
 ffor to departe from þat mansion
 That was so ful of delectacion
 ffro such delicez sodenlie to go
 In to this worlde · which is so full of woo
 ¶ Ther is delite and here is sorow and care
 Ther is ioy and here is heuynes
 Ther is plente and here is euyl fare
 Ther is helth and here is grete seknes
 Here is trouble ay ment with oure vnsure gladnes 670
 Ther is ay bly[s] and eternall glorie
 And here is no myrth but fals and *transitorie*
 ¶ Allas hough were þei blyndid in þeire sight
 Thurgh veineglorie and fals ambicion
 Thei we[n]t wronge þei lokyd not aryght
 ffals couetise was þeire confusion
 Wher thurgh þei lost þe dominacion
 Of paradise · and wex both pore and and thrall
 Theire fredam lefte and become mortall
 ¶ On to godde þei wolde haue ben sembleable 680

[3r, col. b]

Lyke vnto hym godde and evyll knowe
 And in theire truste for þei were not stable
 ffrom þeire estate þei wer brought ful lowe
 And þus þe seede was fyrste isowe
 The rote plantid of disobeisaunce
 Which brought oure linage to sorow *and* mischaunce
 ¶ Thus cam in fyrste by inobediencie
 As by agate pouerte and nede
 And at þeire bak folowed indigence 690
 Sorow seknes maladie and drede
 Exile banashyng and *seruitute* in dede
 Which caused man longe to continue
 Vndre þe lordeshyp and daunger of fortune
 ¶ Thus cam in eke maladie and deth
 To dispoile man of his beaute
 Longe seknes and pestilence þat sleth
 By soden stroke which no man may fle
 ffor vnto Adam and his posterite
 Deth was annexed by succession 700
 ffor his offence · and so conueied dovne
 ¶ ffro man to man and euery maner age
 ffor who liste knowe syn brought in shame
 Man to be feble and feint in his passage
 And so by processe to wex halt and lame
 Vn to Adam þis was an vncouth game
 To be constreined from riche apparaile

In baren erth s to seeke his vitaile
 ¶ In hungre and thyrste here he ledde his lyfe
 With swete and labour and tribulacions
 Endured also many mortall stryfe 710
 Of hote and colde right stronge passiones
 Of elementes soden mutacions
 Wynde hayle *and* reine ferfully fallyng
 And vnware strokes of thondir *and* lightnyng
 ¶ Thei stode also in daunger and in drede
 Of cruell bestys Tigres and lions
 Of Tusshie bores who so taketh hede
 And in grete fere of theys fell Dragons
 Thasaut of serpentis and of Scorpions
 ffor thoo bestis þat afforn wer wylde 720
 Aftyr þeire synnyng · ful rage were *and* wylde
 ¶ And wher þei stode fyrste in sicurnes
 Of ioye and blys euer in on lastyng
 Oute of their reste þei fell in vnurnes
 In sorowe and sighyng and dolourus pleynyng
 And from ies continually wepyng
 The bittyr terys dayly didde styll
 In this desert for wantyng of their wyll
 ¶ And whethir were þei sorowfull or fayn
 Longe tyme aftyr þeire desolacion 730
 When þei founde Abel þeire own son slayn
 By cruel Caym to his confusion
 The same Caym as made is mencion
 Aftyr þat tyme wylde was and vagabun[de]
 Tyl blynde Lamech gaue hym his Dethes [wounde]
 ¶ Adam nor Eue afforn þat ylke tyme
 Hadde neuer seen no feste funerall
 It was to þem a chaunge of newe pri[me]
 ffor to beholde a thyng dysnaturall
 Brethyrn of o wombe by hatered fr[aternal]
 That on of hate so for hym selfe devid[e] 740
 Of fals malice to be an homicide ·

[3v, col. a]

¶ And was it not a peine when þey stode
 ffor to beholde þeire son pale and dede
 Lygge on the grounde bathid in his bloode
 And all the soile where he lay was rede
 That when Adam and Eue token heede
 It was to them grete aduersite
 The newe slaughtyr to beholde and se
 ¶ And euer emonge þeire sighes harde *and* soore 750
 Their bittyr wepyng and sorowes to avaunce
 Or thei were ware · their herys wexen hoore

And age began þeire beaute disavaunce
 Theire youth also by ful grete displesaunce
 Began to appall · or thei it couth espie
 By cruell constreinte and force of maladie
 ¶ And when of youth fall was þeire floure
 By the processe of many hundred yerys
 And by the Duresse of many grete laboure
 They wex vnlusty · and outhlie of þeire cherys 760
 Of age and deth theis benn the daungers
 To sey chekmate in nature it is couthe
 Vn to beaute and grene lusty youth
 ¶ ffor when the yerys fully passyd be
 Of flouryng age lastyng a ceson
 By processe at ie men may se
 Beaute declineth · his blossoms fallen down
 And lite and litle by succession
 Commyth crokyd elde vnwarlie crepyng
 With his potent ful poerlie manasshyng 770
 ¶ Thus to oure fadre þat callyd was Adam
 Of creatures faryest of all fayre
 Aftyr grete age ~~þe~~ by processe deth in cam
 And began vnwarlie ascende vpon þe steyre
 With his potente · *and* caste hym to repayre
 With Antropos · which afforn shal goon
 ffor to vntwyn hys lyves threde anon
 ¶ And in hebron was made his sepulcure
 Ther aftyr belde amyghty grete cite
 By whos story and recorde of nature 780
 I may conclude who so liste to se
 That neuer man had liberte
 Sithen þat Adam oure lorde gan disobeie
 Agayns deth · but þat he muste dey
 ¶ In compleynyng myn auctour Iohn Bochas
 fful pitevouslie in his aduertence
 Bewepith wayleth and eft saith alas
 In an Apple þer was so grete offence
 That for a taste of inobedience
 Adam alas shuld haue so grete a fall 790
 So sodenlie to deth · and be mortall
 ¶ Which example ought enowgh suffice
 In all this worlde thof þer were no mo
 Exemplifie to folkes þat ben wyse
 Hough þis worlde is a thurgh fare ful of wo
 Lyke fals fortune which turnyth to and fro
 To make folkys when thei most clerlie shyne
 In theire estatys onwarlie to decline
 ¶ ffor thof þat þey þeire hedys lyft alofte
 Hygh as phebus shyneth in hys spere 800

Thynketh þem self as it fallyth ofte
Theyre renoune rechith above þe sterrys clere
And hough þeire fame surmountyth euery spere

[3v, col. b]

The truste corrupte hath a soden fall
ffor to declare hough þei be mortall
¶ O worldie folke aduertith and take intent
What vegeaunce and what punission
Godde shal take in his Iugement
ffor youre trespas and youre transgression
Which breke his ~~trespas~~ perceptis ageyn a[l resoun] 810
Ye haue forgetin hough with his prec[ious blood]
Yow for to saue · he starve on the rode
¶ ffor yf Adam for his disobeisaunce
Was by þe lorde as he liste ordeigne
Made first and formyd with euery circ[umstaunce]
Of creatures to be m[o]s[t]e soueringne
Yf þat he was inbraced in the cheyne
Of seruitute · with thraldam ouers[eyn]
What shal I then of othir folkys [seyne]
¶ That lyuen here in this deserte [of sorowe] 820
And in þis worlde at even and at [morwe] 822
Of erthlie ioy stande disconsolat[e]
All destitute and eke infortunat[e]
And forpossid with woo *and* wordlie trou[ble]
In this exile of plesaunce desolate 821
Ay variable and ful of chaunges double · 826
¶ Ye not intende but to fals couetise
To fraude baret and extorcion
Agayn godde and trouth in many diuerse wyse
Agayn youre neyghburgh by fals collusion 830
To do hym wronge and oppression
And werste of all to reche not by synne
To sle youre soule · worldie goode to wyn
¶ And yf it fall youre power to be small
To complissh ~~in~~ youre Auarice in dede
Youre synfull wyll assentith ouer all
Thyng to desyre of which ye may not spede
And þus fals luste doth your bridyll lede
Trust in hauyng so sore yow doth assayle
ffalsly afferde · þe worlde wold yow fayle 840
¶ And yf þat godde benigne and debonaire
With his yerde of casigacion
Chastise yowe but esylie and fayre
Ye gruge agayn his correccion
No thyng aduerting in youre discrecion
Hough godde not badde vs whas can tak hede

Not for to striue nor to wrastill in dede
 ¶ Nouthir oure strength nor oure myght t[^]to[^] applie
 Vpon þe beste monstruus and sauage
 Which is called þe Chemer of liey 850
 Specially when he is in his rage
 Which monstre hath to his avauntage
 Hede of lion as bokys determyn
 Wombe of gote and tayle serpentine
 ¶ Which was outraide of Belloforon
 As olde poetis make mencion
 Nor godde badde þat men shulde goon
 In to Colchos to Conquire with Iason
 The flees of gold which in þat region
 With fyry booles of metall made *and* brasse 860
 And by a dragon streitlie kepte was ·
 ¶ Godde bad vs not oure entres for to lete
 To vndrefonge thyngis impossible
 The Minotaure for to sle in Crete
 Half man half bole and yf it be credible
 Which was a monstre hateful *and* odible ·

[4r, col. a]

Whilom brought forth in bokys ye may se
 By Minos wyfe callyd ~~passy~~ passiphe
 ¶ Whos storie techith yf ye lyste to liere 870
 This outhlie beste cruell and moustruus
 [T]hurgh Adeian the kyngis doughter dere
 [W]has whilom slayn by duk Theseus
 [W]ithin a Caue made by Dedalus
 [G]odde bidde not vs plenilie for his sake
 [S]o grete emprises for to vndretake
 ¶ [He] bidde vs not to be so rechles
 [In] perilus dedys þat be Merciall
 [He] put vs in partie as dide Hercules
 [Whi]ch by the byddyng in especial 880
 [Of] Euristeus the myghty kyng royall
 [Lor]de of Athenes to make his honour shyne
 [Ler]nyd of armys the famus discipline
 ¶ [Of h]is preceptis yf we haue a syght
 [And r]emembre of hys high bonite
 [He vs] comaundith thyngis þat bien light
 [ffor to] complissh with all humilite
 [ffro]m oure corage to auoide all vanite
 [And] from oure hertys to exclude idilnes
 And þe fals chaunge of all worldlie gladnes ·
 ¶ ffor vnto a man þat profite is and stable 890
 By goode reason myn Auctour doth wel preve
 Ther is no thyng more fare ~~and~~ [^]nor[^] agreable

Then finallie his vicius lyfe to leue
 And on verray *gœd* goode right fully to beleue
 Hym loue and worship above all worldlie þingis
 Thys passeth the victorie of Emperours *and* kyngis
 ¶ The lorde bid eke who can discernen
 Of entiere loue to do oure labour
 In this lyfe here so oure selfe gouerne
 To fadre and modre þat we do du honoure 900
 And in their nede to do them socoure
 And in all *virtues* oure frendys to comforte
 And to oure powere · in myschese them supporte
 ¶ ffor in this worlde is nothyng so perfite
 Nor to accomplissh thyng of more plesaunce 905
 In litle goode to haue suffisaunce 907
 And be content in his gouernaunce
 Than a man for to haue delice 906
 Voide Auarice · and thynken euer emonge 909
 To his neighborh þat he do no wronge 910
 ¶ Not to Couet his goodes in no wyse
 Hym selfe gouerne like to his estate
 Not to excede but flee and eke despise
 All *maner* loue which is disordinate
 Hym selfe *preseruyng* from stryfe and debat
 And specially to eschewe it is goode
 Slaughtir *and* mordre *and* shedyng of mannys blode
 ¶ ffe from his synne and hate for to lie
 Of olde offences emonge haue repentaunce
 And to eschewe all scorne and mokerie 920
 Agayn vites do almez and penaunce
 And to haue moste *soveraignelie* plesaunce
 To su the pathys of oure lorde Ihesu
 True exemplarie of grace and of vertu
 ¶ Which for oure sake and oure redempcion
 And for oure loue was naylyd on a tre
 Suffyrd peine and cruel passion
 And nothyng askith of high ne lowe degre
 Recompensid agaynwarde for to be
 But þat we set all holy oure intentes 930
 ffor to fulfill his commaundmentis
 ¶ And of his grace here in this mortall lyfe
 As we *precelle* in wysdome and reson

[4r, col. b]

And of hys gyftys haue aprerogatyue
 Beforn all bestys by discrecion
 Ther for lete vs of hoole intencion
 As we of reson bestys ferre excede
 Let vs afforn them by worde example and dede

¶ Grounde vs fyrste vpon humilite
Oure pompus ien meklie to vnclose 940
Incline oure hedys and to conceine *and se*
All worldlie welth shal fade as a rose ·
And of meke herte let vs oure selfe dispose
By this Tragedie to haue koulegyng
Of oure myscheue hough þe rote *and* begynnyng

¶ Was þe vice of Inobediencie
Surquedie and fals ~~dis~~ disobeisaunce
As myn Auctour hath shewed in sentence
Inprinte it well in youre remembraunce
Se wher s the serpent with hys deceyvaunce 950
The flesh · þe w~~o~~l worlde *your* enemies all thre
Thurgh þeire treines þat ye not deceiued be

¶ Your best shelde to make resistance
Agayn þeire powere sothlie is meknes
Your haburyon most myghty of defence
The fendys myght to venquissh *and* expresse
Is to remembre deuoutlie with lownes
Hough mekelie criste to paye oure ravesum
Suffyrd on a crosse · deth and passion

¶ Wherby men may þat prudent be and wyse 960
The ioyes clayme which been eternall
And entre agayn in to paradise
ffro wheine s~~o~~l somtyme Adam hadde a fall
To which place aboue celestially
O criste Ihesu þu bring vs to þat glorie ·
Which by thy deth haddyst þe victorie ·

¶ Soden departyng oute of felicite
In to miserie · of mortall hevynesse
Onware depriuuyng of oure prosperite
Change of gladnes in to wrecchyndes 970
Longe languisshyng in wo and bittyrnes
Continuell sorowe drede dole and pestilence ·
Were fyrste inbrought by Inobediencie

¶ Adam and Eue loste þeire liberte
Theire fraunches and þeire blessidnes
Put in to exile and captiuite
To lyve in laboure wo and pensiuenes ·
Thurgh fals desyres and pompus wylfulnes
To þe serpent when he yaue credence
Theire lorde mystrustyng thurgh Inobediencie 980

¶ But O allas wher as þei were fre
Of ioy eternall stode in syc'urnes
They were to blynde alas it was pite
To leve þeire reste and lyve in werynes
All þeire ofspryng to bryng in distres
Drawyng fro godde his du reuerence

Thurgh fals consentyng to Inobedience
 ¶Wher for princes avyslie doth se
 As this Tragedie in man berith witnes
 Where as wantith in any comynte 990
 Subieccion for lakkyng of meknes
 And with powere pride hath an I[n]teresse]
 Ther foloweth aftyr thurgh frowarde [insolence]
 Amonge þe peple fals inobedience
 ¶And noble *princes* which haue þe s[ouereynte]
 To governe þe peple in rightuesness
 Lyke as ye cherish þem in pes an [vnyte]
 Or frowardlie destrue them or op[presse]

[4v, col. a]

So agaynwarde þeire corages þei wyll dresse
 Lowlie to obey y to youre magnificence 1000
 Or disobeie by Inobedience

De casu Nemroth · et De fluuiu Noe

Myn auctour Bochas as he þat vndrestode
 The vengeauncez and mishevys huge
 Which þat godde toke with Noes floode
 When he sent an vniuersall deluge
 Agayn the which þer was no refuge
 Saue viii persones in that mortall woo
 Within a shippe were saued and no moo

¶Wherfore myn auctour lightlie ouergoth
 Makith of þat age no speciall remembraunce 1010
 But passith ouer from Adam to Nembroth
 Consideryng hough þat in þat dedelie chaunce
 The lorde for synne tok so grete vengeaunce
 That by writyng or storie nor victorie
 Of high ne lowe was left no memorie

¶ffor þer was non lefte · cronicle nor no booke
 Aftyr the floode þat made mencion
 Of noon auctour whoso liste to loke
 ffor all was brought destruccion
 With deluge withoute excepcion 1020
 ffor which myn auctour *transportid* hath his stile
 And of þat tyme liste no thyng compile ·

¶He hadde no matier wheron he myght founde
 Nor set his fote by noon auctorite
 Nor no trouth his purpos vnto grounde
 Of olde writyng þat he couth see
 ffor which hym thought of necessite
 The surplusage of myght lete
 And aftyr Adam with Nembroth to mete ·

¶And certis lyk as Bochas in his booke 1030
 Remembreth fyrste of Adam þe storie

So nexte in ordre he the storie toke
 To speke of Nembroth and his surquedye
 Which here fyrste as bookes specifie
 Aftyr the floode his wawes gan aswage
 Was made a lorde to gouerne in þat age
 ¶ffor when þe floode gan disincrece
 And gon his vengeaunce began to modifie
 Withdrawe his hande þe watir þan gan cese
 Vpon þe mountenis high of Ermenie 1040
 The Shippe gan reste the bible cant not lie
 [H] And in þat age called þe secunde
 Linage of man · began fyrste to habounde · 1043
 ¶He made a maner coniuracion 1072
 This frowarde geaunt and a conspiracie
 Toke his counsell by false collusion
 Hys myght his powere for to multiplie
 And his estate for to glorifie
 Thof he wolde of his intente not fayle
 Godde and the hevyn proudlie to assaile
 [¶] That maugre godde which governeth all
 [H]e thought he wolde proudlie tak on hande 1080
 [A]gayn deluges yf eny fall shall
 [O]f prouidence plenilie them to withstonde
 [Hym]selfe to assure and make place on londe
 [That] shuld hym kepe and be to hym defence
 [Bothe] agayn godde and watris violence ·
 ¶[And that] þei myght accomplissh þeire entente
 [Lich thei]re desyre þei did þeire laboure
 [Took] þeire counsell all by on assent
 [Chose] Nembroth þeire duke þeire gouernoure
 [Hem to] conveie and to do them socoure · 1090

[4v, col. b]

To be þeire guyde afforn as þei were ware
 Towarde a cuntre which callyd is Sennar 1092
 ¶Thus of Nembroth increce began the nam[e] 1107
 And in his peples reputacion
 Of golde and riches he hadde so grete a f[ame]
 They callid hym godde in theirre opinion 1110
 Most worthi moste myghty of renoune
 The worlde eke hole vndre his obeisan[ce]
 As godde and lorde he toke þe gouernaunc[e]
 ¶Vndre whos myght the peple gan procede
 He as a lorde havynge inspeccion
 Persyng the bowell of the erthe in de[de]
 To make myghty þeire fundacion
 And of fals glorie and fals ambicion
 This proude Nembroth in his appetite

To se the werke hadde ful grete delite 1120
 ¶Hys ioy was and his inware gladne[s]
 To beholde so grete a companie
 Percen the erth by so grete depnes
 To make the grounde stronge by mas[ounrie]
 The werke vpwarde to fortifie
 With many a stone huge *and* large of wei[ght]
 They haue it reysyd up in the aer of hyght ·
 ¶And finallie by mediacion
 Of his grete werke Nembroth wexed famus
 Takyng in hert grete consolacion 1130
 That by report he was so glorius
 Of so grete myght and of apert so pompus
 That he was so myghty ~~so wyde large and longe~~ ^{^riche and stronge^}
 To reyse a toure so wyde large and longe
 ¶ffor to this day touchyng the grete myght
 Of this toure which men Babel call
 Men from full ferre may haue *perof* a syght
 It suremountith *oper* tourys all
 Of which werk it is befall
 Of serpente and many a grete dragon 1140
 It is nowe callide chef habitacion
 ¶That no man dare as ferre as *pei* it se
 ffor wykkyd aer and ~~from~~ ^{^for^} corrupcion
 By a grete space and by a grete cuntre
 Approche so nere ~~per~~ *pat* meruelus dungeon
 So venymus is *pat* mansion
 And so venymus *pat* no man dare approche
 Lyke to a mounteine beldid on craggy roche
 ¶And as men sayn *pat* haue hadde *per* to repaire
 This toure attenieth vnto *pe* sterrys clere 1150
 And transcendith the Regioun of *pe* aier
 The stone the syment were made of such matier 1152
 Thof fyre or watyr both it did assaile 1154
 But litil or nought *peire* power shuld awayle
 ¶It was made so myghty to indure
 So well assured by disposicion
Pat in this worlde no lyuyng creature
 Sawe neuer non lyk in comparison
 Whos reysyng vp was chef occasion 1160
 And the riches of masonrie
 Wherthugh Nembroth of pride *and* surquedie
 ¶Demyd proudlie as in his advis
 He transcendid all *oper* of nobles
 Thof hym selfe/moste myghty *and* moste wys
 ffelow to godde as by liknes
 But godde *pat* can all worldlie pride oppresse
 And make princes eclipsen in *peire* glorie

[5r, col. a]

Such as truste in thyngys transitorie ·
¶ The same lorde of his eternall myght 1170
This toure which Nembroth liste to edyfie
He made with thondir *and* with leven light
Therof to fall a ful grete partie
The boistes wyndes and þe rage skye
And goddes power on þat oþer syde
Began this abate a *parcell* of his pride
¶ And in descent *and* fallyng of toure stonys
Of the werkmen ful many a man was dede
And oppressid þeire bak · and breke þeire bonys
The masonrie wi[t]h the blode was rede 1180
Yit proude Nembroth þat of this werk was hede
With all his signes his lorde he list not knowe
ffor hys pompe aftyr was brought full lowe
[¶] But in his *errour* procedeth forth of newe
Thof [h]e wyld gete hymselfe a name
Of malencolie gan chaunge lok *and* chere
And gan also attempte and atame
ffor to encrece and magnifie his name
Anew toure to edifie agayn
Lyke as godde hadde be blynd *and* nothyng seyn 1190
¶ He wolde haue raught vp to þe sterrys sevyn
By assent of them þat gan hym fyrst counsail
Robbyd godde and from hym take þe heuyn
But who *presumyth* þe lorde aboue to assaile
It were no reson þat he shuld availe
Princes may well agayn hym crye lowde
But his powere may clypse with no clowde
¶ ffor in þe myddes of hys grete empryses
Thys proude Nembroth making hys masons
ffor to compas *and* to caste þeire devises 1200
Geometries and þeire diuisiones
But godde þat hath hys inspeccions
Seyng the intents of euery erthly man
As he þat is moste myghty and beste can
¶ Agayn þeire [ma]lice make resistence
Theire worldlie power þeire *dominacion*
Of hys vengeable *and* moste magnificence
He can chastyse and ouerwhelon don
The pryde of princes in euery region
By example of Nembroth anon ye shal here 1210
Whos pompe raught aboue þe sterrys clere
¶ ffor when hys werkmen stode at avantage
And most wexed bysy to hys intencioun
And to fortyme speke all oon language

All sodenlie by transmutacion
 There was of tongys made a diuision
 That in þeire wyrkyng as þei gan abrayde
 No man wyste what þat oþer sayde
 ¶ And it is lyklye acordyng with reson
 So as þeire change was made of þer langages 1220
 So of þeire hertys wer made diuision
 Both of þeire wylle *and* of þeire corages
 And in descendyng of þer werkyng stages
 Pere was such change of broþer vnto broþer
 Lyke *straungers* non knewe þe intente of oþer
 ¶ Myn auctour troweth þat þis diuersite
 Was for þeire gylte causyd by vengeaunce

[5r, col. b]

Of els godde of ryght and equite
 Disposid hath in hys ordinaunce
 To be among them so grete variaunce 1230
 That þurgh þe worlde · þei shuld þemselfe diuide
 And from Nembroth Disseuer · *and* not abyde
 ¶ They gan anon among þemselfe disdeigne
 To accepte þis Nembroth for þeire kyng
 Yit emonge them forsoth þer were no tweine
 On of an oþer þat hadde clene knowyng
 Nor of þeire spech þat knewe þe pleine menyng
 ffor which þe cuntre of Sennar they forsoke
 And ychon of them a diuerse cuntre toke
 ¶ They departid *and* made no lengar space 1240
 ffolowyng þeire fortune of þeir diuision
 And to chese þem newe dwellyng places
 In þe parties of many a Region
 And þis Nembroth was partid *and* put adoun
 And of Babel þe myghty famus toure
 He was no lengar callyd possessoure
 ¶ ffor agayn þe pride of þis Nembroth
 ffrowarde fortune gan his course to varie
 And godde also was in man wroth
 Of surquedie þat he was so contrarie 1250
 And for þe place was wylde and solitarie
 Of þis Sennar furius *and* sauage
 Nembroth gan feble and fall in grete age
 ¶ And yit sume bokys of hym specifie
 Hough he was frowarde of hys condicion
 And was fyrste foundar of ydolatrie
 And fynder vp of fals religion
 Causyng peples to holde opinion
 Goddys to worship in paganysme wyse
 ffounder of rightes *and* of false sacrificise 1260

¶ Towarde Perce he chese hys dwellyng place
The which cuntre is in the orient
Pat his lordeshippes shuld strecche a grete space
He boundid hym into þe occidente
ffor perce londe hath his extente
Towarde the parties of þe reede see
And þis londe perce who þat liste to se
¶ As bookys olde remembre *and* put in mynde
Hough þat perce castith environ
Septemtrion and the gretter Inde 1270
And many an oþer myghty region
Wher Nembroth hadde fyrste *dominacion*
Which extendith as bookys specifie
Oute of Mede into Germanie
¶ But in lordeshippes as myn auctour seith
Without þat vertu be þeir true guyde
In them is suraunce noon nor feith
Thyng þat passith may no while abide
Wherfor Bochas in despite of pryde
And in rebukyng of all follis proude 1280
Makyng his compleint creith to þem ful lowde
¶ Ye all proude most royall in *your* flourys
Which moste truste for to reigne longe
Dressith vp youre rochis and *your* tourys
And agayn godde make *yourself* stronge
And youre power proudelie vndirfonge
Youreselfe with pride for to magnifie

[5v, col. a]

Agayn the heuyn to holde chanpartie
¶ Belde youre castells reyse þem vp on hyght
Of Adamaunt with yrne stronge bounde 1290
With Ɔ square stonys large *and* hoge of weight
Reyse vp youre wallys most myghty *and* profounde
And shit youre Dongeons with myghty cheynes rounde
Let men of armys who euer wake or slepe
Night and day *your* so streythe kepe
¶ As godde ne man in youre opinions
Your fortresse ne myght not assayle
Your castels nor youre stronge dongeons
Stuffid with men and vitall
Lyk to stond euer and neuer to fayle 1300
As godde not myght agayn *your* fals puissaunce
When euer hym liste of right do vengeaunce
¶ Settith afforn youre ien þat be blynde
The monstruus werke of the grete Babilon
The pryde of Nembroth þer was put behynde
Maugre hys myght and hys toure smyt down

ffor all the crafte of werkmen or mason
 Destruede was with a soden leven
 To avenge hys pride sent down from heuyn
 ¶ ffor þof youre strenkithes so assured be 1310
 That non ingine may þerto atteine
 Gunne nor bumbard by no subtilite
 Shot or Arblaste nor no shot of dondeyne
 Yit godde þat is lorde and souereigne
 Which lyk desertez can both spyll and saue
 May all confounde with an erthquaue
 ¶ Myn auctour askith what castell or what toure
 May be so stonge made in eny wyse
 But þat by meene of summe fals traitour
 Or by summe wey þat he can deuyse 1320
 It may be loste or solde for couetyse
 And deliuerde for all the stronge bondys
 Into the power of ennemyes handys
 ¶ Or by othir soden aventure
 Castells Cites and many a riche town
 Haue ben left þat þer myght not þem assure
 ffor to resiste agayne fals treson
 Summe haue be loste eke by rebellion
 And all þeis menys þe trouth to begynne
 Is punisshyng which godde sent for synne 1330
 ¶ Godde hath a mille handys to chastyse
 A mille iiii dartys of punisshion
 A mille bowes made in diuerse wyse
 A mille Arblastres bent in hys dongeon
 Ordeigned ichon for castigacion
 But whoso fynde in meknes *and* repentaunce
 Mercy is maistres and hys ordinaunce
 ¶ Ye þat be wyse considir hough þe rote
 Of vices all is pride ye may wel se
 Pullith hym doune · put hym vndir fote 1340
 And take youre counsel of humilite
 And yf ye liste to stande in surte
 Beldith in hert for more sicurnes
 A toure of vertue groundid in meknes
 ¶ Whos masunrie is of no castage
 Of *vertuus* grounde and souereigne
 Blastys of wyndes and weddyrs rage
 Nor no tempest hasty nor sodeine
 Pompe nor boste þof þei do þeire peine
 This *vertu* meknes for to vndirmyne 1350
 They be to feble to make hyr to incline

[5v, col. b]

¶ ffor wher meknes is groundid verrelie

Thof she sumtyme fele aduersite
 He passeth on and suffirith pacientlie
 And venquesshyth al *maner* enmyte
 The assaut also of contrariete
 Of infortune and of worldlie trouble
 And of victorie conquerith a palme double
 ¶ And thof meknes amyddes þe floode flowe
 Of worldlie myschefe and *persequucion* 1360
 While pacience in hyr bote doth rowe
 Thow frowarde wawes pos vp and doun
 A calme shal folowe of consolacion
 When stormy wyndes þeir blaste haue leyd l[owe]
 The name of Meknes shal shew *and* be wel k[nowe]
 ¶ She may be troubild but ouercome nevir
 And for a tyme she may suffre werre
 But at the ende she venquisshith euer
 On londe on se where she be nere or fer[e]
 To the haven of lyfe she was sure lodeste[re] 1370
 I take recorde of the humilite
 Of Marie so blessid myght she be
 ¶ The rote of meknes floureth vp so fayre
 Whos beaute dredith no tribulacions
 In *Somer* · wyntyr hys flourys not appayre ·
 And hir rote laste in al *maner* of cesons
 Pryde may assayle with hys bosoful sownies
 But finalli for hir increce of glorie
 With humbles she wynnyth the victorie
 ¶ O folkys þat this Tragedie do rede 1380
 Haue vnto meknes amonge *your* aduertence
 Of proude Nembroth also takith hede
 Hough þat he fell from hys magnificence
 Only for he by sturdie violence
 Liste of malice the myghty lorde assaile
 But in such case what myght hys pride availe
 ¶ Noble princes which þis worlde doth possessed
 Ye þat be famus of wysdom and prudence
 And haue so many senectes in youre drede
 In *gouernaunce* vndir *your* excellence 1390
 Let your power with meknes so dispens
 Pat false pride oppresse not þe poraile
 Which to youre nobles so mych may availe
 ¶ Pride of Nembroth did the bridil lede
 Which hym conveide to grete Insolence
 Pride *perteineth* nothyng to manhode
 Saue in † armys to shewe hys *presence*
 Wherfore *honour* laude and reuerence
 Be to meknes þat hath the *gouernaile*
 Of all *virtues* · which may most availe 1400

De casu Cadmi Regis Egipti et aliorum regnum

Theis olde poets with þer sawes swete
fful couertlie in þeir verses do feine
Hough olde Saturne was sumtyme kyng of Crete
And of custum did hys bysy peyn
Of hys godhede liste for to ordeiyne
That he should os of hys nature
Ichon devoure as by hys ingendure
¶ In this matier shortlie to sojourne
To vndirstond of poets þe processe
They mene pleinilie at þis worde Saturne 1410
Doth in itself nothyng but tyme expresse
And philosophirs also bere witnes
Pat as in tyme althyng is forth brought
Somtyme ayenwarde bryngith althyng to nowght
¶ Clerkys recorde eke in their writyng

[6r, col. a]

Vndir supporte as I dare reherce
Hough þat fyre wastith euery thyng
And yrne harde doth nesh þings perce
Yf oute abyde þat may not it ansuerse
Yit comyth tyme and by continuaunce 1420
All he consumith with hys sherpe launce

¶ Hys sherpe tothe of consumpcion
In stille wyse doth hys bysy cure
ffor to avauntage in conclusion
All thyng is forth brought by nature
By longe abydyng as thof men hadde be
ffor olde thyng devouryd men may se
fferre oute of mynde os thof had be

¶ Who can or may remembre in eny wyse
The glorius prowes of theis princes olde 1430
Or the nobles of philosophirs wyse
[O]r of poets the semyng to vnfolde
Process of yerys alas as I yowe tolde
Devouride hath þeire fame and their nobles
Derked þeire renoun by foryetylnes

¶ Thus of þeire names is lefte no memorie
Tyme with his reson hath do so grete vengeaunce
Shoven away the honour and the glorie
fful many a noble ful myghty of puissaunce
That þer is lefte nowe no remembraunce 1440

Of princes poets no philosophirs
ffor when deth naylyd them in þeire cofyrs
¶ Cam tyme vpon · and by processe of yerys
Their memorie hath duskyd þeire mynd ·
And reuolucion of the heuynlie sperys

By oft turnyng þeire glorie haue left behynde
Thus euery thyng which subiecte is to kynde
Is in this lyf withoute more avauntage
Wastyd with tyme and processe of longe age

¶ In the fyrste age from Adam to Noe 1450
Prudent listris which liste in bokys rede
ffynde of fortune no mutabilite
Nor of hyr chaunge þei tok no hede
But from Adam þei reknyd bine indede
Vnto Nembroth by turnyng of þe heuyn
A mille yere · D · CC · and · xj ·

¶ In which space who þat considreth will
Thei be nothyng writ in especiall
Signe of memorie nor spok of neuer a dele
Which iche þat be notable nor historiall 1460
But fro tyme Nemroth hadde a fall
Vnto Cadmus þe yerys to conteine
They were mille · CCCC · and · xiiij ·

¶ Touchyng as Cadmus as Bochas liste indite
It is rehersed by Rethoricions
Hough on vixoses in bokys as þei write
Was made kyng fyrste of Egipcions
Wher philosophirs and Nigromancions
Began fyrste to habounde þer renoun to avaunce
Nachor þat tyme hauyng the governaunce 1470

¶ Of the hebrues as made is mencion
Aftyr Nembroth by true rehersaile
CCC · yere by computacion
iiij^{xx} · and xij · Which tyme it is no fayle
Pat vixoses gan werre *and* begynne bataile
Of volunte againe straunge nacions
And to coquere cites borowes and townys

¶ By force oonlie without title or right
He wanne all Egpte to increce his name
But for all þat who liste to haue a sight 1480
Per is nowe lefte no reporte of his fame
Saue Bochas writith hough he fyrste did ataine
His myghty conquest of intencion
Ascribed were vnto hys worthy dome

[6r, col. b]

¶ And þe residue and þe surplusage
Of golde of tresure of goode and of riches
Pat ascribed were to hys avauntage
Turne shulde to comyn profite and besynes
ffor hym semyd as to hys worthines
Reporte myght it and was to hym more nerre 1490
Boue singlerte hys comynte to preferre

¶ Eke Thanaus of Cithe fyrste kynge
 When Saruch was duke and souereigne
 Ouer þe Iewes by record of writyng
 CC · yere · lxx^{ti} · and eke tweine
 Aftyr nembroth this Thanaus gan ordeigne
 A myghtie power and a stronge bataile
 Them of Cithie proudlie to assaile
 ¶ Conquering from thens in to þe Ile
 Callyd Ponto · in full cruell wyse 1500
 And þof his lordeship laste not but a while
 All þat he wan it was Coutise
 And as Bochas doth of theis folk devise
 Processe of yerys for all þeire grete puissance
 Hath put þeire namys out of remembraunce
 ¶ Zorastes eke for all hys grete myght
 Of Vactrians kynge and possessoure
 Lorde of Trace and a ful manlie knyght
 Of all hys dedys and hys grete labour
 Ne of þis ^hys^ conquest ne of hys grete honour 1510
 Is nothyng lefte of writyng vs befor
 Saue þat he laughed þe oure þat he was born
 ¶ He gan ful sone for to be myrie
 With soden laughter at hys natiuite
 And worthy Nynus þat was of Assure
 Expounde hys laughter to grete felicite
 The which Nynus wan many a stronge cite
 And day be day his power gan to increce
 ffor which he wolde of his power not cese
 ¶ ffor þis is þe maner of þeis conqueroures 1520
 Whan þei haue hadde in armys a victorie
 Thei doon þeire myght þeire peine *and* þeire labours
 With newe emprises to be put in memorie
 ffor þeire corages supprised with veine glorie
 Can not be still content in þeire astate
 Tyl þeire paradie sey to them chekmate
 ¶ ffortune of armys in bokys ye may rede
 With a fals laughter on folkys doth she smyle
 She frowarde euer or thei can take heede
 Of hyr nature wyll falslie them begyle 1530
 Conquest be werre · las[tith] but awhyle
 ffor who by deth doth st[urdi] violence
 Godde wyl by deth hys ven[ge]aunce recompens
 ¶ This worthy Ninus ~~hath so well hym boore~~ ^gan myghtily preuaile^
 Agayn Zorastes of whom I spa[ke] before
 ffor he with hym faught laste [in] bataile
 ffor which Ninus hath so well hym bore
 That Zorastes hath þe felde lore
 And he was Auctour as bokys specifie

Of fals Magik and Nigromauncye 1540
¶ He founde þe nature of euery element
Theire kyndlie werkyng in their mutacions
The course of sterrys and of þe firmament
Theire influences þeire disposicions
Theire Aspectes and þeire coniunccions
Wrote in pillers devised of metall
The · vii · sciences callyd liberall
¶ Eke in pylers of brique full harde bake
Which were vpset longe large *and* hoge

[6v, col. a]

He gan eke write them and also vndirtake 1550
To make them sure as for þeire refuge
That þei shuld by floode nor no deluge
Diffacide ben as of þeire scripture
But in their gravynge *perpetuelly* indure
¶ But þof Zorastes þeis craftys fyrste oute founde
ffull litle or nought to hym it myght availe
And thof he were a goode knyght of hys hande
He was of Ninus slayn in bataile
Loste hys realme *and* royall apparaile
And Ninus died within a litill throwe 1560
But in what wyse þe storie is not knowe

¶ Eke of Moydes kyng of Sodome
I fynde of hym no memorie by writyng
Saue in a storie · men may rede and se
He and his peple were fre in their lyvyng
But he þat was of Assyryens kyng
Thurgh fals fortune þat can so oft varie
To Babilonye made them tributarie
¶ We haue eke seyn and redde also 1570
The vengeaunce and the pestilence
Doon in Egipte to kyng Pharao
ffor þat he make a *maner* of resistance
Agayns godde of wylfull negligence
Therefore hys peple vpon a day and he
Were drenchyd ichon in ~~ny~~ ^mydde^ of þe reede se

¶ The peples of Egipte ^godde^ ledde by Moyses
Withoute trouble of eny *maner* wawe
Went ychon saue in quiete and pees
And pharao as he can aftyr drawe
Them to pursu by a full mortal lawe 1580
In hys pursute frowarde and atteinte
Amonge þe wawe with hys oste was dreinte

¶ In Exodo ben the mencions
Cereuslie put in remembraunce
The xii · plages and *persecucions*

In Egipte don by full grete vengeance
 And of þeire tresoure and þeire grete substaunce
 They wer dispoyled by hebrues it is tolde
 Of þeire vesels of syluer and of golde
 ¶ And oute of Egipte ful grete tresour þat he ledde 1590
 Such as hym thought þat myght hym most availe
 And Pharao I fynde þat he hadde
 CC · Chares inarmyd for bataile
 Israel to pursu and proudlie to assaile
 And · 1 · mille · in whom was no lak
 Of men of armys folowyng on horsbakke
 ¶ CC · mille · of fotemen hym aboute
 And of Egipte all hys Chyuallrie
 And pharao with all hys grete route
 Began Israel pursu of envie 1600
 But for hys pride and fals surquedie
 He and hys peple were drownyd euerychon
 Of all hys noumbir þer was left not oon
 ¶ Hys frowarde hert agayn godde inaniate
 ffulfyllyd of malice and obstinacie
 And hys purpose proude and obstinate
 Theys foule vices or he couthe them asprie
 ffrom hys glorie and hys regallie
 He was caste doune þof he befor was coroned
 And amydde þe se among his peple drownyd 1610
 ¶ An oþer prince callid Oggigus
 Kynge of Thebes os bokys determyne
 And founder was þis bookys tellith vs

[6v, col. b]

Of a Cite callid Elleusine
 Which stand in Grece whos power to decline
 Ther fell a floode in þat region
 Which ouerflowed many a riche town
 ¶ And in Achaia it did meste damage
 In tyme of Iacob þe patriak notable
 And þis deluge · with hys wawes rage 1620
 Slewe lordes many and princes honorable
 ffor dame fortune is so deceiueable
 That she sumwhile when she liste disdeigne
 Can folke assaile with a flode sodeine
 ¶ This floode also where it did assaile
 Wastid cornys both croppe and rote
 Causid also scarite of vitaile
 That many a man felt ful vnsote
 The poore not wyste · wher to fynde bo[te]
 ffor þeire princes suppressid were with [drede] 1630
 Thurgh lak of vitaile in þat gret[e] nede

¶ An oþer floode þat was in Thessalie
 In the tyme whan þat kyng Amphioune
 Helde þe sceptre and þe regallie
 Vpon Thebes þe myghty stronge toune
 Besyde þe kyngdom of
 The same tyme þei fell Doutles
 Whan goddys peple was ledde by Moyses
 ¶ With þis floode þe londe hadde be devourid
 Of Thessalie and of þat region 1640
 But by on Pernaso þe peple was socourid
 And on þe rochis þat stode environ
 ffounde þeire refute and þeire sauacion
 And grete socoure tyl þe floode rage
 Gan to discrees withdraw and aswage
 ¶ In olde stories also ye may rede
 When Cicrops hadde fyrste possession
 Of Athene þe myghty stronge cite
 And heete fell on þat region
 By influence þat descendid doune 1650
 ffrom þe bodies aboue celestially
 Which lyklye was to devoure all
 ¶ And þis hete ingendred with the sunne
 In diuerse cuntres both in length *and* brede
 Hath hys course so myghtyly begunn
 That ~~many~~ many folkes fell in grete drede
 Ryvers welles who þat liste to rede
 Consumyd were and driede vp ichon
 The hete callid þe imbracyng of pheton
 ¶ We haue eke redde in stories here beforne 1660
 Hough þat Isys to Egipte toke hyr flyght
 Oute of Grece þe true doughter born
 Of Promotheus a ful manlye knyght
 And þis Isys in euery mannes syght
 So fressh so goodlye weddid by hyr lyve
 To worthy Apis þat was kyng of Agyve
 ¶ The which Isis excellent of beaute
 Aftyr tyme hyr fadre was Igraue
 She was put for more surte
 Vndir hyr vncler þat shulde kepe *and* saue 1670
 Thys saide mayde þat no man shuld hyr haue
 And hyr vncler in Ouide ye may se
 Lyke as he write was callid Epimethe
 ¶ And flouryng vp in hyr tendre age
 The saide maide so plesaunt was *and* mete

[7r, col. a]

Of semblenes loke and of visage

Pat Iubiter þe myghty kyng of Crete
 Was enamoured with hyr for to mete
 And she excitede of femynite
 Inclined hyr herte vnto hys deite 1680
 ¶ And for she was of hir intent so clene
 Obeying hym in the moste louly wyse
 Of Argivois he made hyr to be plene
 Be cause þat she was smyt with couetise
 Agayn Argus averre she gan devyse
 And for he was onweldie of his age
 He Hyr to wist withstond he found non avantage
 ¶ But yit fortune began on hyr to frowne
 And kyng Argus s thurgh hys subtilite
 With hys counsaile so prudentlie gan rowne 1690
 [T]hat she was take by full grete cruelte
 [A]nd hyr soldioures were eke made to sle
 [A]nd b)y Argus þer gayned no raansom
 [S]he fet[ri]d was and put in strengre prison
 ¶ B)ut hyr son goode Mercurius
 [R]yght fresh right lusty and ful of hardynes
 [A]nd of hys hert Inlie coragius
 Agayn Argus gan his power dresse
 And so intierlie did hys bysynes
 That he was slayn in conclusion 1700
 And Isis aftyr deliuerde from prison
 ¶ Of hyr sleightes aftyrwarde not feinte
 She toke a shippe and into Egipte wente
 In which ship þer was a cough depeinte
 And Thourye whom Iubiter eke sent
 Is goon with hyr both of oon intende
 To make a mariage aftyr anon right
 Betwen hir and apis a prince of ful grete myght
 ¶ She was right wyse above all creatures
 Secret of cunnyng well expert in science 1710
 She taught fyrste literes and figures
 To Egipcians by pleine experience
 Gafe them cunnyng and intelligence
 To tulle þeir londe · taught þeir laborers
 To sowe þeire grayne and multiplie be yerys
 ¶ And in Egipte hir fame and hir renoun
 Gan day be day wex and hir worthines
 Holde of cunnyng and reputacion
 By signes shewed not oonlie a princes
 But she was holde amonge them a goddessse 1720
 And with worshippes which þat were diuine
 And sacrificises to hyr þei did incline
 ¶ But to declare pleyndie at a worde
 Amyddes of all grete prosperite

Myghty Apis hyr husband and hir lorde
 Prince of Egipte *and* duke of þat cuntre
 Son to Iubiter and of Nyobe
 Which Niobe by large descendyng
 The doughter was of pheroneus þe kyng
 ¶And phoroneus fyrste þe lawes founde 1730
 To which all Grece stode vndre obeisaunce
 And the statutes of þat myghty londe
 Were establied by hys ordinaunce
 But for to write þe onhappy chaunce
 Of kynge Apis þat is remembred
 He slayn was and pitevouslie dismembred
 ¶By hys brothyr callyd Tipheus
 Somwhat of hatred but more for couetise
 ffor Tipheus was Inlie desirus

[7r, col. b]

To reioyse in full mortall wyse 1740
 The myghty kyngdome as he haue her devyse
 Of Argyvoys to haue possession
 Proffered by mordir and fals successioun
 ¶And when thys Isis founde hyr lorde so dede
 Of intent þat he was magnifiede
 ffyrste of wysdome she gan to take hede
 Ordeigned a mene þat he were deifiede
 And þat als he myght be stellifiede
 In Egipte templis made hym to be stallid
 And godde Serapus aftyr he was callyd 1750
 ¶What shall I write of the case horrible
 Of Erisiton with hungre so constreynyd
 That his lyf was to hymself odible
 In Thesalie with Indigence ^indigence^ fyned pynyd 1754
 When he shulde hys doughtyr in seruage 1756
 Lyriope which was but yong of age
 ¶By chaunge of golde to purvey hym vitall
 Of verrey nede he was so wobegon
 He hadde nothyng þat myght hys thyrste availe 1760
 Nor staunch hungre with gø gnawyng on a bone
 Wherfore he iete his membres Ichon
 O folkys all was it not grete pite
 To se hym dye in such aduersite
 ¶We haue eke redde full many day befor
 Of grete banasshyng and proscipcion
 Of Argyvois hough kyng Glanor
 Was cruellie put from his region
 And his lieges of indignacion
 In his place þei set on Danus 1770
 Sonn *and* eke heire to kyng Belus

¶ The peple of malice did hym so encombre
To increas hys sorowe and his aduersite
And · 1 · doughtres also in noumbre
And Egistus his broþer eke ~~parde~~ pardie
Hath · 1 · sunys · þe story ye may se
Betwen þe which by surte of hande
In mariage þer was made a bonde
¶ Vndre which compassid was treson
Couertlie thought þei did s it hyde
But yf ye liste haue clere inspeccion
Of this story e vpon euery syde

1780

Redith þe legendes of Martris of Cupide
Which þat Chauncer in ordre as þei stode
Compilyd of women þat were callid goode

¶ Touchyng the storie of kyng Pandion
And of his goode doughtris tweine
Hough Tereus fals of Condicion
Them to deceyue did his bysy peine
They both namyde of beaute souereigne
Goodlie Progne and yonge philomene
Both Innocentes and of intent ful clene

1790

¶ Their pitevous fate in open to expresse
It were to me but a *presumpcion*
Sith þat Chauncer did his bysynes
In his legend as made his mencion
Their Martirdom and þeir passion
ffor to reherse þem he did his bysy peine
As chefe poete callyd of Bretaigne

1800

¶ Of goode women Chauncer a book did write
The noumbre incomplete fully of xix^{ten} ·
And þer the storie pleinlie dide indite
Of Thereus Progne and Philomene
Wher ye may se þeir legend þis I mene
Doth them worship · *and* forth þeir lyf doth sh[ewe]

[7v, col. a]

ffor a clere meroure bycause þer be so fewe

¶ I wyll passe ouer and speke of them no more
And vnto Cadmus forth my stile dresse
Yit in my wrytyng it grevith me sore
Touchyng of women of feith or stabilnes
Blessid be godde I fynde non excesse
And for þer been so fewe as thynkith me
The goode shal be hadde in more deinte

1810

¶ This Tragedie berith yow witnes
Hough Saturnus by disposicion
Maliciuslie of his frowardnes
Causeth in Iuno full grete infeccion

He of nature conveith þe venome doune
The aer infecte which may no man socoure
Comyth deth anon and all thyng doth devoure 1820

¶Tyme from Adam myn auctour doth expresse
Down to Nembroth by computacion
Hys stile conveide by grete avisnes
ffrom ~~herastes~~ Zorastes touchyng Pharaon
Of ij · deluges he makith mencion in
Thesalie the vengeaunce gan labour
And in Achaia Thebes to devoure

¶Ye haue of heete herde þe grete excesse
Of princes · princesses full grete dissencion
Of Egistus the grete wrecchidnes 1830
The furie of Thereus the wo of Pandion
Of the ij · Sistres the confusion
And hough þeir fate be gan on them loure
Theire felicite vnwarlie to deuour

¶Princys · princesses youre ien doth vp dresse
I mene þe ien of youre discrecion
Seth of this worlde þe chaunge þe doublenes
The grete onsurenes the variacion
And aduertise for all youre hygh renoune
ffortunes dewys when þei must swetlie floure 1840
Then is she falsest youre glorie to devoure

De casu Iouis filij Saturni

BE rehersaile of many an olde poete
By descente þe line conveied doune
Next Saturnus þe myghty kyng of Crete
Love was crownyd by succession
And next his heire by procreacion
Aftyr his fadyr þe londe to inherit
Reignyd in Crete as poetis liste to write

¶And of the linage as I yow tolde befor
Of the goddes moste souereigne and entiere 1850
Yit thof he was of bloode so hygh born
He chose Europa for to be hys fere
And doune descendid from his heuynlie spere
As he þat was for all his deite
Supprid in hert for all hys grete beaute

¶And she was doughter to þe myghty kyng
Callid Agenor by lineall descent
Whos myghty kyngdome and roiall fayre dwellyng
Was in Phenice towarde the oriente
And to Arabie his londe was adiacent 1860
fferre be south as ye may reede and se
Towarde þe parties of þe rede see ·

¶But Iubiter when he dide aduerte
Of Europa the grete semblenes

[H]ym thought he was woundid thurgh þe herte
 [V]nto þe deth beholdyng hyr fayrnes
 And for his constreinte and his mortall distres
 [Sey]ng she was so fayre founde in his sight
 [He] reuesshid hyr of verrey force and myght
 ¶[Bu]t Agenor hyr own fadir dere 1870
 [Gan] in this case full pitevouslie compleine
 [W]hen she alas moste goodlie and entiere
 [Wa]s hym beraught which doubled all his peine ·

[7v, col. b]

Recure was noon thof he did his peine
 Tyl he remembered in his regalie
 Thof he wold send and espye
 ¶Hys sunne Cadmus hyr to recure agayn
 ffor to serche hir in many a region
 Towarde Grece with mych peine 1896?
 Of Apollo for to desire a bone 1897?
 Vnto what partie þat he myght hym drawe d[on] 1898?
 Or þat he wolde gracioslie hym leede 1902
 Vnto what Ile þat he myght hym spede 1901
 ¶He tok his shyppys by grete avisnes
 And saylyd by many a straunge see
 Did his labour and his bysynes
 With many a worthy þat with hym pryve
 But when þat he of reso[n] did see
 Per was no mene for such as he was sent
 ffor to accomplissh þe fyne of his intent 1890
 ¶With gladde herte devoide of all grugyng
 Seyng þe case frowarde and contrarie 1892
 And of manhoode liste not hym self dispair[e] 1894
 M Humble of his toke his exilyng 1893
 But with his meny knightlie gan repaire · 1895
 Towarde Grece and prouddie þer to londe
 Of Apollo for vndrestonde
 ¶To what partie þat he myght drawe
 He prayed þe godde to vysen hym or rede
 Summe tokyn shewe or summe maner lawe 1900
 Vnto what Ile þat he myght hym spede 1901
 Wher as he myght þe belde a Cite 1903
 That were acordyng for hym and his meny
 Or þat he wolde gracioslie hym leede 1902
 ¶And to Apollo he didde sacrificise 1905
 And made to hym his oblacion
 In the Temple of Delpho in this wyse 1914?
 And þis was his answer in conclusion 1919
 To go and serche cuntres environ 1921
 A bolle þat were excellyng of fayrnes 1923

Which in yokke hadde neuer doon no bysynes 1922
¶ And wher þat euer sekyng þat he founde 1926
A Bulle stoud still in hys pasture
Apollo badde vpon þe same londe
Wher as he saught þis sight of aventure ·
That he should doon hys bysy cure 1930
To belde a city and his folkys all
And ~~Boea~~ Boecia aftyr þe Bulle call
¶ And when þat Cadmus þe precepte vndirstode
An in serchyng did his ~~bysy cure~~ bysynes
He founde a place where a Bulle stooode
ffedyng hymself which as by lyknes
Was a place ful plesaunt of largenes
Wher as he stynte and gan a Cite reyse
Which þat poetis gretlie commend and preyse
¶ And þat hys beldyng myght þe more availe 1940
All þe forens þat did abought hym dwelle
fful lyke a knyght by force and by bataile
Oute of þat cuntre he did þem expell
Reysyng a Cite which þat did excell
And as Ouide recordith eke þe same
In to þis day Thebes berith þe name
¶ And ho was not oonlie glorified
ffor reryng vp of þis Cite
But he was also gretlie magnified
ffor his manhoode and magnanimité 1950
And moste commendid yf ye liste to se
ffor the surmountyng famus excellence
Which þat he hadde in wysdome and science
¶ ffor as myn Auctour of hym liste indite
Thurgh his noble prudent purviaunce
He taught figures and *lettres* for to write
And made lawes of full grete ordinaunce

[8r, col. a]
Amonge þe Grekes and set governaunce
Ther vicius lyfe by vertu to restreine
And who outerayed · was punysshed with peine 1960
¶ And of intente to increce his linage
And his Cite also Thebes to multiplie
[H]e toke a wyfe þat yong was of age
And she was callid as bookys specifice
Ermyon and touchyng hir allie
Thof þat she wer born of roiall bloode
She was also both inlie fayre and goode ·
[¶] And þis was doon as writyth myn auctour
Aftyr þe deth of worthie Iosue
[Go]thonyel beyng [h]is successoure 1970

[Ha]uyng þe ledyng and þe souereignete
 [O]f Israel whan Thebes þe Cite
 [W]as foundid fyrste in þe dayes olde
 [By] Kyng Cadmus beform as I yow tolde
 [¶ffoure] doughtyrs he hadde by hys lyve
 [ffu]l fayre ylkon and goodlie on to see
 And þeire names to reherse blyve
 Semele was oldiste and next Autonode
 The thyrd in ordre was callid Inoe
 And Agave was yongest of them all 1980
 Of which doughtres þus it is befall
 ¶They were ilkon of porte and of maner
 ffull well fauourde in euery mannys sighte
 Ryghte womanlie and hevenlie of þeir chere
 And for þeire beaute þeire fadir anon right
 As it was fittyng with all his ful myght
 Lyke þeire estates þeire byrth *and* eke þeire age
 Made them be weddyd and ioynyd in mariage
 ¶To worthy *princis* his linage to avauce
 And þis incresid by procreacion 1990
 Wherof þe kyng hadde ful grete plesaunce
 And grete reioysyng in his opinion
 To see his line by generacion
 With his Neveus and Cosyns of allie
 ffro day to day to wex and multiplie
 ¶And þis encresid his felicite
 When he considyrd verrelie in dede
 The riche beldyng of his roiall Cite
 And hough fortune dide his brydyll lede
 To grete riches in bookys as I fynde rede 2000
 And to grete nobles hauyng residence
 In his cite of moste magnificence
 ¶His doughtre Semele recorde of myn *Auctour*
 Thof she descendid were of þe bloode roiall
 To Iubiter she was *paramoure*
 And by his power above celestiall
 She conseyvid in especiall
 As *poetis* liste of hyr to indite
 Hym þat is godde of grapys rede and white
 ¶Callid *Bachus* which hath þe *gouernaunce* 2010
 Of wynys all and ~~all~~ þe hoole ^{the} regallie
 Wherof þeraftyf fel a ful grete vengeaunce
 ffor when Iuno did fyrste espie
 Of Iubiter þe grete Avoutrie
 Of grete hatrede and Envius desyre
 He made Semele be brent with soden fyre
 ¶By descendyng of a soden leven
 Wherthugh his place was into askys brent

The onware stroke cam doune from þe heuyn
And on Semele þe vengeaunce is doun went 2020
And or þe flame consumyd was and spent
Ther was of hyr left no remembraunce

[8r, col. b]

But of hyr ende þe woful mortall chaunce
¶ Also Acteon þe son of Actonoe
To grete myschefe and infortune born
Whos fadir callid was Eristee
Com of þe kynred þat I yow tolde befor
With cruell houndys alas he was to torne
ffor þat he sawe as bookys of hym tell
Diane naked bathe hyr in a welle · 2030

¶ And as poetis remembre at þe leste ·
When þe ladies of Thebes the cite
Helde of Bachus solempnelie þe feste
The yongest Sistre callid Agave
Doughter to Cadmus alas it was pite
Agayn hyr own son dere
She wex so woode and mortall of hyr chere
¶ Mordrying hym in full cruell wyse
In hyr rage she was so furius
ffor he laughyd at þe Sacrifice 2040

In Thebes don of women to Bachus
The which son was callyd Pantheus
Whome þat she slough with a ful sharp darte
In hir wodnes as she hym founde aparte · 2044

¶ And amonge Cadmus sorowes euerychon 2073
To rehers pleinlie as it was
I dare afferme hough þat þer was on
Moste horribill and most dredeful in such case
ffor Cadmus son callid Adamas
Hys son in lawe thurgh fals melancolie
ffell soudenlie into a frenesie

¶ Of whome þe wyf was callyd Inoe 2080
Cadmus doughter as ye haue herde expresse
Which thurgh þe constreinte of hys infirmite
In hys rage and furius wodnes
Thought þat hys wyf was a lionesse
And his wylde imaginacions
Thought his · ij · Chyldyrn were also · ij · lones

¶ And vpon them full lowde he gan to crye
Toward hys wyf in haste he ranne anon
And from hyr armes þer was no remedie
The chylde he hent · and on a Craggie stone 2090
He gan to braste it and breke it euery bone
The which chyld Bochas writyth þus

ffull tendir and yong was callid Leuchus
 ¶ And of þis woofull soden aventure
 Of hys rage whan she toke heede
 As moste soryfull of any creature
 Hyr othir chylde anon she hent for drede ·
 ffor of socoure she knewe no bettyr speede
 Sone as she myght gon haste ought of his syght
 But welaway as she toke hyr to flyght 2100
 ¶ And hyr husbond came aftyr pursuyng
 Lyke a woode lion in hys cruelte
 Down from a mounten which was dependyng
 She and hyr chylde fell into þe see
 Was it not ruth · was it not pite
 A kynges doughter hyr lorde in Thebes crownyd
 He to be woode · *and* she for ferde so drownyd 2107
 ¶ The grete myscheve fell in the lyne 2045
 Of kyng Cadmus þurgh his onhappy chaunce
 ffortune his ~~so~~ nobles gan to vndirmynte vnd[irmyne]
 And thought she wolde hys glorie disa[uaunce]
 All worldlie gladnes is medlith with grev[auunce]
 Experience of Cadmus · ye may se · 2050
 So importable was his aduersite ·

[8v, col. a]

¶ ffor while he sat most hyghest in his glorie
 No parte eclipsyd of his prosperite
 Hys bright renoun and his riall memorie
 In Realmes spredde and many a ferre cuntre
 And he moste wylfull in hys hygh see
 Sat with hys linage moste hygh in his nobles
 Then cam fortune þe fals enchaunteresse
 ¶ Of wylfulness · and fonde occasion
 Agayn þis Cadmus and made his renoun dull 2060
 Of his kynred by fals collusion
 She gan away the bryghtist feddyrs pull
 And when his shynyng was wex vp to þe full
 Aftyr the chaunge of fortunes lawe
 Hys glorie gan withcrese and withdrawe
 ¶ It was more grevous to hys dignite ·
 A soden fall from his high nobles
 Then yf he neuer hadde be
 Set in þe astate · of so grete worthynes
 ffor the furius mortall hevynes 2070
 Of hys kynred withoutyn eny more
 Wolde haue grevyd a pore man ful sore 2072
 ¶ Lo here the ende of Cadmus euery dele 2108
 Hys chyl dren slayn and hys allyes all
 And he hymself from fortunes whele 2110

When he leste wenyd · ful sodenlie is fall
 Hys litill sugre tempyrd with mykyll gall
 ffor amonge all his mortall peynes
 This liegemen of Thebe Citesyns
 ¶ Made agayn hym a conspiracion
 Put hym in Exile and his wyf also
 Hys sonnes his doughtres brought to destruccion
 And to þe newe reysyng of his mortall wo
 He and his wyfe compellid both two
 ffor werray pouerte and verrey indigence 2120
 In þeir laste age to purchas þeire dispence 2121
 ¶ But þe goddys of mercy and of pite 2143
 When þei them sawe by fortune so cast down
 ffrom þeire estates into grete pouerte
 Hauyng of þem ful grete compassion
 They made of them a transformacion
 Of both tweine þem yevyng a liknes
 Of Serpentes to lyve in wyldyrnes 2149
 ¶ Thus of Cadmus þe sorowes to descriue 2122
 And his myschef to put in remembraunce
 He banysshid was twys by hys lyue
 ffyrst by his fadyrs cruell ordinaunce
 Of his Sistre to make inguraunce
 And aldirlast of ⁱⁿ his onweldie age
 He was compellid to holde his passage
 ¶ Oute of Thebes his wyf and he allon
 In sorowe and wepyng to complish vp þer dayes 2130
 Into Illiry togyddyr be þei goone
 Theyr pacience put at full assayes
 Whos bityrnes felt not allayes
 Eke þ of þeire ende nor þeire onhappy fate
 Nor of þeire deth I fynde noon oþer fate ·
 ¶ Saue þat Ouide makith mencion
 And Iohn Bochas þe poet excellent
 Seith þat ij · brethyrn · Zeto and Amphion
 Oute of Thebes both by on assent
 Haue Cadmus into exile sent 2140
 His wyf also aftyr þeire high nobles
 To ende þeire lyf in sorow and wrecchidnes 2142
 ¶ O what astate may hymself assure 2150
 ffor to conserue his lyf in sicurnes
 What worldlie ioy may here longe indure ·

[8v, col. b]

Or where shall men now fynde stable
 Sith kinges princis from þeir high nobles
 Recorde of Cadmus be sodenlie brouht lowe
 And frome the whele of fortune ouerthrowe

¶ Who may susteine the pitevus auenture
Of this Tragedie by wrytyng expresse
Is it not lyke vnto the chauntuplure
Begynnyng with ioye endyng ~~w~~ in wrec[chidnes] 2160

All worldlie blys is meint with bittirn[es]
The soden chaunge þerof may no man knowe
ffor who sitte highest is sonest ouerthrowe
¶ Was in this worlde yit neuer creature
Rekyn vp princis for all þeir grete hig[h nobles]
ffortune couth reclyne them to hir lure
And them inpersch thurgh hyr frowardn[es]
Wherfor ye lordys with all *your* grete ric[h~~es~~]
Beth ware affore or ye daunce on the [rowe]
Suche as fortune from hyr whole th[~~rowe~~] 2170

De casu Oetis Regis Colchos ciuit[atis]

¶ When Iohn Bochas was most diligen[t]

To considre þe successiones
Of linage with all hys intente
In his wrytyng and descripcions
To compile ^{the} generaciones
Of many noble famus of estate
I mene of such os were infortunate

¶ In his serchyng he founde not oute a fewe
That were vnhappy founde in theire lyvyng
To his *presentence* anon þer gan hym shewe 2180
A multitude full pitevouslie wepyng
Amonge which full doolfull pleynyng
Cam fyrst Oetes and hath his pleint begunne
Kynge of Colchos and ~~some~~ ^{some} ^{son} vnto þe Sunne

¶ ffor of phebus which is so fresh and clere
Poetis write þat he is son and heyre
Because he was so myghty of powere
So fresh so lusty manlie and right fayre
But of fortune he fell in grete dispayre
Cursyng his fate and his destynye 2190
Whan Iason firste entred his cuntre

¶ By pelleus sent from Thesalie
Ther for to complissh by diligent labour
The grete emprises thurgh hys cheualrie
Yf godde and fortune liste to don hym fauour
That he myght wynne the tresoure
That is to mene þat he were so bolde
The ~~rome~~ ^{Ramme} to assaile þat bare þe fles of golde

¶ This said Iason thurgh þe counsell of Mede
By sorcery and incarnacion 2200
The Bullys sought horrible for to se
And venquisshed the venemus dragon
The kynge dispoiled of his possession

Accomplished with ~~dragons~~ *carectes and figures*

Of Colchos þe dredfull aventures

¶ And afyrwarde when he his purpos hadde

He lefte Oetis in full grete dispeire

And Medea forth with hym he ledde

And hir broþer which was þe kynges heire

But os I fynde hough in hys repayre

2210

Oute of Colchos when þei can remeve

Kyng Oetis aftyr them can sewe

¶ Vpon Iason avengid for to be

Withoute taryying he solued prowldie

[9r, col. a]

[T]he which thyng when Iason did se

[T]his Medea can shape a remedie

[S]he toke hyr broþer and slough cruellie

[A]nd hym disembred as bokys make mynde

[An]d Pecemel she caste in a felde behynde

¶ [S]he gan hym caste all besprent with bloode

2220

[W]hereof hyr fadre when he had a sight

[fful] pale of chere stille in the felde he stode

[Wh]ile she and Iason to þem vnto flight

[I tr]owe þat tyme þe moste woful wyght

[That] was alyve when he did knowe

[Hys] chylde disembred and abrode sowe

¶ [Whi]ch cause was alas and welaway

[Tha]t he so stinte as man disconsolate

[While] þat Iason fro Colchos went away

[And M]edea moste infortunate

2230

[Was] grounde and rote of þis mortall debate

[ffor who] sawe euer or redde of such an oþer

[To sa]ue a straunger *and* liste to sle hyr broþer

¶ [ffor]sake hyr fadir hyr cuntre and kynred

[T]he londe enporisshed thurgh hyr robberie

Of hyr worship she toke non othir hede

Loue had hir brought in such a fantasie

And while þat she bode in Thesalie

And with Iason did þer soiourne

She made Esan to youth to retourne ·

2240

¶ A yerde she toke þat was drye and olde

And hir herbes and *commixtions*

She made it boile in Ouide it is tolde

And by *carectes* and *incantacions*

And with *crafte* of hir *coniuracions*

The yerde began to budde and blossom newe

And to bere frute and levys fresh of hue

¶ And *sembleable* with hir *confeccions*

Hys olde *humeus* she hath *depurid* clene

And with hyr lusty fresh pocions 2250
 Hys emptie skynne tremblyng *and* right lene
 Pale and wanne þat no bloode was sene ·
 But as it was a dedelie creature
 All this hath she transformyd by nature
 ¶ Made hym lusty and fresh of his corage
 Gladde of hert ~~h~~ lovelie of chere *and* sight
 Ryght well hewyd and clere of hys visage
 Wondir deliuer both of force and myght
 In all his membres and weldy and as lyght
 As euer he was and in the same astate 2260
 By crafte of Mede he was so alleuate
 ¶ Aftyr all þis agayn kyng Pelleus
 She gan maligne vncler vnto Iason
 And of Envie she procedith þus
 The kinges doughtres she drowe to hyr anon
 Them counselling þat þei shuld gon
 Vnto þeire fadir *and* playnly to them sayn
 Yf he desyred to be yong agayn
 ¶ ffull restorid his force to recure
 And þerwithall in lusty age floure 2270
 She behight to do hyr besy cure
 Lyk his desire to helpe and socoure
 And þis matier so craftilie laboure
 ffinallie stonde in the same case
 To be made yonge as hir broþer was
 ¶ Touchyng such thyng for more evidence
 This Medea hath to the doughtres tolde
 Of intente to yeve more credence

[9r, col. b]

She bad hym take a Ramme þat was right olde
 And with a knyf for to be so bolde 2280
 To sle þis beste afor them þer he stode
 And in a vesell drawe oute his olde bloode
 ¶ ffully affermyng lyke as it wer true
 That he should be a lambe agayne
 ffor she by crafte wolde his blode renewe
 In such wyse by euydencez playn
 Þat of olde tokyn shuld be seyn
 In all his membres as lusty and intiere
 As was a lambe eyued of o yere
 ¶ And here vpon in full sleighty wyse 2290
 She began a processe of full fals treson
 The sistres made vpon þat lambe practise
 Drewe oute his bloode lyke hir intencion
 And she by crafte of fals illusion
 Blent hyr ien by apparence in veine

The olde Ramme to seme a lambe agayn
 ¶ Thus Medea by sleight compassyng
 Of Envie and venemus hatrede
 Excited hath þe sistrez in werkyng
 Agayn þeir fadir mortallie procede 2300
 With sharpe knyvys þei made þeir fadir blede
 In myddys of þe hert thurghoute euery veine
 Supposyng þe sely sistres tweine
 ¶ That Pelleus renued shuld be
 To youth agayn as force and of substaunce
 But finallie by treson of Mede
 He loste his lyfe such was his woful chaunce
 ffor she it wrought onlie of vengeaunce
 As rote and grounde of þis cruell dede
 Againe þe nature of all womanhede 2310
 ¶ Supposyng in hir opinion
 Hough þat þe deth gretly shuld plese
 Of Peleus vnto hir lorde Iason
 Thurgh grete increce set his hert at ese
 But it reboundid vnto hir disese
 Pat finallie Iason hir forsooke
 ffor hir offence and he his wey toke
 ¶ Into Corinthe toward þe kyng Creon
 Whos doughtre Creusa for hir grete beaute
 Was aftyr weddyd vnto Iason 2320
 But when þis weddyng was knowen to Mede
 Caste she wolde þervpon avengid be
 Began to conspire of malice and Envie
 And þurgh hir magyk and hir sorcorie
 ¶ In a full grete haste gan ordeigne
 A lityl cofyr oonlie of intende
 And by hir fayre yonge sonnes tweine
 With oper Iewels she hath þe cofyr sent
 Vnto Creusa makyng a present
 Which of malice she liste so dispose 2330
 Pat when Creusa þe cofir did unclose
 ¶ The fyre braste oute a ful large space
 And brent Creusa by a ful grete violence
 Set on fyre pleyntlie all þe place
 By inchauntement þer was no resistence
 All went on fyre þat was in hir presence
 The vengeaunce did full grete damage
 But when Iason þe fyre sawe in his rage
 ¶ And considred þe malice of Mede 2339
 Withoute routh or womanlie pite 2346
 She falsly mordred þe chyldren þat she bar[e]

[9v, col. a]

Lyke a steppemodre avengid for to be
 Lut þeire throtys or þei were ware or se 2349
 But for hatred she hadde vnto Iason 2351
 Aftyr þis mordre she fledde away anon
 ¶ So escapyng his indignacion
 By crafte of magyk she went at liberte
 To Athens in þat Region
 She weddyd was into the kyng Egee
 Not longe aftyr a son by hym hadde she
 Þe which Child myn auctour telleth þus
 Aftyr Medea callid was ~~Medeus~~ Medus
 ¶ Aftyr whos name þe famus Region 2360
 Namyd was which callid is mede
 But folowyng ay hyr olde condicion
 This Medea voide of fame and drede
 Compassid hath of wylful fals hatrede
 Þat Theseus þe son of kynge Egee
 With newe poyson shall devourid be
 ¶ But Theseus ful like a manlie knyght
 In repeyryng home to his cuntre
 Of high prudence espyed anon right
 Þe mortall vengeance þe grete cruelte 2370
 Of his Stepmodir the which of Enmite
 Concludid hath hir intencion
 Hym to destrue vnwarlie with poyson
 ¶ Hyr hert of malice cruell and horribil
 As she þat was with treson euer alliede
 When þat she sawe hir purpose moste odibil
 By kyng Egeus fully was espyed
 She hath hyr hert and wittys now applied
 As in þis boke poetis haue compiled
 Agayn to Iason restorid to be and reconsilid 2380
 ¶ She fledde away for fere of Theseus
 Leste þat he hadde don *omn* hir vengeance
 And finalli as writeth Ouidius
 And morall Senec concludith in substaunce
 In his Tragedies makyng remembraunce
 Hough Medea lyke as poetis seyn
 Vnto Iason restorid was agayn
 ¶ Touchyng the ende saue fulfillyng hir purpos 2388/2395
 Myn auctour tellith þat Iason and Medee 2396
 Reuokyd haue agayn vnto ~~Ko~~ Colchos
 His fadre Oetis and from his pouerte
 Brought hym agayn vnto his roiall see
 And to his crown by force þei did hym restore 2400
 Touchyng his ende of hym I fynde no more
 ¶ This his fortune hath turnyd to and fro
 ffyrste lyke a kyng hauyng ful grete riches

Afyr lvyng in pouerte and in wo
[S]ithen restorid to his worthines
Thus ay is sorow meddylde with gladnes
Who can aduerte in all worldlie thyng
Recorde of Minos þe noble worthi kyng

De casu Minois Regis Crete

TO whom I muste nowe my stile dresse
ffolowyng þe traces of Bocacius 2410
The which Minos Bochas doth expresse
Touchyng his birth he writith pleyndie þus
That he was manlie wyse and vertuus
Son by descent of Iubiter þe grete
And Europa born to be eyre in Crete
¶ And of his person wondir delectable
fful renomid of wisdom and science
By diuerse titles of laude commendable
Of byrth of bloode of knyghthode *and* prudens

[9v, col. b]

ffor by his studie and entier diligence 2420
He founde fyrste lawes groundid on reson
Whereby Crete þe famus region
¶ Governde was and set in stabilnes
All Iniuries and wronge to reforme
Made statutes extorcions to repressse
Of righthuesnes þei toke þeir fryste forme
And þat iche man shuld hymself conforme
Lyke þe degres subiecte and souereigne
þat no man had matier to complayn

¶ He made his lieges to ligge in quiete 2430
Clere shynyng in his roiall nobles
With swerde and spere sittyng in his se[e]
And while he floured in his worthines
He toke a wyfe of excellent fayrnes
Doughter to phebus in Bochas ye may [se]
And she was callid fayre Paciphe

¶ ~~A~~ And hir fadre by record of writyng
In his tyme was holdyn ful famus
Of þe Ile of Rodys he was lorde and kyng
And his dayes of porte ful gloriou 2440
Ryght proude in armys and victorius
Takyng witnes of Methamorphosios
Hys doughter hadde · iij · children by Minos

¶ The fyrste a son callid Mandroge
And aftrwarde full fayre doughtres tweyne
Ryght womanlie and goodlie on to se
But as fortune for them did ordeigne
They fest þeire liue with trouble *and* grete peyne

Callid Adriana *and* Phedra was þat oþer
 ffolowyng þeir fate his myght be noon oþer 2450
 ¶ Androgeus by kyng Minos was sent
 ffor he shuld profit in clergy
 To Athens of vertuus intent
 Ther to studie in Philosophie
 And for he began to ~~treson~~ ^inrese^ and multiplie
 And passe all oþer by studie in lernyng
 And to excell his felowys in connyng
 ¶ They of Envie and fals malice alas
 Made agayn hym a conspiracion
 And from a pynacle sacred to Pallas 2460
 Of full grete hight · þei made hym tomble doun
 ffor which iniurie Bochas makith mencion
 His fadir Minos avengid for to be
 Leyde a grete powere abought þe cite
 ¶ He caste hym fully þat no man shuld hym lete
 But þat he wolde do cruellie vengeaunce
 [A]nd rownde aboute so sore he hem besette
 With men of armes and with his ordinaunce
 Pat finallie he broughte þem to outraunce
 And he constreyned within a litle space 2470
 Theire lyf þeire deth submitted to his grace
 ¶ But while þei made agayn hym resistence
 Supposyng his power to withstonde
 Nisus þat was kyng of Magarence
 Agayn Minos þo þeire party tok on hande
 And oft tymes as ye shal vndrestonde
 When kyng Minos þe Cite did assaile
 Nisus within with myghty apparaile
 ¶ Vpon þe walle stode in his defens
 When þat Minos ful lyk a manly knyght 2480

[10r, col. a]

[ffa]ught without with sturdie violence
 [Li]k Mars hymself in stele armyd bright
 [W]herof when Scilla ones had a sight
 [Do]ughte to Nisus aduertyng his prowes
 [An]on for loue she fell in grete destres
 [¶] [She] was supprised with his high nobles ·
 [Hys] manlie force *experte* manyfolde
 [Se]t Scilla in grete hevynes
 [ffor] loue of Minos in *poetis* it is tolde
 [Ma]de hir hert *presumen* and be bolde 2490
 [ffir]ste hirself to put in parti
 [Hir] fadyrs lyfe · þe cite þe clergie
 [¶] [For] loue hath set hir hert osyde
 [Aga]yn nature hir blode and hir kynred

[And] all frenship fro hir she gan deuide
 [And] of hir worship she toke no *maner* hede
 [Loue] made hir cruell agayn all womanhede
 [ffirst]e hir herte ^{^so^} sore set afyre
 [Hir] fadyrs deth falslie to conspire
 ¶ffor kyng Minos beyng a *stranger* 2500
 [Was s]o imprintid in hir opinion
 [Of c]reatures þer stode non so nere
 An[d] for his sake by ful fals treson
 She compassid the destruccion
 ffyrste of hir fadre and of þe cite
 So straunge a thyng alas hough myght it be
 ¶That a woman of yerys yong and tendir
 Couthe ymagin so *mervelus* a thyng
 But oft it fallith þat creatures s̄ sclendir
 Vndir a face of Angelik lokyng 2510
 Ben verrey ~~wolves~~ wolues outward in wyrkyng
 Eke vndir coloure of porte femynyne
 Som be founde *verrey* serpentine
 ¶Lambes in shewyng shadewyd with meknes
 Cruell as Tygyrs who doth þem offence
 Of humble chere *pretendyng* a lyknes
 But o t̄ alas what harme doth apparens
 What damage doth countrefet Innocence
 Vndir a mantell shrowdid of womanhed
 When feynynd falsnes doth þeir bridil lede 2520
 ¶ffor this Scilla þe kynges doughter dere
 In whome he set his hoole affeccion
 His hertys ioy his plesaunce most intiere
 His worldlie blys *and* his consolacion
 But she all turnyd to his confusion
 Not lyke a doughter but lyke a sorceresse
 His deth compassid þe story bereth witnes
 ¶Hir fadir had a fatall heere þat shone
 Brghter þen golde in which he did assure
 Manlie to fight agayn his mortall fone 2530
 ffor on his heede while it did indure
 He shuld venquyssh by manhode *and* recure
 And thurgh his knyghthode to his increas *and* glorie
 In euery querele wyne þe victorie
 ¶But when king Nisus hir fadir lay aslepe
 Vpon a nyght a *parcell* afforn þe day
 ffull priuelie or he toke kepe
 The here of golde þis Scilla kut away
 And vnto Minos armyd þer he lay
 She hym presentid thurgh hir ordinaunce 2540
 Of fals intent hym for to do plesaunce
 ¶But in þis matier lyke as write Ouide

Methamorphosios who so taketh hede
Hir fadir slepyng she knelyng by hys side

[10r, col. b]

Toke a sharpe knyfe withoute fere or drede
While he lay nakyd she kerue ~~ow~~ ^on^ twoo his hede
Stale hir way of full fals intende
And to kyng Minos þe hede she doth present .

¶ And in hir commyng to hys presence
Hir fadirs hede when she afforn hym leyde 2550

Nothyng asshamyd of hir grete offence
Vnto Minos þus she did abrayde
And with bolde chere euyng þus she sayde
My lorde *quod* she with supporte of youre grace
Yevith to my tale leysur tyme and space .

¶ Certys my lorde loue hath excetid me
And constreynyng to this cruel dede
To sle my fadir . destrue my Cite
ffor to gete me worship forsake womanhede
And made me hardy to make my fadir blede 2560

Thyng horrible þus I haue vndirtake
ffor to accomplissh onlie for youre sake
¶ Myself disheretid for loue of *your* persone
Callid in my cuntre a fals traioresse
Disconsolate stale away allon
Of new defamid and namyd a maistres
Of fals mordre ~~of fals~~ I bryng a grete witnes
My fadirs heede and his dedlie visage
Agayn nature to forthir youre viage

¶ Wherfor I pray þat ye liste aduertise 2570
And considir lyke a gentil knyght

Hough I for loue towarde *your* grete emprise
Vnto grete forthering also of right
Haue fyrste my fadir *depriu*yd of his myght
Refte hym his lyfe despoiled his riches
To do plesaunce to youre high nobles

¶ And nothyng aske to my guerdon
Nor to my rewarde þat myght me availe
But þat I myght haue full possession 2580
Of youre *person* moste worthie in bataile

ffor þer is no tresoure þat may *counterv*aile
To my desire as þat ye wolde in dede
Goodelie accepte me and my maydynhede

¶ Ye may me saue and spyll with a worde
Make me moste gladde moste dolorous
I not require of yow my *souereigne* lorde
But þat ye wolde be to me gracijs
ffor bloode and kynne and my fadirs hous

All I left behynde yf ye liste aduerte
 And vndepartid yeve me youre herte 2590
 ¶ Which to youre hignes ought not suffice
 All þing considred in youre roiall estate
 Conceyveth also in hough vncouth wyse
 ffor youre love I stond desolate
 Saeue of youre mercy fully disconsolate
 Here is all and *summe* youre love I by so sore
 But yf ye do grace I can sey to yow no more
 ¶ And when she had hir tale tolde knelyng
 With a *maner* pretens of womanhede
 Of all hir treson a pointe not conceling 2600
 The kyng astodied of hyr horrible dede
 By grete advise peysyd and take hede
 It was not fittyng to prince nor kyng
 To do fauour to so frowarde a thyng
 ¶ With trouble hert and a face pale
 His looke vpcaste and saide godde forbed
 That euer in cronicle in storie or in tale
 That eny man shuld of Minos [r]ede

[10v, col. a]

Hough he supportid so venemus a dede
 ffavour a woman alas and weleaway 2610
 Which slough hir fadir when in bedde lay
 ¶ But for youre hatefull and vnkynd rage
 I pray þe goddes ichon and Saturne
 To take vengeaunce on *your* fals outeraige
 ffor euer wher as ye soiourne
 Þat al thyng may agayn yow turne
 Londe and see shortlie to *expresse*
 Þei ben infecte with youre cursidnes
 ¶ Your own mouth youre outrage doth accuse
 And youre actez ben so abhominable 2620
 That youre gyftys I fully do refuse
 Thei be so frowarde and so repreueable
 That youre *persone* vengeable and vnstable
 Within my courte it were a thyng not fayre
 That ye shuld abide or haue repaire
 ¶ Ye ben so hatefull vpon euery syde
 And contraius of condicion
 I pray Tellus which of þe erth is guyde
 And to Neptunus I make þis orison
 As ferre as strecchith þe dominacion 2630
 Vndre þe boundes of þe regallie
 And duellyng place þat þei to yow denie
 ¶ When Minos hadde his answere þus devysed
 On reason groundid and of equite

And Scilla sawe hough she was despiside
 Knewe no partie passage nor cuntre
 To fynde socour whidir she myght fle
 But dispeired as a Traytoresse
 Towarde þe see anon she gan hir dresse
 ¶ To entre þe water pleinlie yf she myght 2640
 ffor verrey shame hyrself for to shrowde
 And when þe goddys þerof had a sight
 They turnyd hir as þei myght or coude
 Into a quayle for to syng lowde
 Hir fadir Nisus also þei did transmue
 Into a sperhauke þe quaile to pursu
 ¶ This was þe ende of Nisus and of Scilla
 And aftyrwarde of Athens þe town
 Was yoldin vp to standen at wyll 2650
 Of kyng Minos withoute condicion
 Euery thirde yeere by reuolucion
 They of the cite shulde not delay
 ix · of þeir children a tribute for to pay
 ¶ This was of Minos þe Imposicion
 Vpon Athens and of verrey drede
 Thei obeied as made is mencion
 And þeir children yere by yere þei did lede
 Into Crete þe Minotaure to fede
 Vnto þis monstre ordeigned for repaste
 Which at þeir *commyn*g deuoured wer in haste 2660
 ¶ But or I ferther do procede
 In this matier I wyl do my cure
 To declare yf ye liste take hede
 Of þis monstre to telle þe engendir
 Vncouth to here and agayn nature
 ffor by þe wrytyng of Ouidius
 This outhlie beste was engendird þus
 ¶ Methamorphoseos þe *maner* ye may se
 Mynos hadde a þ Bull of grete fayrnes 2670
 Whyte as mylke and þe quene Paciphe
 Lovid hym so hote þe storie berith witnes
 And Dedalus did his besynes
 [B]y subtile crafte *and* made his gynnys so ·

[10v, col. b]

That agayn kynde with hir he hadde to do
 ¶ And conceived a beste monstruus
 Pat was departid half Bull and half man
 And as poetis by wrytyng techith vs
 Of Minotaurus þus the name began
 And Dedalus not long aftyr · when
 This monstre was by þe quene forth broug[ht] 2680

This subtile werkman hath an hous wroug[ht]

¶ Callid laborintus diuerse and vncouth
ffull of wrynclis and of straungnes
Outhlie to knowe which is northe or south
Or to what partie a man shulde hym dress[e]
ffolkis wer þer blint with furius derknes
Who þat entred his t̄ returne was in vein[e]
Withoute a clewe for to resorte ageyn

¶ Of Minotaurus þis was þe habitacle
Lyk a prison made for turmentrie
ffor dampnyd folk a peyneful tabernacle
ffor all þat lay þerin in partie

The Monstre ~~moste~~ muste deuour þem and de[fi]e
And specially was ordeigned þis turment
ffor all þat were doun from Athens sent

¶ But in þis matier summe bookys varie
And afferme hough quene Paciphe
Of kyng Minos louyd a secretarie
Callyd Taurus in Bochas ye may se
And þus þe kyng for all his royalte
Decevyd was · for who may eny while
Hymself preserue wher women list begyle

¶ ffor by this Taurus Bochas berith witnes
Quene Pacife hadde a childe ful fayre
Mynos not knowyng by no liknes
But þat þe child was born to be his heire
His truste was goode he fell in no dispaire
ffor summe husbandes as poetis haue compilid
Which moste truste in them · ar sonyst begylyd

¶ Innocentes can not deme amys
Namelie of wyues þat be founde true
Clerkys may write but doutles þus it is
Of þeir nature þei loue no thyng new
Stedfast of hert þei chaunge not þer hew
Haukys best preuid somwhile a chek make
Yit for a fawt þe foule is not forsake

¶ Of þis matier write I wyl no more
But ay þe tribute and seruage of þe town
Procedith forth þei constreynyd were so sore
Lyke as þeir lot turnyd vp ^and^ s̄e doun
ffor þer was made non excepcion

Of high ne lowe · nor soure nor swete
¶ But as it fell þei were sent into Crete
The statute was so inlie rigure
They toke þeir sorow as it cam abought
Til at þe laste it fell to oon Theseus
That he muste go forth emonge þe route
Kyng Eges sun beyyng in grete doute

Touchyng his lyf which myght not be soiourid
 But þat he muste with oþer be devourid 2730
 ¶ Which Theseus for his worthines
 And of his knyghthode for þe grete increce
 Þurgh manlie force *and* for his high prowes
 Somtyme was callid þe secund Hercules
 Mong Amozanes he put hymself in prece
 Weddid Ipolita as bookys specifie
 The hardy quene callid of ~~fem~~ feminy

[11r, col. a]

¶ And aftyr to Thebes he is gon
 Halpe þer þe ladies euerychon oute of thrall
 Which þat compleynyd vpon þe kyng Creon 2740
 Which þem distroubild like þeir estates roiall
 To holde and halow þe festes funerall
 Of þe lordes as Quenys and princesses
 Of wyuelie trowth to shewe þeir kyndnes
 ¶ ffor when þe Duke þe *maner* hadde seen
 And of Creon þe grete iniquite
 To þe ladies he made deliuer agayn
 The lordes ~~þony~~ bones of routh *and* of pite
 Yit in his youth oute of his cite
 He was deliuerde by statute full odibil 2750
 To be ~~deue~~ devourid of this beste horribil
 ¶ [H]e goth to prison for all his semlines
 As þe statute felly did ordeigne
 But of routh and of ~~get~~ gentilnes
 Hym to *preserue* from þat dedlie peine
 Of kyng Minos þe goodlie doughtres tweine
 Adriane shope a remedie
 And fayre Phedra þat he shul not die
 ¶ Thurgh þeire helpe he hath þe monstre slayn
 Þat wes dredefull and and outhlie for to se 2760
 By them he eskapid wherof he was ful fayn
 Ledde þem with hym toward his cuntre
 And by the way deuoyde of all pite
 Adriane s he falslie hath forsake
 Agayn his suraunce *and* Phedra he getake
 ¶ In mydde þe se he lefte hir in an Ile
 Towarde no partie she knewe no decline
 She crieth she wepith alas þe harde while
 ffor of hir fate þis was þe mortall fine
 Þat for pite Bachus þe godde of wyne 2770
 Toke hir to his wyfe whos crown of stones · fine
 Doth in hevyn now with · ix · sterres shine
 ¶ Thus of Theseus ye may beholde and se
 To Adriane the grete vnstedfastnes

The grete ontrouth þe mutabilite
The broke assurance and newfangilnes
But sely women kepe þeir stedfastnes
Ay ondefylid som oþer while of þeir kynde
Thei muste þem purvey when men be found vnkynd

¶ Of Theseus I can no more yow seyn 2780
In this matier to make of hym memorie ·
But to kyng Minos I wyl resort ageyn
To tell hough fortune ay fals and *transitoie*
In what poyntes defacyd hath his glorie
ffyrste of ichon Bochas doth specifie
Of Paciphe þe foule avoutrie ·

¶ Which was his wyf *and* stooode wel on his *grace*
To his plesaunce she was moste *souereigne*
But a cloude of ful small trespass
Made hyr lorde at hir *disdeigne* 2790
But he of wysdom bare *priuēlie* his peine
ffro such case · þis is my sentence
Let prudent husbandes take þem to pacience ·

¶ An oþer thyng eke Minos gan eke compleyn
Hauyng in hert þerof ful grete grevaunce
That he loste his feyre d[*ought*]ris ⁊ tweine
And Minotaurus slayn with mischaunce
Eke vnto hym it was a grete penaunce
þat Theseus was goon at *liberte* ·
And from all tribute deliuerde þe Cite · 2800

[11r, col. b]

¶ It grevid hym eke in countenaunce and charite
That Theseus Adrian forsoke
It likyd hym not also þe *maner*
Vnto his wyf þat he Phedra toke
And yit þis Phedra lyke as seith þe booke
Hadde · ij · sunnys · by þis Theseus
ffyrste Demophon *and* next Antilocus

¶ Eke Theseus aftyr gan hym drawe
Towarde Cecill in stele armyd clene ·
With Pirotheus in armys his felowe 2810
ffor to ravish Proserpina the quene ·
But of intente ful onclene ·

Lovid hir stepson callid Ipolitus
But for he was to hir daungerus
¶ And to hir luste froward and contrarie
In his s apport not goodelie and benigne ·
Of fals intent anon she gan to varie
And againe hym self full felly to maligne
With a pretens of many tokyn and signe
Of womanhed she gan hym accuse

Hir avoutrie falslie to excuse 2821
 ¶ She hath accusid yong Ipolitus 2829
 Of fals avoutrie in his tendir age 2830
 Tolde and affermyd to Duke Theseus
 With ful bolde chere and playn visage
 Hough he purposid ~~ones~~ ^oonlie^ in his rage
 Onlie by force hir beaute to oppresse
 Hir lorde besechyng to reforme *and* redresse
 ¶ A grete iniurie don vnto his wyf
 While he was absent for þinges þat bare charge
 Wyues of talez ben sumtyme inuentiue
 To suffre þeir tonges falslie flen at large
 But folk þat liste of daunger þem discharge 2840
 Of such accusyng ne take þei no heede
 Tyl þe trouth be tried oute in dede 2842
 ¶ Who sey þat women can not Imagine 2822
 In þeir defence talez full vntrue
 To þeir desyre yf men liste not incline
 Nor on þeir feyned fals wo to rue
 Anon þei cam compasse thynges newe
 ffysh and fynd oute in their intencion
 A couerte cloude to shadow þeir treson 2828
 ¶ I mene no thyng of wyues þat be goode 2843
 Nor of women þat floure in Innocence
 ffor godde forbede and the holy rode
 But men shuld do due reuerence
 To þeir nobles and þeir excellens
 Declare þeir beaute and þeir vertu shewe
 And more þem cherish because þer be f but fewe ·
 ¶ Touchyng the accusing agayn Ipolitus 2850
 Thof it so were þat it was fals in dede
 Yit he for shame and fere of Theseus
 As in storie ye may beholde and rede
 In his hert he caught a maner drede
 Þat he alas þis seli yong knyght
 ffled and withdraw hym out of his fadirs sight
 ¶ His Indignacion pleinlie to eschewe
 Thof by s desert in him was no lake
 Of hasty drede as he can remewe
 Outhir in a chare or vppon hors bak 2860
 His hors affrayed þer fell a soden wra[k]
 Doune from a roche pendaunt as ye shal lere
 He and his chare were drowned both in fere
 ¶ Thus vngilti · most lusty in his youth
 He was conveied to his destruccion
 The sclaunder conspired as it is wel cou[th]
 By fals Phedra but in conclusion

[11v, col. a]

The sclaudir turnyd to hir confusion
ffor when she wyste Ipolitus weddid
Thurgh hir defaute anon for shame *and* drede 2870

¶She toke a swerd ful sharpe whet *and* grounde
And þerwithall she rofe hir here in tweine
Lo hough þat vengeaunce wyl ay agayn rebounde
On them þat falslie don þer þe bysy peine
To sclaudir folke for like os þei ordeigne
With þeir defautes oþer folke to aquyte atwite
God at þe laste þeir malice can aquite ·

¶Yit som bokys of Phedra do recorde
That she ashamyd and confusid of þis dede
Hyng hirsself vp ful high with a corde 2880
Lo hough fals sclaudir can folk quyte þer mede
Wherfor I counsel euery man take hede
In such matiers as stond in no certein
ffrom hasty language þeir tonges to restreine

De casu Cizaris ducis Regis Iabyn

Among oþer stories woful for to rede
Al besprent with terys in his face
fful sodenlie Iohn Bochas can tak hede
Amyddys of þe prece Zizara cam to place
And hough þat fortune can eke to mansse
This proude duke ful myghty *and* notable 2890
Of King Iabin callid þe constable

¶Of his oft leder and governere
To Israel verrey mortall foo ·
With peple he roode lyke a Conqueroure
And wher þat euer his meny did go
The erth quoke þe peple drie hym so
ffledde from his face wher he came aferre
ix · hundird waynes he hadde for þe werre

¶Stronglie enarmyd for þe werres
Who þat approachid to mayme hym *and* to wound 2900
ffor þis Tiranne of custom oft sithis
Hadde grete delite þe Iewys to confound
^[And al] þe þat his swerd hath founde^
Kying Iabin badde þe prince of Chanaan
In Israel spare chylde nor man

¶This Cizara was sent for to be þeir scourge
By goddys sufferance þeir synnez ^to^ chastyse
Their olde offencez to punish and to purge
As a flagel in many sondrie wyse
But whan of resoun þei gan þen better advise 2910

And for þeir trespasez to fall in repentaunce
Godde gan withdrawe þe hand of his vengeaunce
¶ffor þeir mischef þe gan þeir lorde to knowe

ffelyng þe prykke of his punicion
 And *mercy* then hath onbent þe bowe
 Of his full Ire and castigacion
 To godde þei made þeir Inuocacion
 And he them herd in þeir mortal drede
 In *Iudicum* þe storie ye may rede
 ¶ Hough in þe while þat þis Cizara 2920
 Shape ^{^hym^} of newe þe Iewys to oppresse
 In þeir defens godde sent þem oon Delbora
 A *prophetisse* þe story berith witnes
 To yeve them counsail þeir harmys to redresse
 And by þe spirit of hir *prophecie*
 ffor to withstond þe grete tirannie
 ¶ Of Cizara which was descendid doune
 With a gret oste into þe felde repeyrid
 But Delbora of high discrecion 2929
 And for to fight þeir corages sore apeyrid 2931
 When þat she sawe þe Iewys dispeirid 2930
 She made þem fyrste deuoutlie in þer drede 2932

[11v, col. b]

To crye to godde to helpe them in þeir nede 2933
 ¶ And when she herde *and* knewe of þe *commyng* 2941
 Of Cisara full grete puisaunce
 That was cunstable vnto þe myghty kyng
 Callid Iabin with al his ordinaunce
 Vpon Iewes for to take vengeance
 Þis Delbora can prudentlie intende
 Þe Iewes *partie* by wysdom to defende ·
 ¶ She badde barath hir husbond anon right
 Of Neptalim X · *mille* with hym take
 Agayn Cisara to fight for þeir right 2950
 And þat he shuld a grete inarmen make
 But he for drede þis iourney hath forsak[e]
 And durst not agayn hym to werry
 But she were *present and* liste hym to conv[eie]
 ¶ Well well *quod* she sith it stondesth so
 Then of wantrust ye haue a *maner* drede
 I wyl myself with yow go
 Yow to supporte in this grete nede
 But trustith fully as ye shall fynde in[dede]
 Þat a woman with laude honour *and* glorie 2960
 Shal fro yow wyne þe prys of this victorie
 ¶ It folowyd *after* sothlie as she sayde
 And wyselie she made hir ordinaunce
 And þe chefe charge on hirselle she layde
 As *princesse* of Iewes *gouernaunce*
 And prudentlie gan hirselle avaunce

With godde conveied *and* support of his *grace*
 With Cizara to mete in his ^{the} face
 ¶ And speciallie touchyng þis viage
 Godde toke away þe spirit and myght 2970
 ffro Cizara his force and his corage
 That he was fereful to entre into fight
 Kepte his chare and toke hym onto flight
 Knowyng no place surelie in to byde
 Tyll þat Iahell a woman did hym hyde
 ¶ Within hir tente almoste dede for drede
 Vndir a mantel desirous for to drynk
 She gaue hym mylk þe slepe fell in his hede
 And while þat he for hevynes gan wynk
 And sadlie slepte she gan hir bethynk 2980
 Thof she wold for Cizara so shape
 Pat with his lyfe he shoulde not ascape ·
 ¶ She toke a nayle þat was sharpe *and* longe
 And couertlie gan hirsself avaunce
 With an hambir myghty rounde and stronge
 She draue a nayle · lo þis was his vengeaunce
 Thurghoute his hede · se here þe soden chaunce
 Of tirannez þat truste in fortune
 Which wyl not longe to suffre continue
 ¶ In þeir fals vsurpyng tirannie 2990
 To holde peples in longe subieccion
 She can them blandish with hir flatric
 Vndir coloure of fals collusioun
 And with a soden transmutacion
 ffortune them can þat pore folke trouble
 Reuerse þeir pride with hir face double
 ¶ What shuld I lengar in þis matier tarie
 Thurgh þat lordeshipe be myghty famus
 Let Cizara be youre exemplarie
 Conquest victorie þof þei be victorius · 3000
 It not indureth · but it be vertuus
 Vnto þe worlde yf vertu be h behynde
 Men not reioyse to haue þeir name in mynde [**end of quire 1**]

[12r, col. a]

¶ ff for fortune thurgh hir frowardnes
 Hath kynges put oute of Regiones
 And she hath also thurgh hir doublenes
 [D]estruyd linages with their successions
 Made she not sometyme hir translacions
 Of the kyngdom callid Argivois
 To be transportid to Lacedemoniys 3010
 ¶ The same tyme when Cisare the proude
 Began goddys peple to put vndir fote

ffamus trompe blewe hir name vp loude
 With sugrid sownys semyng wondir swete
 But all his pride was rent vp by þe rote
 When þat his glorie · was outward most shewyng
 But who may truste euer eny wodlie þing
 ¶ffo[lk]ys haue afforne seen þe fundacion
 By remembraunce of olde antiquite
 [Of] myghty Troy and ^of^ Ilion 3020
 [Af]tyr destruyd of ^by^ Grekys þe Cite
 [T]o vs declaryng the mutabilite
 [Of] fals fortune whos fauour laste but awhile
 Shewyng ay truest whan she wyl begyle
 ¶So variable she is in hir delites
 Hur whele vntrusty *and* frowardlie moving
 Recorde I take of Madianitez
 Their vnwar fall full doolefully pleynyng
 Which shewyd themself pitevouslie wepyng
 To Iohn Bochas as he in writyng sought 3030
 Hough þat fortune agayn þeir princys wrought
 ¶Which þat governd þe land of Madian
 Trustyng of ^in^ pride of þeir grete puissaunce
 Agayn Iewys a werre þei began
 Purposing to bryng them to outraunce
 But þat godde þat holdith of werre þe balaunce
 And can of princis oppresse the veine glorie
 Yevith where hym liste þe conquest *and* victorie
 ¶Not to grete noumbre nor to grete multitude
 But to þat partie wher he seth þe right 3040
 His dredfull hande shortlie to conclude
 So holde vp by grace and sendith his myght
 The higher hand where he caste his sight
 And liste his power and his fauour showe
 Be it to many or be it to fewe
 ¶The wronge partie gladlie hath a fall
 Thof þer be Millions many mo þan oon
 I take witnes of Ieroboall
 Which is callid also Gedeon
 Þat with · CCCC faught agayn þe foon 3050
 Of Israhel þe bible can deuyse
 Whan he to godde hadde made his sacrifice
 ¶Shewyng to hym a thyng meruelus
 When þe flees with siluer dewe full shene
 Was sprent and wete þe storie tellith þus
 And rounde aboute þe soile and all þe grene
 Was founde drie *and* no droppe seene ·
 In tokyn oonlie þis Duke þis knyghtly man
 Shulde haue victorie of all Madian
 ¶This Gedeon take with hym but a fewe 3060

CCC · chosin which lappid þe ryver
Godde vnto such tokyns did shewe
And euidences afforn þat were ful clere
That he shuld be of right goode chere
And in wys his aduersaries drede
ffor no prowes nor manhode
¶Where godde aboue holdith champarty
Ther may agayn hym be made no defence ·

[12r, col. b]

ffor to strength wysdom ne chyualrie
Agayn his might is feble of resistance 3070

This was well previd in experience
When · CCC · with Gedeon in noumbre
So many thousandes by grace did encombre

¶This saide peple diuide into · iij ·

With their trumpis vpon þe derke nyght
By Gedeon þat hadde þe souereignete
With voide pottes and laumpis þerin light
And þus arayed þei entrid into fight

But vnto þem þis tokyn was fyrst knowe
When Gedeon his trumpe did blowe 3080

¶Thei blewe ichon and lowd gan to crie
Brake þeire pottes and shewed anon right
As þe storie doth pleylnie specifie
Their lampis shewyd with a ful soden light
Wherfor þeir ennemies astonyed in þeir sight
Were so troublid vpon euery syde ·
That in the felde þei durst not abide

¶The crie was þus of them euerychon
Thank to þe lorde moste noble and glorijs
Prys to þe swerde of myghty Gedeon 3090
Which hath vs causid to be victorius
Made oure enemies moste malicijs

Thurgh influence onlie of his grace
ffor verrey fere to fle affore oure face
¶Thus can þe lorde of magnificence
The meke exalte *and* the proude oppresse
Like as he fynd in hertes difference
So of his power he can his domus dresse
Mercy mengyd with his rightuesnes
His iugementes with longe delay differred 3100

¶Thus can þe lorde of magnificence
The meke exalte *and* the proude oppresse
Like as he fynd in hertes difference
So of his power he can his domus dresse
Mercy mengyd with his rightuesnes
His iugementes with longe delay differred
And ar he punish pite is ay *preferryd* ·

¶Myghty *princis* remembre þat youre powere
Is transitorie and no while abydyng
Has þis tragedie hath rehersed here
By euidences notable in shewyng
And by examples in substaunce witnessyng

pat all tirannes platlie to *termine*
 Muste from þeir astate sodenlie decline
 ¶ Phebus fresshe from his mydday spere
 His bemys brightest and hottest oute spredyng 3110
 But cloudie skyes ful oft approche nere
 To eclipse his light with þeir vnware *commyng*
 Non erthly ioy longe here abydyng
 Recorde of Titan which stondmele doth shyne
 Yit towarde nyght · his bemys decline
 ¶ Whan *pat* fortune is fayrest of hir chere
 By apparence and moste blandisshyng
 Then is she falsest iche ceson of þe yere
 Hir soden chaunges now vp now down turnyng
 The nyghtyngale in may doth freshly syng 3120
 But a bakwynter can somyr vndirmyne
 And all his freshnes he can sodenlie decline · 3122
De Casu Iocaste Regine Ciuitatis Thebes
 Of quene Iocasta Bochas doth eke indite 3158
 Princes of Thebes a myghty grete cite
 Of hir vnhappes he dolfully doth write 3160
 Ymagenyng hough he hir did se
 To hym appere in grete aduersite
 Lyke a woman *pat* wolde in terys reigne
 For *pat* fortune can at hir so disdeigne
 ¶ And thof she were defacyd of figure
 Ther shewyd in hir a maner mageste
 Of quenlie honour pleylnlie to discure ·

[12v, col. a]

His fortunes and infelicite
 And to declare pleinlie hough *pat* she
 Of all *princesse* þ which *pat* stode in estate 3170
 She was hir self moste infortunate
 ¶ Which gave to Bochas ful grete occasion
 When he sawe hir pitevus apparaile
 ffor to make a lamentacion
 Of vncouth sorowes which did hir assaile
 With a tragedie to wepe and to wayle
 Hir importable and hir dedlie stryfe
 Which *pat* she hadde duryng all hir lyf
 ¶ He write of hir a storie large and pleine
 And of hir birth fyrst he doth diffine 3180
 And affermith in his booke certeine
 She was descendid of a noble line
 In flouryng age eke when she did shyne
 She weddyd was for hir grete beaute
 Vnto þe kyng of Thebes þe Cite ·

¶ Which in his tyme was callid laius
 And when hir wombe by processe gan arise
 The kyng was gladde and also desirus
 The childis fate to knowe in som wyse
 And thought he wolde go do sacrifice 3190
 Vnto Apollo to haue knowlegyng befor
 Touchyng þe childe when ^{that} it were born
 ¶ What shulde folowe in conclusion
 He was desirus hasty for to se
 ffyrst by the heuynlie disposicion
 And by the fauoure yf it wold be
 Of Apollos myghty deite
 To haue answeare among his rites all
 Of his chylde what fate shuld fall
 ¶ His answeare ~~thought~~ ^{thof} it wer contrarie 3200
 To his desire · yit what it is indede
 Apollo tolde hym · and liste no lengar tarie
 That þis childe shuld verrelie in dede
 Shende his fadir *and* make his sydys blede
 And with his handes þer was non oþer wey
 But on his swerd he must nedys dey
 ¶ The kyng was hevy *and* trusted on þis sentence
 Sorowful in hert godde wote *and* nothyng fayn
 He caste afforn thurgh his *providence*
 That in all haste his son shuld be slayn 3210
 And þat he wolde not on oure delayn
 Aftyr his birth þ but bad his men to gon
 In to a forest and sle þe chylde anon
 ¶ Lyke his biddyng þe ministres wroute in dede
 Takyng the chyld tendre and yong of age
 And in to a forest with þem þei can it lede
 To be devourid of bestes moste sauage
 The modir alas fell almoste in a rage
 Seyng hir chyld so younglie fayre of face
 Shal þis be dede and did neuer no trespass 3220
 ¶ Litill wondir thof she felt smert
 To all women I reporte me
 And vnto modirs þat be tendir of hert
 In this matier Iuges for to be
 Was it not routh Was it not pite
 That a princesse and a quene alas
 Shuld knowe hir chyld devourid in such a case
 ¶ Aftyr his byrth laius toke goode kepe
 Withoute mercy respite or delay
 That vnto on which þat kepte his shepe 3230
 This yong chylde vpon a certen day
 Shal be deliuerd in all þe haste he may
 To þis intent it myght not be socured

[12v, col. b]

But þat she shulde of bestys be devourid ·

¶ This said shepherd goth forth anon right
The childe beholdyng of loke and face
Thought in his hert and in his invard sight
He shuld do vnto godde a grete trespas
To sle this chylde wherfor he did hym *grace*
Toke fyrste a knyf and did his bysy peyn
Thurghoute his fete to make in holys twei[ne]

3240

¶ He toke a small rodde *and* a young osyere
Percyd þe fete alas it was pite
Bounde hym faste and by goode leyser
The yong chylde he hynge vpon a tre
Of intent þat it s ne shuld be

Thurgh wylde bestes cruell and sauage
Be sodenlie devourid in þeire rage

¶ Vpon a tre while he hynge thus bounde
Of aventure by som occasioun

3250

A straunge shephird hath þe chyld founde
Which of pite and routh toke hym doun
Bare it with hym home vnto his town
Made his wyfe for to do hir peine
To fostir þis chylde with hir pappes tweine

¶ And when he was brought forth *and* recured
And ful made hole of his woundis sore
This yonge childe which all þis hath indurid
When he in age gann to wex more
And þat nature gan hym restore

3260

The said shepherd þat loued hym best of all
Aftyr his hurtes Edippus did hym call

¶ ffor Edippus is no more to seyn
Who þat conceivith þe exposicion
But fete percid thurghoute both tweine
In þat language as made his mencione
And to Meropa þe wyf of kyng Polibon
The shephird of full humble intente
Gan þe chyld ful louly to present

¶ And for þat she was baren of nature

3270

She and þe kyng of oon affeccion
Toke Edippus both into þeir cure
As sun and heire by adopcion
To reigne in Corinthie by successioun
The kyng þe Quene off Corinthie þe cuntre
Had þe chylde in so grete charite

¶ Let men considir in þeir discrecioun
Soden change of euery *maner* thyng
Dis chylde send oute for his destruccioun

And now *prouided* for to be a kyng 3280
 And thurgh fortune ay double in hir werkyng
 He þat was reffris to bestes moste sauage
 Is now receyvid to kynglie heritage 3283
 ¶ And *prouided* to be a kynges ayere 3291
 Of hym þat stode in deth of venture
 ffortune can shewe hirsself both foule *and* fayre
 ffolkys brought low full well recure
 And liste not gruge agayn þeir chastysyng
 Godde oute of myschefe can sodenlie þem bryng
 And such as can pacientlie indure
 ¶ But whan Eddippus was grow vnto good age
 Lyke a yonge prince incresyng in nobles
 Lusty and stronge and fresh of his corage 3300
 Of aventure it fell so in sothnes
 Oþer by stryf or by sum frowardnes
 Or by sum contec he had knoulechying
 How he was not sun to þe kyng
 ¶ As by descent but a ferre foreine
 Where vpon ful sore he gan to muse ·

[13r, col. a]

And for to know he to be put in certeine
 Thought he wold sum *maner* practik vse
 And to þe kyng he gan hymself excuse
 ffor a tyme fordraw his presence 3310
 Tyl þat he knew by sum experience
 ¶ Or by sum signe hough þe matier stode
 Thought he wolde do his diligence
 To know his fadir and also of what bloode
 He was descendid · and haue sum euidence
 [T]ouchyng trouth hough in stode in sentence
 And þervpon to be certified
 [T]oward Apollo faste he hath hym hyede
 ¶ Which in Cirra worshippid was þat tyme
 [An]d gaue answers aftyr his deite 3320
 [T]o folke þat cam at euen and at prime
 Of euery doute and ambiguite
 [A]nd þer Edippus fallyng on his kne
 [A]ftyr his offring had an answer anon
 [To]ward Grece þat he shuld goon
 ¶ Vn]to mouteine þat phocis bare þe name
 And þer he shuld of his kynred here
 Eke like his fate þe answeere was þe same
 He shuld sle his oune fadir dere
 And aftyr þat to Thebes drawe hym nere 3330
 Wedde his modir of verrei ignoraunce
 Callid Iocasta thurgh his onhappy chaunce

¶ He liste no lengar tarie ne abide
Dis saide Edippus · but forth in haste goth he
And on his way he gan anon to ryde
Tyll he þe mountein off Phocis did se
Vndir the which stode a grete cuntre
Callid Citoyens which þat tyme in *certeine*
Werryd them þat were on þe mounteine

¶ His fadir Laius þurgh his chyualrie 3340
With Citoyns is entrid in to bataile
And Edippus cam with þe partie
Of þe hylles armyd in plate and maile
And as þei can iche oþer to assaile
Amonge þe prees at þeir encontring
Of auenture Edippus slough þe kyng

¶ Onknown to hym þat he his fadir was
Hauyng þerof no suspicion
Passid his way platlie þus þe case 3350
And eke vnknown he cam vnto þe town
Of myghty Thebes wherfor his high renoun
He was receivid with ful grete reuerence
By cause he slough þe kyng in þeir defence

¶ Spinx þe *serpent* horrible for to se
Whilom ordeigned by incantacions
ffor ro destrue þe town and þe cuntre
By his compassid sleighty questions
Slough man and chylde in all þe regions
Such as not couth by wysdom nor reson
Make of his probleme playn exposicion 3360

¶ Who passid by he couth not not hym excuse
But þe Serpent hym felly wolde assaile
With a probleme make hym ^{^to^} muse
Callid of *summe* þe vncouthe diuinale
Which for to expoun who it did faile
þer was non help · but þat he muste die
By þe statute þer was non oþer remedie

¶ And ~~for~~ ^{^for all folk^} haue no knowlegyng
Of þis demaund what it was in dede 3370
I wyl reherce her of in my wrytyng
Compendiuslie þat men may it rede
ffyrst þis Serpent who þat list tak hede
Was monstruus and spake agayn nature

[13r, col. b]

And yf it fell þat eny creature
¶ Man or woman shuld forth by passe
High or low of all þat regioun
As I said arste þer was noon oþer grace
But yf he made an exposicion

Of this Serpentes frowarde question
 He muste die and make no defens 3380
 The which demaund was þis in sentence
 ¶ The Serpent askyd what may it be
 Beste or foule whan it is forth brought
 Pat hath power to stond go or fle
 And aftyrward yf it be well sought
 Goth fyrste on foure or els goth he nought
 Aftyr by processe on thre and then on tweine
 And efte agayn as nature doth ordeigne
 ¶ He goth on .iij. and efte on .ij. agayn
 Eke kyndlie nature disposith it so
 And in awhile it foloweth in certeine 3390
 To þe matier which he cam frome
 He muste of kynde resorte agayn þerto
 And who can not þe menyng clerlie se
 He of þe Serpent shall deuourid be ·
 ¶ Which Eddipus sobir in his intent
 Not to rakkyll nor hasty of language
 But in his herte of gret aduisment
 And full demure of looke and visage
 Considerith firste þe perilus ^and^ fell passage 3400
 Saw wel befor þat it was no Iape
 And full prouyded þat no worde ascape
 ¶ At goode leyser with hole mynde and memorie
 Seyng þe cruelnes of his mortall emprise
 His lyfe dependyng betwen deth and victorie
 This beste *quod* he pleynlie to deuyse
 Is fyrste a chyld which may not suffice
 When it is born þe trowth is all day seene
 Withoutyn helpe hymselfe to susteine ·
 ¶ Aftyr on .iiij. he naturallie doth crepe 3410
 ffor impotencie and grene tendirnes
 Norices can tell which don þem kepe
 But aftyrwarde vp he doth hym dresse
 With his .ij. fete þe third to *expresse*
 His hande on bench or support of sum wall
 To holde hym vp · leste he cach a fall
 ¶ And aftyrwarde incresyng his myght
 To gretter age when he doth atteine
 Of his nature þen he goth vpright
 Myghtilie vppon his hæ leggys tweine 3420
 Then *commyth* age his power to restreine
 Crokyd and lame lyke as men may se
 With a staffe impotent to make vp leggys .iij.
 ¶ But when febilnes or seknes don assaile
 On handes and fete he muste bowe and lought
 ffor crokyd potentes may not þen availe

When lusty age is banneshid *and* shit oute
 Then eft agayn herof may be no doughte
 With .iiij. fete to erthe he doth returne
 ffro whence he com *þerto* to soiourne · 3430
 ¶All cam fro erth · and all to erth shall
 Agayn nature is no proteccion
 Worldlie estates ichon *þei* be mortall
Per may no tresour make redempcion
 Who ~~elime~~ clymeth highest his fall is lowe ·
 A mene estate is beste whos couth it kno[we]
 Betwene high presumyng *and* bowyng do[un to lowe]
 ¶ffor whoso sitte highest · standith in ~~party~~ iep[artie]

[13v, col. a]

Vndir daunger of ffortune lyk to fall
 Myschef and pouerte as for *þeire* partie 3440
 Be lowest brought amonge *þe* peples all
 Summe folke taste sugre summe tast gall
 Salomon *þerfor* mirroure off sapience
 Betwen grette riches *and* betwen indigence
 ¶Axid a mene callid suffisaunce
 To holde hym contente of competent expence
 Not to reioyse of to grete habundaunce
 And ay in pouerte to stand in pacience
 Sobre with his plente in scarste ~~no~~ noon offence
 As of grugyng but betwen ioy and smert 3450
 Thank godde of all and euer be ~~gle~~ glad in herte
 ¶Erth is *þe* ende of euery maner of man
 ffor *þe* riche with grete possession
 Dieth als son as I reherse can
 As doth the pore in tribulacion
 ffor deth ne maketh no diuision
 By singler fauour but betwene both elich
 Of *þe* porest and hym *þat* is moste riche
 ¶This saide probleme concludith in this case 3460
 Which *þe* Serpent gan sleightlie purpose
 That when a chyld is fyrste born alas
 Kynde to his dethwarde anon doth hym dispose
 Iche day a iourney *þer* is noon *oþer* glose
 Experience can tell in euery age
 Hough *þis* worlde is here but a pilgrimage
 ¶This said Edyppus fyrst in Thebes born
 Send to a forest devourid for to be
 ffounde and broute forth as ye haue herde beforne
 And aftyr drawyng home to his cuntre
 Slough his fadir so infortunat was he 3470
 Of froward happys folowyng all his liue
 As *þis* Tragedie his fortune shall descriue

¶ But for þat he thurgh his prudence
Vnto þe Serpent declarid euery dele
He slough hym aftyr by myghty violence
More by wysdom þan armure made of stele
Stace of Thebes can tell yow full well
Which was o cause yf ye liste to seen
Wherthurgh Edyppus weddid hath þe quene
¶ Callid Iocasta princes of þe cite 3480
His own modir vnknownen to þem both
And þof she were right fayre vpon to se
With this mariage the goddes were right wrothe
ffor þeire alliaunce nature gan to lothe
Shuld take hir sunn to be hir husbonde
¶ There was þerin noon conuenience
To be supportid be kynde nor by reson
But yf so be the heuynlie influence
Disposid it by the inclinacion 3490
Of summe fals froward constellacion
Causid by ~~Saturne~~ Saturne or Mars þe froward sterre
To engendir debate or summe mortall werre
¶ In this matier pleyndie ^{^this^} I deme
Off no cunyng but of opinion
Thof he were crownyd with sceptre *and* diademe
To reigne in Thebes þe strange myghty toun
That summe aspecte com from hevyn adoune
Infortunate ~~fre~~ froward and full of rage
Which agayn kynde denyed his mariage 3500
¶ He crownyd was by assent of þe town
fflouryng a ceson by souereignete of pece
And while he helde þer possession
[Su]nnes and doughtres he hadde doutles

[13v, col. b]

The fyrste sun callid ~~Ethio~~ Ethiocles
Pollicenes was callid þat othir
As seith Bochas þe secund broþer
¶ Also he hadde goodlie douthres tweine
The eldist callid was Antigonie
The secund namyd was Imenie 3510
And both þei were right fayre vpon to se
The Quene Iocasta myght no gladder be
Than to remembre whan þei wex in age
Hough goddys hadde encrecid þeir linage
¶ It was hir joy and hir felicite
To sen hir chyl dren þat were semeli *and* fayre
But oft in ioy yit cometh aduersite
And hope vnsuryd whan hope doth oft appeyre
Contrarius truste wyl gladlie þer repayre

Where fals wenyng in hertes is conceyvid 3520
 Thurgh ignorance which fele folke haue dece[yued]
 ¶ What þing in erth is more deceyvuable
 Then when a man supposith verelie
 And from his ioy is remeid sodenlie 3525
 ¶ ffor where fortune is founde to hasty 3526
 In prosperite for to stonde stable 3524
 To trice folke theyre grevys tendir
 ffor soden chaungis be hatefull to nature
 ¶ Vnware wo þat comyth of gladnes
 Is vnto hertes right passyng encombrus 3530
 And who hath felte his parte of wylfulnes
 Sorow suyng on is to hym odius
 And werst of all and moste contrarius
 Is when estates highest off renoun
 Ben from þeir noblesse sodenlie brought doun
 ¶ Ther is no glorie which þat sewith hir
 That fals fortune can so magnifie
 But when his laude brightest is and clere
 She can eclipse it with som cloudie sky
 With vnware sorow oonlie off Envie 3540
 Seth of Edippus ane opyn evidence
 Which by his lyve had experience
 ¶ Of high noblesse and þer with also ·
 Parte importable of grete aduersite
 His ioy ay meynt with full mortall woo
 ffor while he reignyd in Thebes his cite
 And Iocasta with full grete roialte
 Within þe cuntre þer fell a pestilence
 The peple infectyng with all his violence
 ¶ Thurghoute all þe lande and region 3550
 In eueri age but moste grevuslie
 Of them ichon þat were of þe town
 The infeccion spredde most specialli
 And of vengeaunce þe swerd moste rigoruslie
 Day by day gan to bite and kerve
 Of yche estate causyng folke to sterve ·
 ¶ Thus gan increce þe mortalite
 That euery man stode in partie
 Of þeire lyves thurghoute þe cuntre
 So importable was þeire maledie 3560
 Þat men myght here þe peple clepe *and crye*
 Dispeyrid so were þei of þeire lyvys ·
 Voyde of all socoure and preseruatyvys
 ¶ They sought oute herbys *and* spices in þer cofyrs
 And gan to seke for help and socourys
 The cause inquirid of prudent philosophirs
 And of þeir moste experte diuinoures

Whi þat þe goddys with so sharpe shoures
Of pestilence and in so cruell wyse
Lyste þem alas so mortally chastyse · 3570

[14r, col. a]

¶ But among all soth is þis case
[Ðer] was founde on full prudent and right wyse
A prophete callid Tyresias
Of prophecie hauyng a souereigne prise
Which þat affermyd *and* sayde in his advise
As vnto hym was shewyd by miracle
Phebus hym self declaryng þe article
[¶] Cause of this seknes and þeis maledies
[A]s þe goddys pleyndie haue disposid
[A]nd Senec eke in his tragedies 3580

[T]hof þe cause be secure and closid
[V]nto the tyme þer be a kyng deposid
[W]hich slough his fadir *and* refte of his lyfe
[An]d hath eke take his modre to his wife
¶ [T]yll þis be don and execute in dede
[Ðer] may be made no redempcion
[B]ut pestilence shal multiplie and sprede
[A]y more and more thurghoute þat region
[T]yll vnto tyme þat he be put adoun
[F]rom his crown which not longe agon 3590
[H]is fadre slough among his mortall foon

¶ And hath his modre weddyd eke also
Agayn þe lawe agayn all right
Tyll þis vengeaunce on þis cryme be do
Ther shall be werre pestilence and fyght
Sorow and stryf and euery maner wyght
Of vengeaunce his neighbourgh shal hate
Broþer with broþer and bloode with bloode debate
¶ This is all and summe þer may be no socoure
Which brought þe peple in grete hevynes 3600
ffor Tiresia the grete diuinoure

By prophecie tolde þem thus expresse
And at þe laste by tokyns and witnes
Men vndrestode by signes oute shewyng
This pestilence was brought in by þe kyng
¶ And thof þe peple gaue no grete credence
To Tiresia nor to his prophocie
The Quene Iocasta caught an evidence
And in hert a grete fantasie
Specially when she did espie 3610

Of kyng Edippus þe fete when she sawe woundid
Hough þis tale vpon truth is groundid
¶ Because also þer was a diuinoure ·

Which tolde afforn Edippus shuld be
 To laius in Thebes successoure
 Wherby þe kyng · þe Quene and þe Cite
 ffell in grete trouble and grete aduersite
 Wel more þen I by wrytyng can reporte
 ffor þer was no thyng þat myght þem recomfort
 ¶ffull oft on þe day Iocasta gan to swoun 3620
 Kyng Edippus ~~sobbe~~ sobbe crye also *and* wepe
 In salte terys as þei wold þem drown
 Deth crampisshyng into þeir breste gan crepe
 On day compleynyng on nyght þei may not slepe
 Cursyng þe houre of þeir natiuite
 Pat þei shuld abide for to se
 ¶Their mortall chaunge þeir dedlie aventure
 Their fortune eke which can on them frown
 Impacient and doolefull to indure 3630
 Their froward fate with þeir lokkys brown
 They kyng for Ire caste away his crowne
 And gan to rase for constreint of his peine
 Oute of his hede his wofull ien tweine
 ¶Day and nyght he cryed aftyr deth
 Hatefull to com in eny mannes sight
 Moste desirus to yelde vp the breth
 Wofull in hert to com in eny light

[14r, col. b]

Corvid for sorowe feble to stond vp right
 And specially in his dedlie distresse
 ffor drede off shame he daryd in derknes 3640
 ¶The cruel constreint off his moste grevaunce
 Was in his sonnes þat hadde hym in despite
 Which can his sorow gretlie to avaunce
 ffor hym to scorne was set all þeir delite
 Was þer neuer man þat stode in werre plight
 ffor þus liggyng and destitute of chere
 Vnto his goddis he made his prayer
 ¶Besechyng them with a dooleful hert
 Vpon his wo to haue *summe* compassion
 And þat þei wolde for to avenge his smerte 3650
 Betwen his sonnys make a diuision
 Yche to bryng oþer to destruction
 This was his prayer in substaunce
 That iche vpon oþer take may vengeaunce
 ¶In yerys fewe for þeir vnkyndnes
 Thei herde his prayer as ye haue herde devise
 The brþern .ij. thurgh þeir cursidnes
 Eueryche can oþer mortallie to despise
 ffor lak of grace and for fals couetise

Ych for his partie desyrus in dede 3660
 Be ~~þeri~~ forn oþer to reigne and succede
 ¶ And þus theis breþern moste infortunate
 Betwen þemself fell at ~~disee~~ dissencion
 And finallie þis vnkyndlie debate
 Brought all Thebes vnto destruccion
 Yit was þer fyrste made a conuencion
 By interchaungyng · þat iche shuld reigne a yere ·
 Pat oþer absent to pley and com no nere
 ¶ This was concludid by þeir both assent
 And by accord of all þe region 3670
 Pollicenes rode forth and was absent
 Ethiocles toke fyrst possession
 But when þe yere by reuolucion
 Was com abought he fals of his intent
 Vnto þe accorde denyed his consent
 ¶ This was a cause of þeir both strives
 Pollicenes þus put oute of his right
 Tyl Adrastus þat kyng was off Argives
 Which thurgh all Grece grettest was of myght 3679
 Sent vnto Thebes þe myghty town 3687
 Vnto his broþer · which absent was withoute
 Now þat his yere was fully com aboute
 ¶ But he was fals and frowardlie gan varie 3690
 Ethiocles from his conuencion
 ffor which Adrastus no lenger wold tarie
 When ~~Tide~~ Tideus had made relacion
 But callid anoon thurghoute his regioun
 All þe worthy both nye and ferre
 Agayn Thebes for to begynne a werre ·
 ¶ ffor þis cause lyke as ye shal here
 Pollicenes to inforce his partie
 Weddid hadde þe kynges doughter dere
 I mene Adrastus floure of Chyualrie 3700
 When Tideus did t̃ hym certifie
 Touchyng the answeere of Ethiocles
 And of his trouth hough he was recles
 ¶ ffals off his promisse and cursidlie forsworn
 ffor to his trouth non aduertyng had be
 Nor to þe accord þat was made befor
 Touchyng þe ~~deliuaunce~~ deliueraunce of Thebes þe [cite]
 But who þat liste þis storie clerlie se
 Of þeis .ij. breþern þe dissencion
 And hough Adrastus lay befor þe town 3710

[14v, col. a]

¶ And Tideus þurgh his high promisse
 ffaught by the way goyng on message

And hough of Grece all the worthines
 With kyng Adrastus went in this viage
 And of þe mischef þat fell in their passage
 ffor lak of watyr · tyll þat Isiphilee
 Norice to ligurgus so fayre vpon to se
 ¶ Taught Tydeus to fynde oute a ryver
 She þat did in fayrnes so excelle
 And hough þe Serpent moste outhlie of his chere 3720
 Of kyng ligurgus þe chyld slewe at a welle
 And hough Amphiorax fel doune to helle
 All to declare me seme it is no nede
 ffor in the Sege of Thebes ye may it clerlie rede
 ¶ The storie hole as made is mencion
 Of outhir partie their puissaunce and þeir myght
 And Adrastus lay befor þe toune
 And hough þei met euery day in fight ·
 And Tideus þe noble famus knyght
 So renownyd in actes merciall 3730
 Was slayn alas as he faught at þe walle
 ¶ And hough þe breþern met among þe prece
 Lyke .ij. Tigris or lions þat were woode
 With sherpe sperys þis is doutles
 Eueryche of othir shed oþer hert blode
 This was þe fyne · and þus of þem it stode
 Saue at þeir festys callid funerall
 Þer fell a grete mervaille which reherce I shall
 ¶ When þei were ~~into~~ brent ^into^ askys dede 3740
 Of þeir envie þer fell a ful grete wondir
 Amonge þe brondys and the coles rede
 High in the ayre þe smoke went asondir
 Pat oon on partie · and þat oþer yondir
 To declare · þe storie liste not feyne
 The grete hatred þat was betwix þem tweine
 ¶ Thus for þeir ire and fals dissencion
 All þe lordes all þe chyualrie
 Wer slayn of Grece and also of þe town
 And rote of all myn auctor wyl not lie
 Was fals alliaunce of fraternall envie 3750
 And the chefe grounde with al þe surplusage
 Who so serche aright was vnkyndlie mariage ·
 ¶ The Quene Iocasta felt hir parte of peine
 To se hir chyldir iche sle oþer
 Hir son hir lorde blynde of his ien tweyne
 Which to his sonnes was fadir *and* eke broþer
 ffortune wolde it shuld be non oþer
 Eke *parcas* sistres which be in noumbre .iij.
 Spanne so the threde at þeir natiuite ·
 ¶ Eke when Iocasta stode þus disconsolate 3760

And sawe of Thebes þe subuersion
 The cuntre destruyd was and desolate
 The gentil blode shed of þat region
 Withoute comfort or consolacion
 Thof she myght no more be appeyrid
 But of all hope fully despeired
 ¶ Triste and hevy · pensyue and spake no worde
 Hir sorow olde · and newe she can aduerte
 Toke þe swerd of hym þat was hir lorde
 With which Edippus smote Laius to þe herte 3770
 She to finish all hir peynys smerte
 And fro the bodie hir soule to diuide
 [R]ove hirself þurgh oute oþer syde
 ¶ She wery was of hir woful lyfe
 Seyng of fortune þe grete frowardnes
 Hough hir fame *and* sclaudir was so ryfe ·

[14v, col. b]

And of Edippus þe grete wrechidnes
 Eke of hir sonnes þe grete vnkyndnes
 All þeis thynges weyed on hir so sore
 ffor distresse þat she liste lyve no more 3780
 ¶ Thus deth deuoureth with his bittyr gall 3788
 Ioy and sorowe avoide of all mercy
 And with his darte he makith down to fall 3790
 Riche and pore þem merkyng sodenlie
 His vnware stroke smert indifferentlie
 ffrom hym refusyng fauour and all mede
 Of all estates so lityl he takith hede
 ¶ Bettyr is to die þen lyfe in wrechidnes
 Bettyr is to die þen euer to lyve in peyn
 Bettyr is an ende þen dedlie hevynes
 Bettyr is to die þen euer in wo compleine
 And wher as myschef doth at folkys disd[eyne]
 By woful constreint of longe continuan[ce] 3800
 Better is to die þen lyve in such grevau[nce]
 ¶ Taketh example her of and a preve
 Of kyng Edippus þat was so longe ago
 Of Quene Iocasta þat felt so grete myschefe
 And of þeir chyldrenn remembre eke also
 Which euer lyved in Envie sorow and wo
 ffortune alas duryng all þeir dayes
 Was founde so frowarde to þem at all assayes
 ¶ Touchyng Edippus processe fynde I noon 3810
 Whate ende he made in conclusioun
 Saue Bochas writith hough þe kyng Creon
 Cosyn and ayre by succession
 Exilid hym cheynyd ferre oute of þe town

Wher he indurid in sorow myschef and drede
 Tyll ~~Attrapos~~ ^Antrapos^ vntwynyd hys lyves threde
 ¶ In this tragedie .iiij. thynges ye may se
 The pride of Iabin and fals presumpcion
 Of Quene Iocasta the grete aduersite
 Of kynge Edippus þe inclinacion
 To vices all and þe diuision 3820
 Off the .ij. brethern pleyndie vs assure
 Kyngdoms diuidid may no while indure
 ¶ ffor who sawe euer kyngdom or cuntre ·
 Stonde in quiete of þeir possession
 But yf þer were · right pees and equite
 And iuste acorde withoute dissension
 Voide of vntrouth and fals collusion
 Pleyndly declaryng by example of scripture
 Kyngdamez diuidid may no while indure · 3829
 ¶ Princis princesses which haue þe souereignete 3837
 Ouer þe peple and dominacion
 If ye list lyue longe in felicite
 Cherish youre subiectes doth non extorcion 3840
 And aduertiseth of wysdom and t reson
 As þis Tragedie doth in yow discure
 Kyngdamez diuidid may no while indure ·
De casu Thiestes filij philistenes Regis
 BOchas þe poet auctor of þis booke
 Hym purposyng togydyr to compile
 Diuerse stories anon his penne he toke
 Hym remembryng within a lityl while
 In this Chapitle can directe his stile
 To write þe storie *and* began compendius

[15r, col. a]

[A]fforn all oþer of Duke Theseus 3850
 ¶ [Lo]rde of Athenes a famus grete Cite
 [Ri]ght stronge and myghty on euery syde
 [B]ut at his bak Bochas did oon see
 [W]hich cryed lowde and bad he shuld abide
 [B]ochas *quod* he fro þe me liste not hyde
 [M]y woful caas nor in no wyse spare
 [M]y pitevus compleinte to þe to declare
 ¶ [I] am Thiestes besprende all with wepyng
 [D]rownyd in teris as þu maiste well se
 [W]hilom son of the myghty kynge 3860
 [P]hilistenes and borne also *par* dieu
 Of Quene Pellopia excellyng of beaute
 [A]nd for þu arte ~~desy~~ desirus for to write
 Of peple vnhappie and þeire wo to indite
 ¶ [M]y will is this anon þat þu procede

[To] turne þi stile and take þi penne blyve
 [Le]fe Theseus take now of hym non hede
 [B]ut my Tragedie fyrst þat þu descriue
 ffor I suppose þat in all þi lyue
 Þu sawe neuer a thyng more dolorous 3870
 More vnhappy more þe pitevous
 ¶Then is alas myn mortall aventure
 Incomparable þe sorowgh suremountyng
 Of Quene Iocasta moste wofull creature
 Or of Edippus his fate ay compleynyng
 ffor my compleinte hath noon endyng
 But lastith euer and berith me witnes
 No wo resembler vnto myn hevynes
 ¶And with þat worde Iohn Bochas styl stode
 fful sobrelie to gyve hym audience 3880
 In the place demurelie he aboode
 To here þe substaunce of his mortall offence
 Which þus began to shew his sentence
 O Iohn *quod* he I pray the take goode hede
 My wo to write þat men may it rede
 ¶Alas my broþer rote of vnkyndnes
 Attreus · callid of treson sours and well
 And founder oute of treson and falsnes
 And all oþer in fraude he doth precell
 Who couert his hate more þen I can tell 3890
 I supposyng of verrei Innocencie
 In hym no malice deceit ne non offence
 ¶But as a broþer shuld a broþer truste
 I trustyd hym of herte wyll and thought
 By apparence non oþer cause I wyste
 ffor in his *person* I supposid nought
 Þat euer he couth of fals a thyng haue wrought
 But who may sonner anoþer man deceyve
 Þenn he in whome no malice doth conceyve
 ¶I dempte of hym as of my true broþer 3900
 Wenyng he hadde feithfull ben to me
 I sawe no signe nor I know noon oþer
 In hym supposing no duplicate
 But O alas who myght it euer be
 Or who did euer in eny storie fynde
 Bloode vnto bloode to be so vnkynd
 ¶I wyl passe ouer and tell þe worthines
 Touchyng þe *astates* of oure *progenitoures*
 Of oure kynred and þe grete nobles
 I telle no þing nor of oure predecessoures 3910
 Nor of my youth hough passid ben þe floures
 I leue all þis and vnto mynde call
 The wrechidnes þat am in fall

¶ My broþer founde as fals occasion
Agayn me *and* gan a cause feine

[15r, col. b]

To banysh me oute of oure region
And at me of hatred so disdeigne
Vpon me affermyng in certeine
In oure Kyngdam which callid is Missene
I shuld haue leyn by his wyf þe quene 3920

¶ Thus he compassid falslie of malice
Hymself knowyng wele þat it was not so
Ay founde vnkynd and in his advise
Not lyke my broþer but my dedelie foo
And to increce grete parcell of my wo
By longe processe in his intencion
He imagenyd my destruccion

¶ And his chefe cause was fals couetise
Touchyng þis thyng which he did on me feyne
And yit this Kyngdam trulie to devise 3930
Shuld haue be departid of right betwen vs tweine
But agayn truthe he did so ordeigne
Me to imbesile oute of þat region
Hymself allon to haue possession

¶ Yit in his hert he caste anoþer wyle
To myn vndoyng and desolacion
To þe place where he did me exile
Vndir a shadow of his fals collusion
To make a maner reuocacion 3940
Of broþerhede shewyng a pretence
Me to resorte agayn to his presence

¶ To be acceptid as a broþer shulde
With full acorde styll with hym to byde
All Iniurius of which afforn I tolde
On eyther forgete and set aside
That nothyng aftyr shuld oure loue diuide
But of oon wyll and oon intencioun
Lede all oure lyfe withoute diuisioun

¶ Wher þe peple was ful gladde and light
Thurghoute Missene þe myghty region 3950
And my resortyng foundyng euery wyght
Redy of hert and hole affeccioun
Me to receyve into þat noble townn
And noon so redy by signes oute shewyng
To make me chere in soth as was þe kyng

¶ Ther is no damage in comparisoun
That may be lykenyd by no resemblaunce
To feynyd trouth and simulacioun
When fraude is hid with a fayre countenaunce

Pretendyng trouth outward by ~~des~~ deceyvaunce 3960
 And vndirneth of most fals intente
 Of doublenes dareth þe Serpent ·
 ¶ Also vndir floures is shadowyd þe dragon
 ffor to betraish by soden violence
 Such folke as haue no suspicion
 But trulie mene in þe pore Innocencie
 Tyl they be caught dispurveid of defence
 As is a fysh with baite of fals plesaunc[e]
 The hoke not seen to bryng þem to mis[chaunce]
 ¶ This semleable at myn home *commyng* 3970
 I was receyvid with euery *circumstaunce*
 Lyk as halfe eire and broþer to þe kyng
 And þe *pretendyng* as by countenaunce
 That he hadde ~~an~~ inlie so grete plesaun[ce]
 Of my repayre of trouth he told s[o]
 ffor reioysyng sayde he wolde go
 ¶ Vnto his goddes to do *summ obseruaunc[e]*
 ffor þis acord and humble sacrifice

[15v, col. a]

Made his ministers with faithfull intendaunce
 To waite on me in all þeire beste wyse 3980
 Hit nedith not to tell or devise
 Nor in bokys in wrytyng for te set
 Halfe the ioy he made when me met
 ¶ ffirst hough frendlie he did me embrace
 Of hertlie gladnes within his h̄ armys tweine
 And hough for ioy þe terys on his face
 fful entierlie gan down distill *and e* reyne
 þat for my partie I couth me not restreyne
 But þat I muste of frenship fraternall
 Wepe as did he in his estate royall 3990
 ¶ The wylde wolfe þat caste hym to devoure
 The selie lambe which can no defens
 Nor no helpe his selfe to socoure
 So feble he his to make resistens
 Which demith trouth of fals apparence
 What wondir is it · þe fraude not *conceivid*
 Thof such lambes vnwarlie be deceyvid
 ¶ Thof þat roses at mydsomer be ful swet
 þat vndirneth is hidde a ful sharpe spine 4000
 Som fresh floures haue a ful bittyr rote
 And lothsom galle can sugir eke vndirmyne
 In dredefull stormys þe sunne emong doth shyne
 And vndir a shadow of feynynd frendlied
 þer is no frenship so perilus for to drede ·
 ¶ Thus remembryng þe feithful wordes stable

Of my broþer þus shewyd vnto me
 At oure metyng þe kyssyng amiable
 The assuryng countenance of oure fraternite
 But oft tyme men may beholde and se
 That lillies grow emong þis netlis thyk 4010
 And floure delice emong þe wedys wyk
 ¶ This while I restyd in þe kynges house
 Nothyng coniectyng his dedlie cruelte
 His old hatred was so venemus
 And so odible to destroie me
 Hymselfe to avenge he toke my chyldre thre
 And secretlie is it not a wondir
 He cut þeir throtes with a knyfe asondre
 ¶ ffor he thought þat it did hym goode
 Þem to dismembre into pecys small 4020
 And a vesel to gadyr ^in^ þeir bloode
 While þei lay styll and lokyd on hym ful pale
 This was his dede in a deserte vale
 Within a cave þat no man hym shuld asprie
 Treson conspired of his fals innocencie
 ¶ This was þe substance of his sacrifice
 To sle my chyldren and do þeire throtes blede
 I trowe þe goddys þerof did agrise
 Of his fals offryng when þei toke hede
 He did þeir membris aftyr roste and sethe 4030
 And with þis viande moste abhominable
 He made me be serued at þe table ·
 ¶ In covert confis also þus hit stode
 To staunch my thirste þurgh his cruel vengeaunce
 He made me vnknowe drynk þeir blode
 Was not this thyng to goddes displesaunce
 This dare I sey for demonstraunce
 Vpon this dede withoute more obstacle
 The sunne in hevyn shewyd a miracle
 ¶ Which sor agrisid myght not beholde 4040
 With his bemys þeron to caste his sight
 ffor displesaunce his clerenes gan withholde
 [A]nd for vengeaunce to withdrawe his light
 [The] day turnyng for erreoure into nyght

[15v, col. b]

When I he shon brightist in his myd spere
 Shrowyd his face and wold not appere
 ¶ But alas vpon þis case horrible
 That couth not imagine nor oþer thynk
 On eny matier þat was so odible
 Ete of þeir flesh þeir blood ek did I dryn[k] 4050
 Which so sore doth to myn hert synk

pat I not touchyng þis aventure
 The circumstance for constreint discure
 ¶ It nedith not to make rehersaile
 Touchyng myn exile of all maner thyng
 Of diuerse sorowys þat me did assaile
 My wofull sighes my dolorus wakyng 4057/4058
 My pouerte nor I · hough I stode in drede 4059
 To lese my lyfe wher Bochas take hede · 4060
 ¶ And remembre þ all þe circumstancez
 If euer þu sawe of high or lawe degre
 More contrarie or more vnhappy chauncez
 Þen þu herd remembered her of me
 Wey in balaunce my sorowes *and* let se
 If eny sorowe and mischefe vnrecurid
 May countrepeyse I to þat I haue indurid
 ¶ Myn vnfortunes I fonde þem ay so fell
 Withoute fauour and socoure dispurveide
 My broþer euer on me so cruell 4070
 Þat I ful ofte desyred to haue died
 ffor to þis day my spirit hath ben coverid
 With sorow and wo deuoid of all refuge
 Wherfor I pray O Bachas to be my Iuge ·
 ¶ And þis writyng leve me not behynd
 Nor in þi boke þu not disdeigne
 Amonge þoo folke þat þu haue me in mynde
 Which þat for sorow wepe waile *and* playne
 And thus Thiestes rehersyng of all his peyn
 Lyke as he wolde hymself on pecis rende 4080
 Made vnto Bochas of his tale an ende
 ¶ Attreus aftyr with a ful pale chere
 And of Enuy ful dede in his visage
 Vnto Iohn Bochas he gan approche nere
 Lyke as he hadde be fallen in a rage
 And furiuslie all voyde in his language
 Hough may this be þat lyke a man were wode
 Thiestes hath his venom sowe abrode
 ¶ And like a Rybaude falslie me accusid
 Notwithstoundyng þat I full ee clerlie se 4090
 My infortunes which may not be refusid
 So sor alas þei werke agayn me
 And thof Thiestes fals and vntrue be
 And vnto þe Bochas with a face pale
 Agayn me hath forged her a tale ·
 ¶ Which in effecte shal be found vntrue
 If I haue space my compleint to declare
 ffor I purpose to tell a tale newe
 ffro poynte to poynte and for no man to spare
 Hough he was rote of all my mortal care 4100

And euen lyke as it is befall
 Reherse þe begynnyng of my sorowez all
 ¶ Whilom whan I reigned in Myssene
 Of age lusty flouryng in my freshnes
 With my wyfe Europa þat was Quene
 Moste renomede þat tyme of fayrnes
 Thiestes þen as ground of all falsnes
 As a traytour his tyme did espie
 Thurgh his false fraude and his flaterie ·
 ¶ Compassyd a mene within my Cite 4110
 By sleight · wylez þat were incomparable
 To corrupte my wyvys chastite ·

[16r, col. a]

[M]y bedde defylyng a thyng intollerable
 [A]nd to þe goddys verrey abhominable
 [V]syng the Quene þat by continuaunce 4115/4116
 ¶ [S]he by hym hadde sonnes t ij. or thre 4117
 [I]ch]on brought forth in fals avoutre
 [D]emyng þat þei hadde be
 [M]y]n own children tyll þat I dide espie 4120
 [H]o]ugh þat þis swyne thurgh his fals lecherie
 [Th]is Thiestes aftyr Europa
 [L]a]y by his doughtyr callid Pellopia
 ¶ [A]nd by processe forth a chylde she brought
 [C]allid Egistus which when he com to age
 [A]s saith Bochas ful grete treson he wrought
 [F]or by his malice and his grete outrage
 [D]estruyd was all holy þe linage
 [O]f Tantalus which by his lyvyng
 [I]n] Phrigia reynynd as lorde and Kynge 4130
 ¶ [B]ut þis Egistus of whom I spake befor
 [F]a]ls]ie bygete · myn auctour writeth þe same
 [O]f Pellopia anon as he was born
 To hyde þe sclaunder *and* also þe defame
 Of Thiestes and for to saue his name
 When þat he was but a day of age
 He was oute caste to bestys ful savage
 ¶ To be devourid þe storie is wel couth
 A mylche goote godde liste for hym provide
 To fostre hym in his tendir youth 4140
 He nyght nor day lyggyng by hir syde 4141
 Vnto þe tyme ~~he did abyde~~ þat he^ did growe in age 4143
 Pen to þe courte he holdith his passage 4144
 Within þe forest þus he did abide 4142
 ¶ As vnknown to euery maner wyght 4145
 Where he herde abydyng in howsholde
 Of his kynred and agayn all right 4147

Thiestes was *presumptuous* and bolde 4148
~~By his kynred and agayn all right~~ 4147
~~Thiestes was *presumptuous* and bolde~~ 4148
 By his deceites compassid manyfolde
 With Europa my wyfe to haue ado 4150
 And on Pellopia begate a child also
 ¶ Which was hymself as he did vndirstond
 By euidencez · many mo þen oon
 Wherefore of malice falslie toke on holde
 On me his vnclē to avengid be anon
 ffor Thiestes chefest of all my foon
 Myn own broþer made Egistus ~~blinde~~ bliue
 To make a swerde thurghoute my hert deyne
 ¶ Thus by this mordre conspired by tē treson
 Vn Attreus liggyng pale and dede 4160
 Cam Thiestes to haue possession
 And set a crown vniustlie on his hede
 He nethir hadde conscience nor drede
 Routhles to se my woundes blede
 With this þat he myght iny my lande succede
 ¶ This same Egistus ful falslie in his lyfe
 As a yonge braunch spronge oute of treson
 Lay by Chimestra which was þe wyfe
 Of the noble worthi Kyng Agamenon
 Leyyng a Seege to noble Troye þe town 4170
 And þis Egistus which is a thyng no feyre
 Mordred hym also in Grece at his repeyre
 ¶ Wherefor O bochas of hert I pray þe
 Whiez of þis stories is now moste terrible
 Of Edippus Iocasta · or of me
 Tell on anon yf it be possible
 Which of theis sorowes is founde most peynible
 Of þeban breþern moste full of wo and tene
 Or of vs tweine breþerne of Missene

[16r, col. b]

¶ I am aknow as for my partie 4180
 Of vengeaunch I did a cruell dede
 I slowe his childyrn of malice and Envie
 And rostyð them when þat þei were dede
 Onlie bycause yf þu list take heede
 That he begate þem as rote of all þis stryfe
 Vpon Europa which þat was my wyfe
 ¶ Such hatefull thynges yche man shuld lothe 4187
 Thus may I sey we be vnhappy bothe 4189
 He fyrste by trespas of fornicacion 4190
 Doon by the Quene within my region
 And I disclaundird on the oþer syde

Of hasty vengeance to be an homicide
 ¶ My bedde he fylde by his avoutrie
 To godde and man a thyng moste detestable 4195
 This interchaungyng yf it be commendable 4198
 Eche was desirus thurgh oure vnhappy chaunce 4199
 And yf I of malice *and* fals melancolie 4196
 Slough his chyldren *and* seruyd þem at þe table 4197
 Vpon oþer for to do vengeance 4200
 ¶ Oure grete hated moste odius found at all
 Oure cruell dedys wrought on ethir syde
 Senec rehersith þem in especiall
 In his Tragedies and þer he doth diuide
 Oure compleyntes and malice and oure pride
 Oure fatall ende in sorow *and* myschef endid
 When Antropos oure lyvys threde hath twynyd
 ¶ When Iohn Bochas fully hadde espyed
 Of þeis .ij. breþern þe ~~accusaci~~ *accusaci* *accusacions*
 And hough þei hadde maliciuslie replied 4210
 Iche agayn oþer in þeir dissencions
 He gan to dulle to here þeir mocions
 Put vp his penne *and* wrote no more a worde
 Of þeir furie nor of þeir fals discorde ·
 ¶ This Tragedie sheweth a figure
 A *maner* Image and also a liknes
 Hough contrarie it is vnto nature
 Bloode vnto bloode to shewe vnkyndnes
 This wofull storie can bere full well witnes
 All such debates ben as ye shal fynde 4220
 Hatfull to godde and contrarie to kynde
 ¶ ffor þer is no more dredeful aventure
 Then in kynred to fynde frowardnes
~~ffor~~ ^Nor^ no damage · more *perilus* to indure
 Then in frenships when þer is straungenes
 A *maner ex partie* by example I dare ~~desse~~ *desse* *expresse*
 To se the tre · debate agayn the rynde
 To godde were hatfull and contrarie to kynde
 ¶ Euery beste and euery creature
 Loveth his sembleable of kynd right as I gesse 4230
 And when vntrouth tweine hertes insure
 Ondepartid of verrey *parfitnes*
 It were a vicius froward ouersidnes
 Their love to vnknyt to louse or vnbynde
 Hateful to godde and contrarie to kynde
 ¶ Princis princesses doth youre bysy cure
 ffor yowe to avoide stryfe fraude and doublenes
 Remembre yow vpon þe vnhappy eure
 Of þeis .ij. brethirn and of þeir wrecchidnes
 And of þeir both malicius wyfulnes 4240

And þeir stryves · haue þis well in mynde
To godde was hatfull *and* contrarie vnto kynd[e]

**De casii Thesei · ducis et fundatoris Athenarum et quomodo fugiebat muliere[s]
vt caste viueret**

AThens whilom when it was in his flou[re]
Was callid Norice of philosophres wys[e]
Princes of poetis and experte orato[ures]

[16v, col. a]

Sonne of all sciencez as clerkys can devise
Whens all connyng moste clerlie did arise
Namyd of Grete þe lanterne and þe light
Which thurgh all erthe shadowe his bemes bright

¶ With noble tales which ben oute of noumbre 4250

In euery coste his renown did shyne
þe fame þerof was clipsid *with* nothyng ne cumbred
All oþer scoles it dide so illumine
ffor in þat cite plenlie to determine
Of þe .vij. artis as down from an hedespryng
Ther ranne oute ryvers *and* stremys of all connyng

¶ Theis sciencez were callid liberall
Onlie of ffredom fraunchise and liberte
ffor of a stokke þat were previdid thrall
Ther shuld no braunche studie in þat cite 4260

But þat bloode þat was founde fre
Both by descent *and* lineall high nobles
þer to scole shulde haue interesse

¶ This cite was sacrede vnto Minerue
ffor þeire wysdom and sapience
Of Mercurie þe festis þey obserue
ffor Retorike and elequencie

And myghty Mars ~~yau~~ gave þem influence
Wit gladde aspectes þeir partie to amende
Nobles of knyghtehode þe clergie to defende 4270

¶ This town was nobled the title of oþer þinges
And moste glorius rekenyd in þat age
By succession of dukys and of kynges
Among which Duke Theseus by linage
Sunne of Egistus full fresh of his corage
Excelling all of prudence and manhode
þer euer dide þe crowne þer possede

¶ ffor to þat cite þurgh his high nobles
In their defence such truste such affiaunce
He gaued to them by his experte prowes 4280

Of his triumphes so grete habundaunce
And specialli þeir renoun to avaunce
He made them fre þeir truage for to lete
Agayn Minos þe myghty kyng of Crete
¶ ffor by his force þe storie is well couth

Them to fraunchise and all þat region
 The Minotaure he slough in tendre youth
 And aftyrwarde he of deuocion
 To aquite hymselfe lyke a champion
 Therof made solempne sacrifice 4290
 To Iubiter in moste humble wyse
 ¶And in a Theatre callid Marathon
 Duke Theseus had þis victorie
 Aftyr he went to Colchos with Iason
 Chefe of counsaile as made is memorie
 And by processe to augment his glorie
 With hercules his broþer to conveie
 Agayn Amazones he wente to werreie
 ¶Conquirid þem his manhod so was so well seene
 His force his nobles in þat mortall stryfe 4300
 And aftyr þat Ipolita þe Quene
 This Theseus toke vnto his wyfe
 And for hys broþer he liste Ieoperde his life
 Duke pirotheus when he did vndirtake
 The Centaures to outray for his sake
 ¶This centaures · poetis specifie
 And Seruius maketh mencion
 [H]ough þei were whilom engendird in a skye
 When fyrste þeir fadre callid Irion
 Was enamourid ful many day agon 4310
 Vpon Iuno because she was so fayre
 [G]ouernes and goodnes of þe ayre
 ¶Th[i]s Irion was hir secretarie
 [A]n[d] for hir fairnes and excellent beaute
 [L]oid hir ful hoote thof all she was contrarie
 To his d[e]sire in Bochas ye may see ·

[16v, col. b]

Hym to deliuer he writeth hough þat she
 Hymself transformed as she þat myght and couthe
 Into þe liknes of an heuenli cloude
 ¶This Irion pleynly supposing 4320
 It was hirsselfe and euen þus he wrought
~~The clowde enbrasyng withoute more taryng~~ 4322
 Hymselfe transforming as she þat myght ~~and cou[the]~~ 4318
~~Into þe liknes of an heuynlie cloude~~ 4319
 Of his foly þe goddes þer he sought 4323
 And with þe medlyng betwen þem forth þei [brouhte]
 The centaures þis bestes mervelus
 Which of nature be founde monstruus
 ¶Half man half hors · partid is atweine
 And wondirful by þeire descripcion
 Of fals malice did themself ordeigne

On pirotheus to make inuacion 4330
 And hym to put oute of possession
 Of hys wyfe callid Ipodamen
 And hir to ravish · maugre all hir men
 ¶ Ther were of them an hundred as in nowmbre
 Swyft as þe wynde in þeir course rennyng
 Which of malice caste þem to incombre
 Duke pirotheus þe day of his weddyng
 And to ravish his wyfe at þeir *comm*nyng
 Of his partie þei were no diffence
 Agayn þeir power to make resistence 4340
 ¶ But Theseus liste not to delay
 Pirotheus his broþer to defende
 ffyrste þe centaures he knyghtlie did contrarie
 So mortalli þei durste hym not offende
 Aftyr þe conquest to hell þei descende
 Duke Pirothe and worthi Theseus
 Maugre þe daunger of cruell Cerberus
 ¶ Ther þei rauish in þeire mortall tene
 Thurgh þeir knyghthode yf ye liste to lere
 Despite of pluto proserpina þe Quene 4350
 Which of Iubiter was þe doughter dere
 And pirotheus founde fyrste þe manere
 Of wylful force thurgh high renown
 Remus to e̅ conquire and holde possession
 ¶ But by wrytyng sothlie of ovide
 He playnlie telleth hough Duke Theseus
 Arestid was in helle and muste abide
 By þe force of cruell ~~Acerberus~~ Cerberus
 And pluto was to hym contrarius
 Tyl pirotheus to fynde a rele 4360
 The case declarid vnto hercules
 ¶ Which of his kynghthode a remedie founde
 To helpe his frende did his bysy peyne
 ffyrst by his prowes Cerberus he bounde
 At helle gates with a terrible cheine
 And of his manhode he did so ordeigne
 Duke Theseus from daunger to discharge
 Maugre pluto for to gon at large
 ¶ They were in armys breþern both tweine
 Lovid as breþern togyddir in werre and pees 4370
 Þat nowthir couth vnto oþer feyn
 Þeire lyf to Ieopardie and put þemself in pres
 And both as breþern were callid Hercules
 To signifie · poetis can well tell
 This name in conquest all oþer doth excell
 ¶ By olde tyme þei þat were pereles
 ffor þeir nobles in diuerse regions

All þei for manhode were namyd hercules
Such as were noysid for famus champions
Tygris to daunte · borys and lions 4380
And renounes emonge them euerylchon
Bokes afferme þat Theseus was oon

[17r, col. a]

¶ffyrste as I sayde by his knyghtlie trauayle
When Athens stode in diuision
Amonge themselfe by werre and by bataile
By his wysdom and his discrecioun
He set acorde within a noble town
Them þat were exilid and stode in no certeine
He of his kynghthode made them resorte agayn 4390

¶He gauē þem lawes wherby þei shulde þem quite
Noble statutes foundid on grete reson
Set among them so prudent policie
In their lyvyng þat no dissencion
Shuld arise by non occasion
Among themself in high or lowe astate
Providing euer þat þer were no debate

¶Thus gan the cite increce and multiplie
To wex famus of wysdom and riches
Ther spronge þe well fyrst of philosophie
Ther fyrste of knyghthode rose þe high nobles 4400
By Theseus Bochas berith witnes
Theis thinges .ii. lyke as it fonde
Clergie and knyghthode did þer fyrste habounde

¶ffor to set þe cite in quiete
He made þes thurgh all þat region
And of knyghthod he manlie did mete
The cruell tiranne þat callid was Creon
Maugre hym made restitution
Of lordes bones þat were at Thebes slayn
To þe ladies whereof þei were ful fayn 4410

¶This thurgh Grece abrode his renown spred
His knyghtlie fame gan gretlie multiplie
And longe in ioye þus his lyfe he ledde
While þat fortune liste hym magnifie
But hir gladnes is meint with som envie
ffor she frowarde liste no more soiourne
With Theseus · but gan hir face to turne

¶Away from hym wex peruerse and frowarde
Of his glorie vngoodlie gan to dulle
Down from hir whele she made hym go bakward 4420
Of his good fame she gan þe fedyr pull
When his nobles was highest at þe full
I mene þe full of his felicite

Ther folowyd an ebbe of grete aduersite
 ¶ And moreouer hir frowardlie to aquite
 His vnhappes rehersyng oon by oon
 Of þe fyrste as Bochas liste endite
 Was when he lay in Crete among his foon
 And oute of prison shuld into Grece goon
 Repeiryng homworde and hymself withdrawe 4430
 The Minotaure when he hadde slawe
 ¶ The fyrste Emprise þat he vndretoke
 Was when he skapid þe importable peyn
 Of Minotaures like as saith my booke
 And with hym hadde þe kinges doughtres tweyn
 Þat he of malice fleshlie liste disdeigne
 Agayn Adrian which þat did hym save
 ffro þe deth when he lay in the caue ·
 ¶ Shuld haue bien slayn · ne had hir socour be
 In his repaire he toke þerof no hede 4440
 He lefte hir sole in grete aduersite
 Within an Ile in mischefe sorow *and* drede
 And fayre phedra with hym he did ledde
 Weddid hir lyke a forshorn man
 Thus with vntrouth his mischefe fyrste begann
 ¶ Hough phedra quit hir þe story is wele knowe

[17r, col. b]

In his absence Bochas writith þus
 When þat she within a litil prowē
 Lovid agayn kynd hir son Ipolitus
 But he to hir was contrarius 4450
 Wolde not assent to so foule a dede
 ffor shame he fledde and passid eke for drede
 ¶ To his fadre for she did hym accuse
 Os ye beforne haue þe storie sene
 And for he did hir company refuse
 He went his way and cam neuer agaynn
 ffor ye haue herde hough þat he was slaynn
 Within a chare þurgh his vnhappy chaunce
 And hough phedra þurgh myschef *and* vengeaunce
 ¶ Slough hirself agayn all womanhede 4460
 Here in this booke beforne as I yow tolde
 Of which þing when Theseus toke hede
 Thought it was vengeaunce for his offences olde
 ffor he not quit hym like as he was holde
 To Adriane which shuld haue ben his wyfe
 By whos socoure he scapid with þe lyfe
 ¶ This infortune and þis vnhappy chaunce
 Was to his nobles full contrarius
 The deth to him was also a vengeaunce

Of his sonne callid Ipolitus 4470
 ffor sorow of whom þis Duke Theseus
 With salt terys sorow gan compleine
 At þe exequies of þeis ylke tweine
 ¶I trow also it did hym sore greve
 Duke Pirotheus when he sawe be dede
 Slayn with a beste and myght not releue ·
 Kyng Orchus hounde which had a treble hede
 Whos teth horrible of his bloode were rede
 Which infortune when he can beholde
 Vnto þe deth he felt his hert colde · 4480
 ¶And for to rekyn þe wretchidnes
 The vnhappy chauncez þat fell hym in þat lyfe
 Among all his oþer grete distresses
 Was non so mortall nor so full of stryfe
 As was when he gave credens to his wyfe
 Phedra callid which of intencion
 Compassid vntrulie an accusacion
 ¶Vpon Ipolitus of hatred and Envie
 Because he nold do so grete offence
 As for to assent to hir lecherie 4490
 Perfor of deth he felt þe violence
 And for his fadre to sone gave credence
 Bochas forbid husbandes all þeir lyves
 Without preve no leue to sone þeir wyfes
 ¶Nor to be hasty talez for to beleue
 Of flateres in chaumbre nor at e table
 fforgers of lesynges myn auctour doth well preve
 To abide with lordes þat þei be not able
 Hereon he makith a chapitle ful notable
 And of his writyng þis was þe cause why 4500
 Þat prynces shuld examyn iche partie
 ¶Of wysdam also and of discrecioun
 Withoute a prefe not to be parcial
 ffor to a prince it is confusioun
 Yf betwen parties he be not founde egall
 Causith many on for to haue a fall
 Godde suffreth such not longe to continue
 Withdraweth þeir grace and hyndreth þeir fortune
 ¶This Theseus for his hastines
 His happe his grace discrecid day be day 4510
 The fame appalid of his worthines
 And froward fortune in awayte eke lay
 ffor his defautes to hyndre hym yf she may
 Caste she wolde his nobles to disavaun[ce]
 And þen his kyngdom by disobeisaunce ·

[17v, col. a]

¶ffrom hym withdrawe honour and reuerence
 fful frowardlie thurgh all his region
 They of Athens by cruell violence
 ffell agayn hym in rebellion
 Pat he was fayn to fle oute of þe town 4520
 Pus hath fortune derkyd þe brightnes
 Of all his nobleie *and* caste hym in distres
 ¶This was þe ende by grete contrariuste
 Of Theseus aftyr his dayes gladde
 When þe fresh floures of olde felicite
 ffortune aduerse made them for to fade
 Iche thyng myght [^]muste[^] bowe when it is ourelayde
 Worshippes and honours when þei brightest shyne
 With vnware chaunges þen rathest down decline
 ¶The vnsture gladnes the ioy transitorie 4530
 The vnstable surnes þe transmutacions
 The cloudie brightnes þe fals eclipsid glorie
 Of erthlie princis which haue possessions
 Monarches and dominacions
 Their soden chaunges declarith to vs all
 Their pompes sugre is meinte *with bitter gall*
 ¶This blynd goddes in his Sistorie
 With hir plesaunce medlith dissencions
 Aftyr triumphes conquest and victorie
 Revith from *princes* þeire sceptres *and* þeir crownes 4540
 Troubleth þe peple with fals rebellions
 Seth by þeis dukys which from þeir wele be fall
 All worldlie sugre is meinte *with bitter gall*
 ¶This Tragedie makith a memorie
 Of dukys tweine *and* of þeir high renownes
 And of þeir loue write a gret historie
 And hough þei conquirid diuerse regions
 Gouvernd cites cuntreis and townes
 Tyll fortune þeir *proves* did apalle
 To shewe þeir sugre was meint *with bitter gall* 4550
 ¶Princis princesses · seth hough deceptorie
 Beth all þeis worldlie reuolucions
 And hough fortune in hir reclinatorie
 With hir triacle tempereth fals poysyns
 So mervelus ben hir confeccions
 Of frowardnes · she wyl whatso befall
 Ay with hir sugre of custom *temper gall*
Exhortacio moralis ad principes ·
 All þat so be in euery maner age
 ffolkys ben diuerse of þeir condicions
 To turne · plie · and change in þeir corage 4560
 On oþer partie with soden mocions
 And for to bowe by transmutacions

With euery wynd as doon þe vnstable levys
 Which hange on trees in forestes and in grevez
 ¶ But off all chaunges is moste to drede
 And moste ferfull is þat variaunce
 When þat princes which may þe peple lede
 Be founde vnstable in þeir governaunce
 ffor þeir nobles and þeire puissaunce
 Assureth hem by a maner forme 4570
 Whateuer þem liste to accompliss and performe
 ¶ To comyn profite þei may most avayle
 When þei be rulid by wisdom and reson
 And to þe peple þei may moste disavaile
 When þei lake wit and discrecion
 Pus betwen tweine in euery region
 Þe peple drawith who þat can discerne
 To goode or badde as princes þem gouerne
 ¶ [P]ei may not be hasty nor soden
 But do all þing by gode advisment 4580
 [Ke]p[e] þem from tonges þat partid be on tweine
 [N]ot be to rakill to yeue no Iugement
 [A]nd of no folkys when þey be absent
 [Le]ue no talez nor yeue no credence
 [Tyll] þat þe partie may com to audience

[17v, col. b]

¶ Somwhile hath happid hough þat slowe credence
 Hath in som cas be founde full noyus
 But hasty credence I dare say in sentence
 A thousand folde is more perilus 4590
 ffor vnvised all haste is odius
 ffor haste full oft for lakkyng of reson
 Of mych peple hath be destruccioun
 ¶ Ther is no damage þat men can purpose
 More to be dredde nor more lamentable
 Þen a prince his eres to onclose
 To euery tale and to euery fable
 It is a token þeire hertes be not stable
 When þei to flaterers þeir eres so applie
 Namlie to such þat can well forge and lie
 ¶ ffolkes ben diuerse · som fals som trewe 4600
 In diuers studies do þeire bysynes
 Som can labour to fynde oute talez newe
 And som for lucre can maintene well falsnes
 And holde vp querels againe rightuesnes
 Pretendyng trouth vndir a fals intent ·
 To hyndre folkes which þat ben Innocent
 ¶ Men to suppose it were a grete folie
 Þat folkes shuld in their opinion

Speke or *pronounce* all on o partie
 Or holde o wey in þeir entencioun 4610
 ffor semleable as þer is diuisioun
 Of corages of high and lowe degre
 So is þer trulie a grete diuersite
 ¶ In rehersaile or reporte of a thyng
 ffor to his parte yche man is fauorable
 Som man can say well in his rehersyng
 Som man is double and som deceyvable
 Som men say trouth and som be variable
 Wherefore a *prince* of right as it doth seme
 Shuld well examine afforn or þat he deme 4620
 ¶ ffor þer is no more dredeful pestilence
 Pen is a tonge þat can flater and fage
 ffor with his cursid crokid violence
 He infectith folke of euery *maner* age
 Woo to tonges froward of þeir language
 And woo to tonges · fals · furius and woode ·
 Which of no *persone* neuer sey goode
 ¶ Bochas rehersith it is well sitting
 Pat euery man othir do commend 4630
 And say þe best alway in reportyng
 ffor in wele sayyng no man may offende
 Wher men say well godde wyll his *grace* sende
 Aftyr men be · men muste þeir *pris* vpreyse
 Aftyr þeir *merites* allow[e] þem or dispreise
 ¶ But wher a thyng is v[t]tyrlie vnknowe
 Lete no man þer be hasty of sentence
 ffor rightful Iuges sitting on a rowe
 Of þeir wysdome and of þeir high prudence
 Wyl of trouth haue fyrste som euidence
 I mene such as governd be by grace 4640
 Or eny dome forth by þeir lypypys passe
 ¶ A prince shulde assemble thynges tweyne
 Within hymself afforn ful prudentlie
 Sett hys domes faste with a myghty cheyne
 On of þe soule reson for þat partie
 Prudence choos oute and right for þe bodie
 And betwen both or he yeve a sentence
 To counsel call trouth and goode conscience
 ¶ ffyrste to considre with euery *circumstance*
 And diligentlie do þeron his labour 4650
 Off discrecion to take þe balaunce
 And fyrste wey oute who is þe accuser

[18r, col. a]

And whedir he for falsnes or fauour
 In his processe liste to procede

Hereof a prince muste of right take hede
 ¶ He muste also considre by and bye
 What þat he is which to hym is accusid
 And whedir þe accuser be frende or enemie
 Or whedir he shall be acceptid or refusid
 In his actes þis muste afforn be musid 4660
 And whedir he be by reporte of his name
 A man wele noysid or sclaunderd by diffame
 ¶ Yf Theseus hadde þus ben advisid
 And considred of reson þe maner
 He had not so hastylie devisid
 His sonnes deth lyke as ye shall leere
 ffor yf þer hadde assemblid ben in fere
 In his persone prudence and reson
 He schulde haue seen in his discrecion
 ¶ By knowlegyng of longe experience 4670
 Of his wyfe þe grete vnstedfastnes
 Which thurgh his frowarde compassid eloquence
 Was redy euer to bryng folke to distresse
 And in his wrytyng Bochas berith witnes
 Of þeir nature women can flater and fage
 And be somwhile to copius of þeir langage
 ¶ Also of wysdome þis duke Theseus
 Schulde haue considird afor his intente
 Hough þat his son callid Ipolitus
 Of all onclennes was founde ay Innocent 4680
 And hough þat he of custome made his went
 Into forestes duryng his yonge age
 To hunte at bestes which þat were sauage
 ¶ Rennyng on foote as shal vndirstonde
 On hylles valeis to eschewe idilnes
 Modir of vices with his bowe in hand
 Diane to serue of huntyng chefe goddes
 Somtyme to hauke he did his bysynes
 Eke vnto fysshying he gretlie was applied
 So þat his youth was neuer vnoccupied 4690
 ¶ Thus he lyvyd in wodys solitarilie
 And of Venus despysid the seruise
 Among women he wolde neuer tary
 Theire feleship he did allwey despise
 ffor he dempte by sentence of þe wyse
 Who touchith pych by assay men may wel se
 It fayleth not he shal defylid be
 ¶ Ipolitus sawe well þis thyng befor
 Kepte at large from such contrariuste
 His grene youth he wold no wey haue lorne 4700
 To be defowlid for lak of chastite
 ffor he levyd euer in virginite

And neuer did Bochas wyl not varie
 Nothyng þat was vnto godde contrarie
 ¶ Thus of intent he kepte his bodie clene
 Duryng his lyfe both in thought and dede
 Whos modir was Ipolita þe Quene
 Of Amazones in Ouide ye may rede
 But o alas þat Theseus toke hede
 ffor a tale of phedra ful of gyle 4710
 Withoute gylt his son to exhile
 ¶ Aftyr whos deth som poetis seyn
 Hough þat diana for his chastite
 Restorid hym vnto lyve agayn
 By Esculapius and gaue hym liberte
 In hir forestes to hunte *and* to go fre
 ffor which restoryng as write Ouidius
 As twys a man men calle hym virbius

[18r, col. b]

¶ But Bochas here I not what he doth mene
 Maketh in his booke an exclamacion 4720
 Agayns women þat pite is to seene
 Seith hough þeir lyfe þeir generacion
 Bene of nature double of condicion
 And callith þem eke diuerse and vnstable
 Bestis resemblyng þat been insaciabie
 ¶ He menyth of women þat been born in Crete
 Nothyng of them þat dwelle in þis cuntre
 ffor women here all doublenes þei lete
 And haue no tache of mutabilite
 Pei loue no chaunges nor no duplicite 4730
 ffor þeir husbandes in causes small or grete
 Whateuer þei seyn þei can not counturplete
 ¶ Blessid be godde þat hath þem made so meke
 So humble and feithfull of þeir condicions
 ffor þof men wolde cause and matier seke
 Agayn þeir paciens to fynd occasions
 They haue refusid all contradiccions
 And them submittyd þurgh þeir gouernaunce
 Onlie to mekness and womanlie suffraunce
 ¶ I speke off all · I speke not off oon 4740
 Pat ben professid vnto lowlines
 Pey may haue Mouthes but langage haue þei noon
 All true husbandes can bere herof witnes
 ffor weddid men I dare right well expresse
 Pat haue assayed and haue experience
 Best can recorde of wyfelie paciens
 ¶ ffor as it longeth to men to be sturdie
 And somewhat frowarde as of þeir nature

Ryght so can women suffre pacientlie
 And all wronges humble endure 4750
 Men shuld attempte no *maner* creature
 And namelie women þeir meknes to repreve
 Which may well suffre while no man þem greve
 ¶Euerych þing resortith to his kynde
 As Bochas writeth somtyme of þe eyre
 And yit who serchith by *processe* he shall fynde
 Þat trouth and *vertue* may neuer fade of chere
 ffor rightuesnes wyl allway shyne clere
 Throuth falsnes in what þey haue to doon
 They may no while assemble in oon person 4760
 ¶ffeyth and flattery þei be contrarie
 They may togyddyr holde no soioure
 Nor simples chicche þat can not varie
 May neuer acorde with a baratoure
 ffor Innocence with a losenger
 Nor chastite can not hirself applie
 Hir to conforme vnto no ribaudie
 ¶Crafte and nature sewe þe *profession*
 By þe ordinaunce seet in þeir corage
 And yche man foloweth his condicion 4770
 As of stokke þe frute hath his tarage
 Pylgrymes may go full ferre in þeir passage
 But I dare sey hough ferre þat euer þei goon
 Þer bide som tarage of þat þei com frome
 ¶Bochas maketh an Introduccion
 In this Chapitle of the high nobles
 That princes haue in þeir possession
 And by a *maner* lawghyng doth expresse
 Hough for to sette þem in grete surnes
 They haue *seruauntes* vpon them abydyng 4780
 And day and nyght men of armes wayty[ng]
 ¶That no man may entre but yf he haue l[icence]
 The froward portes stondyng at þe gat[e]
 Put men abake by sturdie violence
 It were full harde agayn to debate
 Ther wache is kepte both erly and late .

[18v, col. a]

And þem to assure on nyghtes when þei slepe
 The chaumbirleyns þeire dores streytlie kepe
 ¶Men assigned þeir metes to assay 4790
 To taste þeir wynes leste þer were tresoun
 Such mortall dedes þeis lordes doth affray
 So is þeire surnes meynt with suspeccion
 Who fedith þem gladlie þat fereth þem of poyson
 But pore folke fraunchysid fr̄ from such drede

Such as godde send with myrth þei þem fede
 ¶ But poetis þat write tragedies
 Their compleyng is all of high estates
 Rehersyng euer þeir pitevus Iopardies
 Their soden chaunges and þeir wylfull fates
 Their diuision and þeir mortall debates 4800
 And ay conclude þeir dities who can rede
 Highest astates stonde moste in drede
 ¶ And grownd and rote of all þis mortal trouble
 As writeth Bochas *and* berith pleylnie witnes
 Be þeis liers with þeir tonges double
 Þemself ay inforsyng to oppresse
 With whome flaterie is a chef maistres
 And werste of all to þeir dredful sentence
 Is when princes ben hasty of credence
 ¶ Hasty credence is rote of all erreure 4810
 A frowarde stepmodre of all goode counsaile
 Grounde of grete hyndryng a dredful deceyver
 ffayre oft of face · with a foule perilus taylor
 Gladlie concludyng with ful grete disavaile
 Next neighbor vnto repentaunce
 To all þat truste *and* haue in þeir plesaunce
 ¶ Princis considreth hough in euery age
 ffolkes be diuerse of þeir condicion
 To plie and turne and chaunge in þeir corage
 Yit is þer noon to myn opinion 4820
 So dredefull chaunge and transmutacion
 As chaunge of princes to yeve a Iugement
 Or hasty credence withoute avisement
 ¶ It is well founde a passyng grete damage
 Knowe and experte in euery region
 Thof a tale haue a fayre visage
 It may include ful grete decepcioun
 Hid vndir sugre gall and foule poyson
 With a fresh face of double intendaunce
 Yit yevech no credence without avisement 4830
 ¶ Lete folkes all be ware of þeir langage
 Kepe þeir tonges from oblocucion
 To hyndre or hurte by no maner of outeage
 Preserue youre lippes from all detraccion
 ffro chaumpartie and contradiccion
 ffor lest þat fraude were founde in their entente
 Ne yevech no credence withoute avisement
 ¶ Princis princesses of noble and high parage
 Which haue lordship and dominacion
 Voide them aside þat can flater and fage 4840
 ffro tonges þat haue a tarage of treson
 Stoppeth youre erys from þeir bitter sown

Beth circumspecte not hasty but prudent
And yeveth no credence withoute avisement

De casu Alithee Regine Callidonie

When Bochas had shewyd his sentence

And declarid his opinion

Agayn them þat wer hasty of credence

[H]e gan anon make a digression

[ff]ro þat matier and of intencioun

[To] serche oute mo his purpos to continue

4850

[18v, col. b]

That were doun caste and hyndird by fortune

¶ And as hym thought he sawe a companie
Of many worthie whiche to hym did appere

And amonge all fyrste he did espye

Quene Alithea as she cam hym nere

Al bedewyd hir face · and eke hir chiere

With salt teres þat pite was to seene

Which whilom was Callidonie the quene

¶ She was þe doughter of kyng Thesteus

Weddid to oon Callidonie þe kyng

Of chere and face apperyng ful pitevus

Hir here to torne and frowardlie liggyng

And in token also of compleynyng

As write Bochas wherof he toke hede

Blak was hir habite and al torent hir wede

¶ A son she hadde Melleaug he hight

In erthe was þer noon fayrere for to se

Ryght wel faouered in euery manys sight

And as I fynde at his natiuite

Present were þe fatal sistres · iij ·

With þeir rokkes and gan to spynne faste

And toke a bronde and into fyre it caste

¶ And in þatoure þis was hir langage

Touchyng þis chylde we ful acordid be

And haue disposid þe terme eke of his age

The space eke concludid of his destynye

As longe tyme whoso liste to see

Tyl this bronde emonge þe colys rede

Be ful consumid into ashes dede

¶ But when Alithea aspyed þeir entente

And conceyvid þe fyne of þeire sentence

She rose hir vp and þe bronde she hente

Oute of þe fyre with ful grete diligence

Squenchid anon þe fyres violence ·

The dome of Parchas she gan þer disobeie

The bronde reseruyng vnder lok and kay

¶ Touchyng þe fadre of þis Melleauger

4860

4870

4880

Oeneus þus of hym I rede
 Hough he went and sought nye and ferre
 Goddes and Goddessez whoso liste take hede 4890
 In hope oonlie to haue grete nede
 ffor to þem all poetis þus devyse
 Saue to diane he did sacrifice
 ¶Wherof she myght in Indignacioun
 Caste she wolde on hymm avengid be
 Sent a bore into his region
 fful sauage and ful of crueltie
 Which devourid þe ~~tre~~ frute of many a tre
 And destroyed his cornys and his vynes
 That such scarste of vitaile *and* of wynes 4900
 ¶Was in his lande vpon euery syde
 Pat þe peple of necessite
 Compellid were amonge to *prouide*
 Som mene wey to saue þe cuntre
 And at þe laste þei *condescendid* be
 Pat Melleaugor lusty of his corage
 Shuld chese with hymself fresh *and* yong of age
 ¶This dredful bore myghtyly to inchace
 And forth þei went ichonn devoyde of drede
 With rounde spers þei gan hym to manace 4910
 But Melleauger made fyrst his sidys rede
 And with a swerd þen smote of his hede
 Wherof þe cuntre was glad faynn
 And in þis wyse þe tusky bore was slaynn

[19r, col. a]

¶Somme bookys tell of þis huntyng
 [Þ]at a ladie which was born in Arge
 [C]allid Athlanta doughter to þe kyng
 [T]o sle þe boore toke on hyr þe charge
 [An]d with an arowe ~~made~~ made his woundes large
 [Ek]e in Ouide like as it is founde 4920
 [B]ecause þat she gave þe fyrste wounde
 [¶M]elleaug anon for a memorie
 [A]s he þat was hir own chose knyght
 [G]afe hir þe hede in tokyn of þe victorie
 [B]ut his tweine vncles agayn all skyl *and* right
 [R]afte hir þe hede of verrey force and myght
 [Ha]vyng despite þat she in hir advise
 [O]f þis victorie shulde bere away þe price
 [¶W]ith which Iniurie Melleauger was wroth
 [A]gayn þem prouddie gan disdeigne 4930
 [P]ullid oute a swerd and vpon þem he goth
 [A]nd þurgh his manhode he slough his vncles tweine
 [A]nd aftyr þat he did his bysy peyne

To take þe hede and with ful humble intent
 To Athlanta agayn it to presente
 ¶ Oon of his vncles was callid flexippus
 A manlie knyght and but yonge of age
 That oþer broþer named Theseus
 But when þeir Sistre herd of þis outrage
 Hough þei were slayn she gan in hir visage 4940
 Wex dede pale alas for lakke of bloode
 When she aspyed þe cause hough þat it stode
 ¶ She hadde no matier godde to be fayn
 Quene Althea to stonde and to beholde
 Hir brethern tweine of hir son slayn
 At þe huntyng of which befor I tolde
 ffyrste thynges tweine she gan peyse *and* vnfolde
 Of hir brethern þe loue and nygh kynred
 And of hir son þe hasty cruel dede
 ¶ And remembryng she castith in a balaunce 4950
 Of hertlie wo þat she did indure
 Thought yf she dide vpon þeir deth vengeance
 To sle hir son it were agayn nature
 Thus longe in a dwere she did indure
 Hir dedlie sorowe peysyng euerydeele
 Whedir þat she shal be tendre or cruell
 ¶ This tendir y mene hir son for to spare
 Or punish þe deth of hir breþern tweine
 Pus counfortles all destitute and bare
 In languishyng she indureth forth hir peyn 4960
 And remedie can she non ordeigne
 Saue fayn she wolde avenge hir yf she may
 But þen cam nature forth and sayde nay
 ¶ It was hir son all kyndlie right
 On whom caste avengid for to be
 To women all an outhlie straunge sight
 Þat a modir devoide of all pite
 Shulde sle hir chylde so merciles pardie
 Nay nay not so nature wyl not assent
 ffor yf she did ful sore shuld she repent 4970
 ¶ But o allas all fatall purveaunce
 Kepith his course as *summe* clerkys sayn
 But þe wrytyng of doctours in substance
 And þus diuines replie þer agayn
 And afferme þat þe opinion is veine
 Of þem þat truste on fate or destynye
 ffor godde above hath þe souereignete
 ¶ And of fortune þe power may restreyne
 To saue or spyll lyke as folke discerue
 Agayn his wyll þei may nothyng ordeigne 4980
 Of necessite what course þat concerue

But þis matier all holy I reserue
Vnto diuines to *termine* and conclude
Which nat *perteineth* vnto folkys rude ·

[19r, col. b]

¶ But Althea of Callidonie quene
Gan sore muse and hyng in a balaunce
Hir breþern deth · when she did þem seene
þen was she mevid anon to do vengeaunce
Vpon hir son by ful grete displesaunce
But as poetis liste to compile 4990
Nature made hir withdrawe hir hande a while

¶ Thus atwen Ire and atwen affeccion
She helde hir longe on nowthir *partie* stable
Tyl þat she caught in hir opinioun
A sodein rancure which made hir be vengeable
And hasty wrath is not commendable
Agayn hir son with hir cursid hande
Oute of þe chest to take þe fatal bronde

¶ And sodenlie she caste it in þe fyre ·
And cruel wex agayn all womanhede 5000
To execute hir venemus desire
The fatal bronde among þe flames brode
Consumid was into asshes dede
And furiuslie in hir melancolie
The vengeaunce doon þus she can to crie

¶ O ye parchas froward sistres thre
Which of yow kepen þe librarie
And of children at þeir natiuite
Waite þe sentence which þat must varie
Wherso it be · welful or contrarie 5010
Vpon his domes takyng allwey hede
Hough þat ye shal dispose þat fatall threde ·

¶ Thow Cloto takys þi rokke on hand
And ~~afty~~ lachesis aftyr doth begynne
By grete advise who can vndrestond
The threde on length to drawe and to spynne
But when þe spirit shal fro þe body twynne
þu Autropos doste þi cruell peyne
fful frowardlie to parte þe threde in tweynn

¶ I may wel pleyn on such departison 5020
Not for a day but alas foreuer
Ye haue vntwynyd and made diuision
Of my · ij · breþern *and* causid them disseuer
þat þem alyve I shal se neuer
And I of haste alas why did I so
To avenge þeir deth haue slayn my son also

¶ O ye ~~the~~ thre doughtres of herebus þe fell

Whos outhlie modre was þe blak nyght
 And all youre kynred and linage lie in helle
 And for to avenge þe wronge *and* grete vnright 5030
 Which þat I haue acompassid in youre sight
 I wyl with yow *perpetuellie* compleynn
 Lyke my deserte endure sorow and peyne ·
 ¶ And while she gan with hirself þus stryfe
 Vpon hir sorowes þat were endles
 She made a swerd þurghoute hir herte ryve
 Of hirself · her she was so recles
 And Bochas aftyr among all þe pres
 Saw as hym thought with a full hidduus chere
 Dede of visage Hercules appere 5040
 ¶ Whos fadre was Iubiter þe grete
 His modir doughter of kyng Amphitrion
 Callid Alcumena somtyme born in Crete
 And as poetis rehersen on by on
 So excellent was þere neuer noon
 To speke of conquest of victorie and fame
 Her in þis worlde þat hadde so grete a n[ame]
 ¶ Dredful of loke he was and right terribl[e]
 His berde eke blake which hyng ful low ad[on]
 And of his here as bristill was horrible 5050
 His roobe also ful mervelus of faccion
 Was of a skynne of a fers lion
 Which from his bak of verrey force h[e rente]
 Within a forest allon whan he wen[te]
 ¶ In his hande he bare a mace of stel[e]
 Which to beholde was wondir large [*and* huge]

[19v, col. a]

By apparence as Bochas felt well
 Dempte of reson as a rightful Iuge
 That Hercules hadde to his refuge
 Wysdom with force for to increce his fame 5060
 All bestys wylde for to make þem tame
 ¶ And vnto Bochas he gan lowde crie
 Take right goode hede for it is no fable
 I for my merites to speke of Chyualrie
 And nobles triumphes and moste commendable
 To be preferrid moste worthy and moste able
 Which haue accomplishid all þat may excell
 Thurgh hygh prowes þat eny tonge can tell
 ¶ Eke of my byrth in heuyn ful yore age
 ffully conceyvid my constellation 5070
 Myghty Ioue saide vnto Iuno
 On such aday in such a regioun
 On shal be born most mighty of renoun

Noblest of nobles both in werre and pees
 Of whom þe name shal be Hercules
 ¶ The which dome when Iuno vndirstode
 Of Iubiter conceyvyng þe entent
 And knewe my fate shulde be so goode
 To lucina hir messanger she sente
 But som say hough doun hirself she wente 5080
 To þis Goddes · Goddes of chyldyng
 And hir besought to *graunte* hir · hir asking
 ¶ That she wolde frome Hercules translate
 The influence of his natiuite
 Helpe to reforme his fame *and* eke his fate
 And *graunte* it holy to yonge Euriste
 And þat lucina present wolde be
 The same oure by Iupiter providid
 It þ to possede all hoole and vndevided
 ¶ Thus to þe modre of þis Euriste 5090
 Iuno þe Goddes *grauntid* his fauoure
 Therbe disposing þat he should be
 Myghty of puissance lyke an Emperoure
 But of his nobles þe conquest and labour
 And of his manhode þe prowes and pursute
 By Hercules was fully execute
 ¶ This Hercules hadde þe travaile
 And Euristeus bare away þe name
 Eke Ercules faught in plate and mayle
 And hygh emprisez prouddie did ataine 5100
 But þe reporte of his noble fame
 To Euristeus was finallie ascribed
 Thus of his thanke was Hercules de pryved
 ¶ fful ofte in armes som doth right well
 And oft causith þat þe felde is wonne
 And of anoþer þat did neueradele
 The pryse outespredith like as shene sonne
 And oft it happith þat he which best hath ronne
 Dothe not þe spere lyke his desert possede
 Where fals fauour yevith ylke man his mede 5110
 ¶ ffame in hir palace haue trompes mo þan oonn
 Som of golde þat yeveth a ful fresh sownn
 Som hath laude þat deserueth noon
 And som haue ben full worthie of renoun
 Nothyng *preferres* be to *commendacion*
 As by reporte of states high and lowe
 So frowardlie ffame hir trompe hath Iblowe
 ¶ Touchyng armes þe pore nor the riche
 Be not ichon of hert coragius
 Nor all men may not be elyke 5120
 Nor of þer name egal or gracios

[A]nd þof þe pore haue victorius
[Of] aventure to do full wele som day
[Ot]hir haue pynchid to take his thank away
¶[Sum sl]eth þe deere with an hoked arowe
[Whos] parte is noon yit of þe venison

[19v, col. b]

On beete þe busk anoþer hath þe sparrow
And all þe byrdes in his possession
Oon draweth his nette ~~vpe~~ in ryvers vp *and* do[n]
With sondrie baytes caste oute lyne and hook 5130
And hath no parte of all þat euer he toke

¶And euidence her of ye may se
fful notable to be put in memorie
Of Hercules and of Euriste
ffor Hercules gate ay þe victorie
And Euristeus receyvid hath þe glorie
Thus þeir palme partid was on tweine
That on reyoysyd þat oþer þ bare þe payne
¶Euristeus was prince of Athene 5140
Sone and eyre by descent of line

Vnto þe kyng þat callid was Ciciline
Vndir whos might as Bochas doth deter[mine]
Hercules thurgh knyghtlie discipline
Profited s̅o̅ ^moste^ manlie and moste wyse
Þat from all oþer he bare away þe pryse
¶But o alas þat euer it shulde befall
So noble a knight so manlie so notable
Þat eny spot shuld his prise apalle
Or cause his corage for to be vnstable
Which is a thyng doolful and lamentable 5150
ffrom his knyghthode which is a thyge to *straunge*

Þat euer a woman shuld his hert change
¶I wyl excuse bycause þeir nature
Is to change hertes and corages
Agayn þeir nature no force may indure
ffor þeir flaterie *and* sugred fayre language
Lyke Sirens fresh of þeir visages
ffor to enchaunte of princis þe nobles
Mo þen Hercules can bere herof witnes 5160

¶This Hercules astonyd and ashamyd
Vnto Bochas shewyd his presence
Sayd alas my knyghthode is defamyd
By a ful fals amorus pestilence
So sore constreynyd by a mortall violence
Wherby alas my manhode was applied
By sleight of woman oppressid and maistred
¶To take þeir habit and cloth me in þeir wede

To shaue my berde · and force my visage
 With oynementes agayn all manhode
 To make it sowple and chaunge my langage 5170
 And to compleyn more of myn outerage
 Vpon my fyngyrs fyve twys tolde
 I hadde rynges richelie wrought of golde
 ¶ Thus was my corage chaungid feminyne
 ffor loue of oon callid Iole
 Of condicions þof she were serpentine
 Me þought she was so fayre onn to se
 Pat all my ioy was with hir for to be
 And þat þer non shuld aperceyve my trespas
 I chaungid both habit looke and face 5180
 ¶ And was a woman outewarde in apparence
 Of intente to haue more liberte
 To vse my lustes and haue experience
 Of appetites þe which þat vnlawful be
 Wherof þe sclaudir reboundith vpon me
 Pat I dare say myn outeragius trespas
 Doth all my knyghthode and prowes deface ·
 ¶ Wherfor o bachas I pray þe take hede
 ffor to descryve in termys pleynlie and clere
 Myn infortune right as it was in dede 5190
 Pat when oþer conceyven in maner
 On myn onhappes contagius for to here
 They may be example of me do þeir peyn
 ffrom vicius lyfe þeir hertes to restreyne
 ¶ ffor þeis foolys þat all wisdom diffyse

[20r, col. a]

¶ And be contrarius to vertuus discipline
 May yeve example to folkys þat ben wyse
 [A]nd be to þem a lanterne of doctrine
 [V]ices to eschewe and prudentlie decline
 [ff]ro fleshlie lustys for it is taught in scolis 5200
 [P]at wyse men ben al day ware by foles
 ¶ When Bochas hadde conceyvid þe compleint
 Of Hercules in his apperyng
 And hough nobles by women was atteinte
 [T]hurch his pitevus disordinat lyvyng
 [H]e thought anon hymself remembryng
 [It] hadde be routh for to pute in mynde
 His vices all and vertues left behynde
 ¶ Considre also it was impertinent
 Outhir by langage to write agayn al right 5210
 [A]ny thing þat insentente
 The fame amenissh of so noble a knyght
 Or to distres many maner sight

[H]is gloriſus prowes ſith poetis for his werres
 Reyſon his renoun ſo high aboue þe ſterres
 ¶ffor he was both knight and philoſophir
 And for his ſtrength callid a geaunte
 ffor comyn profite he gan eke prouddie profer
 Of manlie corage yf þerto felle graunte
 To entre into Egipte to ſle þer þe Geaunt 5220
 Callid Buſiris which of full fals intent
 Slough all ſtraungers þat thurgh his kyngdam went
 ¶ffor vndir a colour of liberalite
 Vnto his place he gladlie wold call
 Straungers ichon þat com þurgh his cuntre
 And ſolempnelie receyve them oon and all
 And lyke a kyng both in chambir and hall
 Make þem ſuch chere in al maner thyng
 As perteynyd to a worthy kyng
 ¶But while his geſtys lay onyght in ſlepe 5230
 This fals Tiranne in ful cruel wyſe
 Mordrid them ichon or þei toke kepe
 And aftyr þat þis was eke his gyſe
 With þeir blode to make a ſacrifice
 To Iupiter godde of þat cuntre
 Of hole hole intente to ples his deite
 ¶Pat in his kingdam of frutes and of greyne
 He laude þat increce by grete habundaunce
 Doun from hevyn he wolde ſend þem reyne
 This mene he made and þis fals cheveſaunce 5240
 To mordir and ſle he had ſo grete pleaſaunce
 ffor all þing hym thought it did hymm goode
 To mordir his geſtes t̅ and to ſhede þer blode
 ¶But when þis mordir of Buſires was couth
 Pat no ſtraunger myght paſſe his lande in pees
 This manlie knyght yit flouryng in his youth
 This noble famus þis worthy hercules
 Amonge oþer put hymſelf in prees
 And lyke a geſte outward in ſhewyng
 Cam to þe place of Buſires þe kyng 5250
 ¶Rebukyd hym of his grete outeraige
 Don to his geſtys by grete violence
 And for to make peſible þat paſſage
 And for to avenge his importable offence
 And of his mordre to make a recompence
 This Hercules ſlough Buſires in dede
 And toke þe blode which he did blede
 ¶Offyrd it vp t̅ Iupiter to pleaſe
 ffor his victorie hym to magnifie
 And all Egipte þus was ſet in eſe 5260
 Peir lande þeir frutes gan alſo to multiplie 5261

And to habound by influence of reyne 5263
Which affortyme of vitaille was baren 5264
Theire greyne encrece aboute on iche *partie* 5262

[20r, col. b]

¶ Anoper Geaunt callid Antheus
Kyng of libie and governde all þat lande
Whom Hercules moste strong and coragius
Whilom outerayed and slough hym with his hand
ffor as þei wrastlid by experience he fonde
Touchyng the erthe · þis geaunt it is true 5270
His force his myght did allway renewe

¶ But when hercules þe maner did aspye
Hough his strength renuyd agayn so ofte
Per agayns he shope a remedie
High in the eyre he peysid hym vp alofte
And with his armes harde and nothyng softe
Bak and boon so sore he did embrace
Pat he fell dede befor hym in þat place

¶ But som bookys of þis geaunt tell 5280
Within his kyngdom who did hym assaile
He wolde of newe his chiuallries compell
Ofte agayn to mede hym in ~~bataill~~ bataile
And in þis wyse ful selde he did faile
To afforce of newe as folkys shal vndrestonde
His strength his myght all enmys to withstonde

¶ But Hercules of high discrecioun
The felde on hym manlie to recure
Hadde hym be se sleight oute of his region
And as þei met þer of aventure
Pe sayde ~~Athen~~ Antheus myght not indure 5290
But was discomfitid by Hercules anon
Maugre his myght he and his men ichonn

¶ Aftyr þis conquest Hercules is goonn
ffor exercise his prowes for to vse
Agayn þe myghty stronge Gereonn
Kyng of ffaynn of Melleger and Ebuse
The which tiraune myght hym not excuse
That all his laboure as poetis do compile
Was fro þis realmes his peples to ~~exhile~~ exile

¶ His tirannie ne myght not longe indure 5300
ffor Hercules þe noble worthi knyght
Made vpon hymm a grete discomfitoure
And slough þe tiraune as þei met in fight
And aftyr þat he thurgh his grete myght
Of high prowesse and magnanimite
Slough Cerberus with his hedyes thre

¶ The famus Bulle of þe lande of crete

Which þat destroyed all þat regioun
 He slough also when þei did mete
 And in Nemea he slough also a fers lioun 5310
 And for a record of his high renounn
 Of manlie force his skyn away he toke
 And to his bodie a cote þerof he shope
 ¶ To all his ennemies to shew hym moste dredefull
 Perfor he werid þat hiduus garment
 And for he was neuer in armes founde dull
 But euer elike fresh in his intende
 Into a mounten he made anon his wente
 Callid Erimantus and þer in his passage
 He slough a bore moste wylde and most s[avage] 5320
 ¶ Besyde a ryuer callid Stiphaus
 Of furius byrdes he slough a ful grete n[oumbre]
 Within þe kyngdom of kyng Phineus
 All þe cuntre for þei did encombre
 ffor with þeir shadowe and contagius vmb[re]
 On sedes or frutes whereuer þei alight
 All was deuourid in euery mannes si[ght]
 ¶ Vpon þe mountein callid Auentine
 Which is not ferre from Rome þe c[ite] 5329

[20v, col. a]

Which is not ferre from Rome þe Cite 5329
 Per is a woode as cronicles determine 5330
 Ryght fresh of sight and goodlie on to see
 And Hercules passyng by þat cuntre
 ffro Spaynewarde passyng by Italie
 Oathus þe Geaunt did hym þer assaile
 ¶ While Hercules among þe levys grene
 Layde hym to slepe of soden aventure
 And his bestes agayn þe sonne shyne
 While þat he slepte wente in þeir pasture
 Cam Cachus forth full hiduus of stature
 Thought he wolde þeis bestes with hym haue 5340
 Stale þem ichon and did þem in a caue
 ¶ And like a thefe he made them go bakwarde
 That no man shuld þe traces of þem knowe
 Nor of þeir passage haue no rewarde
 ffor by þeire tayles he had þem on a rowe
 Into his caue which þat stode ful lowe
 And for þei were of excellent fayrnes
 To kepe þem clos he did his bysynes
 ¶ Oute of his slepe when Hercules awoke
 And he perceyvid his oxen were away 5350
 He rose hym vp and caste aboute his loke
 Began to espie in all þe haste he may

To what partie þe trace of them lay
And while he stode þus musyng in the shade
He harde lowyng þat his oxenn made
¶ And by þeir lowyng he gan anon aproche
Towarde þe partys wher þei were kepte ful clos
ffonde þe ~~eau~~ cave vndir a myghty roche
And prowde Cachus which had þem in depose
Agayn Hercules he sturdyly arose 5360

But for al þat he myght hymself not save
ffor he hym slough at þe entrie of þe cave
¶ And þus his bestys he hath agayn recurid
þat semyd afforn irrecuperable
Aftyr þe mountaine befor he hath assured
Which for ~~brg~~ brigantes aforn was ful doutable
But ~~he~~ ^by^ his manhode it was made habitable
þat men myght for drede of eny foo
When euer þei wolde frely com and go ·

¶ Touchyng his conquest vpon femynye 5370
Agayn Amazones with Theseus he went
The Quene Ipolita thurgh his chyualrie
ffor his pray anon to hym she wente
And Ipolita of full true intente
Gave vnto hym in tokyn of victorie
Of golde of a gyrdyl to haue hir in memorie

¶ Aftyr þat ^to^ Affryk he wente a ful grete pase
Oonly of purpos þe gardey for to se
Which aperteynyd to þe kyng Athas
þat broþer was to kyng Promothie 5380
In Astrologie full expert was he

And in his gardenn of which I have yow tolde
The riche braunchis and appyls wer of golde

¶ Coruz Magik made by grete avisment
fful streite kepte · and closid environ
And wecchid with a fell Serpent
That no man entrid þat riche mansioun
But Hercules moste myghty of renounn
The serpent slough þurgh his manly pursute
[A]nd fro þat gardenn he bare awat þe frute 5390

¶ [Th]is sayde Athas as bokys specifie
[A]nd poetis of hym þei specially indite

[20v, col. b]

He was connyng in astronomie
And þerin dede ful gretlie hym delite
And many a boke he made and did write
With grete labour and grete diligence
In his tyme of þat Science ·
¶ The which were more precius þen golde

And more riche in his opinioun
 But Hercules in soth as it is tolde 5400
 Gate all þe bokys þurgh his grete renoun
 Bare þem by force oute of þat regioun
 And into Grece lyke a conqueroure
 With hym he brought for a grete tresour
 ¶ Of Trace he slough þe tiraune outragius
 Pat sometyme callid Diomede
 Which mordred all þat cam into his regioun
 And with þeir flesh his horse he did fed[e]
 And þe thought his wit laboure *and* manh[ode]
 Of Achillaus which was a grete wondr[e] 5410
 He made þe stremys for to parte insondre
 ¶ And by his wysdomm dyd þem diuide
 In .ij. parties disseueryng his passage
 ffor beforetyme no man myght abyde 5414
~~Turnyng vpwarde þer was noon oþer bote~~ 5417
~~Whereuer it flowyd of trees crop and rote~~
 ¶ A grete emperice he did eke vndirtake
~~When þat þe wormes hiduus and horrible~~ 5420
 Of his course þe furius fell outerage 5415
 ffor in cuntres s it did so grete damage
 Turnyng vpward þer was non oþer bote
 Whereuer it flowyd of trees crophe *and* rote .
 ¶ A grete empris he did eke vndirtake
 When þat þe wormes hiduus *and* horrible 5420
 Aryved vp of Archadien þe lake 5421
 Which with þeir teth and mouth ful terrible 5423
 Callid ferre þe bestes full odible 5422
 ffrute greyne and corne did mortally devour 5424
 But Hercules did þe cuntre so secoure
 ¶ Cam lyke a knyght þeir malice for to let
 And by his prudence destruyd þem ichonn
 Within þe lake þe wormes vp he shet
 Saue among all behynd was left oonn
 And agayn hym Hercules anon 5430
 Of knyghthode caught so grete avauntage
 That to þe cuntre he did no more damage
 ¶ This all þat euer may richer sede be
 Touchyng knyghthode prowesse and prudence
 Of glorijs fame of longe felicite
 This knyghtlie man had moste excellence
 And in armes lengest experience
 And for his triumphes and actes merciall
 He set vp pilers for a memoriall
 ¶ Which remembred his conquestes moste notable 5440
 And his dedes by grayng did expresse
 Beyonde which no lande is habitable

So ferre abrode spred his high nobles
 But as þe sonne lenyth his brightnes
 Somwhile when he is freshest in his spere
 With vnware cloudes þat sodenlie appere
 ¶Sembleable þe nobles and þe glorie
 Of Hercules in þis vnstable lyfe
 Eclipsid was *and* shadowed his memorie

[21r, col. a]

With ^Be^ deianira þat somtyme was his wyfe 5450
 ffor by hir fraude comm in þe mortall stryfe
 [A]s ye shall here þe maner and þe case
 [W]herby þat he loste his lyfe alas
 ¶[Yi]t for hir sake þis moste manlie man
 [ffa]ught as I fynde a singler bataile
 [Wi]th Achelus son of Æ þe Ocean
 [Lyk]e as poetis make rehersaile 5457
 [Thi]s Hercules of knyghthode soueraigne 5459
 [Ren]te from his hede on of armys tweine 5460
 [A]nd as eche oþer prouddie did assaile 5458
 ¶[O]f kyng Oene she was þe doughter dere 5461
 [To] Hercules ioynyd by mariage
 [A]nd as þei comm to a grete riuere
 [W]ith sturdie wawes where was no passage
 [N]essus þe Geaunt outhlie of visage
 [To] Hercules profyrd he seruise
 [An]d ful falslie agayn hym can devise
 ¶[M]ade his promis He to Hercules in dede
 [T]o put his lyfe in grete aventure
 Ouer þe streme Dianyre to leede 5470
 Because his was large of his stature
 And for she was a right fayre creature
 When þei were passid and com to þe lande
 Nessus falslie volde vpon þe stronde
 ¶Haue knowe hir fleshlie like as writith Ouide
 Hercules havyng þerof a sight
 As he abode vpon þat oþer syde
 And for to avenge hym of his grete vnright
 Toke his bowe and bent it anon riht
 And with an arowe fylid sharpe and grounde 5480
 Gafe to Nessus his dedlie fatall wounde
 ¶Lyke as e a condite gushid oute þe blode
 And whan he sawe þat he muste dye
 To Dianyre befor hym þer she stode
 With all his hert hir he gan to þa pray
 That in oon thyng his luste she wolde obey
 To take his shert and be not rekles
 With bloode disteynyd and send it Hercules

¶ Therwith to hym to be reconcilid
 And she to hym þe shert anon ~~to hym~~ hath sent 5490
 Thurgh whos venome allas he was begylt
 ffor what by touchyng *and* by inchauntment
 His flessch his bones furiuslie were brent
 And among his dedly peynys all
 Into a rage sodenlie is fall
 ¶ As a beste furiuslie he ranne
 On valez · hillez among þe craggy stonys
 Sembleable as doth a woode mann
 Pullid vp trees and rotes all at onys
 Brake bestes hornys *and* all toknewe þeir bones 5500
 Was it not pite þat a knyght so goode
 Shulde among bestes renne sauage *and* wode
 ¶ Thus ouerwhelmyd was all his worthines
 And to decline went his prosperite
 O cause and rote of all his wrecchidnes
 Was for þat he set all his felice 5506
 Of þeis women which erly late *and* sone 5508
 To trust so myche þe mutabilitie 5507
 Of þeir nature brayd vpon þe mone 5509
 ¶ Alas alas all nobles and prudence 5510
 Prowes of nature force *and* chiualrie
 fforsight of wysdom discrecion *and* science
 Vertuus studie *profityng* and clergy
 And þe clere shynyng of all philosophie
 Hath thurgh fals lustes ben hereafor ~~maneid~~ ^manacid^
 By sleight of women derkyd and defamyd

[21r, col. b]

¶ O Hercules my penne I fele quake
 Myn ynke fulfyllyd with bitter terys salte
 This pitevus tragedie to write for þi sake 5520
 Whome all poetis glorifie and exalte
 But fraude of women made þi renoun halte
 And frowarde muses þi triumphes all torende
 ffor to describe alas þi fatal ende
 ¶ The swete venome þe savery fals poyson
 The dredeful ioy · þe dolorus plesaunce
 The woful gladnes ~~ay stable in~~ ^with^ variaunce with furius reson
 ffeyth dispeyrid ~~wher luste hath gouernaunce~~ ay stable in variaunce
 Vertu exilyng wher luste hath gouernaunce
 Thurgh fals luxurie defacen all nobles
 As þis Tragedie can bere ful well witnes · 5530
 ¶ Wher froward venus hath dominacioun
 And blynde Cupide his subiectes doth avaunce
 And wyful luste thurgh indiscrecioun
 Is chosen Iuge to holde þe balaunce

Their choys vnlefull hath þurgh onhappy chaunce
 Derkyd of princis þe famus high prowes
 As þis Tragedy can ber ful wele witnes
 ¶O þu Hercules for all þin high renoun
 ffor all þi conquest and myghty suffisaunce
 Þu were thurgh women brought to confusion 5540
 And thurgh þeir fraude þi renomyd puissaunce
 Disclaundyrd was *and* brought vnto mischaunce
 I were ashamyd to write it or expresse
 Excepte þis Tragedie can bere me well witnes
 ¶Princis · Princessis of high discrecion
 This thyng inprintith in youre remembraunce
 Of oþers fallyng make yow proteccion
 Yeve to *preserue* youre purviaunce
 Afforn providid þat youre perseueraunce
 Be not *perturbid* by no fals Sorceresse 5550
 As þis Tragedie oþer berith witness
De casu Narsisi . Bilis . et Mirre
 Narsisus . Bilis . and Mirra all thre
 Before Bochas dide pitevuslie appere
 Their infortunes. þeir infelicite
 To hym compleyning with a dedlie chere
 And of þeir commyng to tell þe manere
 Narcisus fyrste with sorow and þe dole attente
 Gan fyrste of all declare his compleinte
 ¶He was þe sonn of Cephesus þe flode
 And his modre callid lirioppe 5560
 And by descent born of gentill bloode
 Of creatures fayrest euer to se
 And as I fynde at his natiuite
 Tyriseos by spirit of prophecie
 Touchyng his fate þus gan specifie
 ¶The goddys haue provided hym a space
 To lyve in erthe and so longe indure
 Tyl þat he knowe and se his own face
 And for his sake ful many a creature
 By ordinaunce of godde and of nature 5570
 When þei hym se shal fele ful grete peyne
 Yf þei in love his grace may not atteyne
 ¶But he shal be contrari and daungerus
 And of his porte ful of straungenes
 And in his herte full inlie surequedus
 By þe occasion of his natural fayrnes
 And *presumyng* of his semlines .
 No man so fresh or fayre of face
 Pat able were to stande in his grace
 ¶And for þe excellence of his grete beaute 5580
 He hym purposid in his tendre age

Neuer in his lyfe weddid to be
He thought hymself fayre of visage .

[21v, col. a]

ffor which he caste hymm thurgh his grete outerage

Agayn all lustes of loue to disdeigne
To hunt at bestes alon and take soleyne

¶ And in þis while þat he kepte hym so
In forestes and in wyldirnes 5590

A watyr goddes þat was callid Eccho
Lovid hym ful hote for his grete fairnes
And securlie did hir bisynes

To folowe his steppis right as eny line
To hir desyres to make hym to incline

¶ He herde hir well but he saugh hir not
Wherof astonyd he gan anon to inquire
As he þat was amervelid in his thought
Said euyñ ~~this~~ þus . is eny wyght nowe here
And she answerd þe same in his manere

Whateuer he saide as longith to Eccho
Withoute a bodie she saide þe same hym to 5600

¶ Cum nere *quod* he and began to calle
Cum nere *quod* she my ioy and my plesaunce
He lokyd aboute amonge þe rokkys all
And saw nothyng beside nor in distaunce
But she abraied declaryng hir grevaunce
And to hym saide myn own hert dere
Ne be not straunge but lete vs dwell in fere

¶ Nay nay *quod* he I wyl nothyng obey
To youre desyris for shorte conclusiun
ffor leuer I hadde pleynli for to die 5610

Then ye shuld haue of me possessioun
We be noþing of oon opinion
I heere yow well þof I no figure se
Goth forth youre way ye speke no more with me.

¶ And she ashamyd fled hir way anon
And she þat myght of hym no socoure haue
But despeired þis Eccho is forth gooun
And hidde hirsself in an ouhlie cave
Among þe rokkys as buryd in hir graue
And þof so be þat men hir voice may here 5620
Aftyr þat tyme she neuer did appere

¶ And þis Narcisus þurgh daunger *and* disdeigne
Vpon þis Ladie did cruel vengeaunce
But whan þe goddes his cruelte hath seynn
Toward hym þei fell in grete grevaunce
Of his vnmercy þey hadden displesaunce
And right as he merciles was founde

So with vnmercye caught his dedlie wounde
 ¶ffor all daunger displeasith to venus
 And all disdeigne is lothsom to cupide 5630
 ffor who to loue is contrarius
 The godde of loue wyll quite hym on som side
 His dredefull arowes so mortalli deuide
 To hurt and mayime alle þat be rekles
 And in his *seruice* founde merciles
 ¶And for Narcisus was not merciabile
 Toward Eccho for his grete beaute
 But in his porte was founde vntreteable
 Cupide thought he wolde avengid be
 As he þat herde hir prayer of pite 5640
 Causyng Narcisus to fele and haue his parte
 Of venus brond and of hir fyrie darte
 ¶And a day when he in wyldyrnes
 Hadde aftyr bestes renne on huntyng
 And for longe labour gan fall in werynes
 He was desyryng to haue refresshyng
 And wondir thirstr lowe aftyr trauelyng
 Myght not indure lengar þer to dwelle
 And ate þe laste he founde a cristall welle
 ¶[Ri]ght fressh spryngyng *and* wondir agreable 5650

[21v, col. b]

The watir lusty and delectable of sight
 And for thirste was to hym importable
 Vpon þe brynke he fel doun anon right
 And by refleccion in myd of þe watyr brygh[t]
 Hym thought he sahe a passyng fayer Im[age]
 To hym appere moste angelike of visage
 ¶He was enamourde with þe semlynes
 And desirus þer of to stonde in grace
 And yit it was not but a liknes
 And but a shadow reflectyng of his fa[ce] 5660
 The which of feruence ameroreli touch[e]
 This Narcisus with a pitevus complein[t]
 Stirt into þe welle *and* so hym-selfe he dreyn[t]
 ¶And þus his beaute alas was layd ful lowe
 His semelines put full for abak
 This when he gan fyrst hym self to kno[we]
 And se his vysage in which þer was no la[k]
 Presumptuous pride causid all to go ba[k]
 ffor who to mych doth of hym self presum[e]
 His own vsurpyng wyll sonest hym con[sume] 5670
 ¶And finalli as poetes telle
 This Narcisus withoute mir socoure
 Aftyr þat he was drownyd at þe well

The hevenli goddes did hym this *favour*
 Thei ~~tr~~-turnyd him in to a full fresh flour
 A water lilli, which doth remedie
 In hoothe accesse as bookes specifie
 ¶ Aftyr Narcisus was hit þe well drete
 And to Iohn Bochas declarid had hys wo
 Biblis apperid with teres al besprent 5680
 And toward hym a grete pace she gan go
 And hir broþer cannus cam also
 And off woo wombe as gemelles tweine
 But she beforn hir fate gan compleine
 ¶ She in hir loue was it nat vertues
 ffor agayn godde and kyndes þ ordinaunce
 She loued hir broþer þat callid was cannus
 And whan he saw hir froward grevaunce
 Vnto hire gaue non attendaunce
 Thof she of sleighte to accomplish hir intente 5690
 In secrete wyse an epistle to hym sent
 ¶ She fond it was an impossible thyng
 Withoute his grace hyrself for to saue
 And but he were to hyr assentyng
 She els pleyklus may no health haue 5695
 Thus in hir writyng to hym she did attame 5697
 And to be ~~couerte~~ coverte she ne wrot no name 5698
 Bote onlie deth . and aftyrwarde hir graue 5696
 ¶ But when þis epistle cam to his presence 5699
 Vertuuslie he gan þat at to disdeigne 5700
 And gaue þerto no maner of aduertence
 Nor toke noon heede of hir furius peyne
 But suffred hir eternallie to pleyne
 Tyll þat she was as Ouide can well tell
 With oft wepyng transformed to a well
 ¶ Next cam Mirra with face full pitevus
 Which þat whilom loued agayn nature
 Hir own fadre callid Cinorus
 ffor whos sake grete peine she did indure
 But she ne durste hir sorowe not discure 5710
 Tyl hir norice hir signes did espie
 Þe hertlie constreinte of hir maledie
 ¶ ffor hir norice of I haue of tolde
 Conceived hath by opin evidence
 As she þat couth both of new and olde
 In such matiers al hole þe experience
 Þat thurgh longe labour and sleihty diligence
 Deuerse weye and menys oute she sowte
 To hir fadres bed þat she Mirra brought

[22r, col. a]

[¶]With whome she hadde hyr liste and hir plesaunce 5720
 ffor she vnknowe lay with hym al nyght
 [S]he was deceyvid by dronklew ignorance
 And on þe morowe longe or eny light
 [S]he stale away and went oute of his sight
 [W]ith hir norice kepte hir longe clos
 [T]yl vnto þe tyme þat hir wombe arose
 [¶]Bu)t hir fadre þat was of Cipre kyng
 [W]hich as I tolde was callid Cinorus
 [W]hen þe trouth espied of this thyng
 [Th]at by his doughter he was deceyvid þus 5730
 [S]he wexed to hym lothsum and odius
 [ff]led from his face so sore she was afferd
 [A]nd he pursuyd aftyr with his swerd
 [¶]In] Arabie þe hote myghty londe
 [K]yng Cinorus hath his doughter founde
 [An]d cruelli he gan inhaunce his hand
 [W]ith his swerd to yeve hir a wounde
 [B]ut þe goddes of *mercy* moste habounde
 [H]aue fro þe deth made hir to go fre
 And þurgh þeir power transformyd hir to a tre 5740
 ¶Which aftyr hir berith yit þe name
 Callid Mirra as she was on hir lyfe
 Oute of which auctours say þe same
 Distillith a *gumme* a great *perseruatif*e
 And of nature a ful goode defensyfe
 To kepe bodies from putrefaccion
 And them fraunchise from al corrupcioun
 ¶By influence of þe sonne bemys
 Mirre is ingendred distillyng of his kynd
 With rounde dropes agayn *phebus* stremys 5750
 And down descendith þurgh þe harde rynde
 And thurgh þe riftes also as I fynde
 Þe saide Mirra hath a chyld forth brought
 In all þis world þat yf it be well sought
 ¶Was non so fayre formed by nature
 ffor of his beaute he was perles
 And as *poetes* recorden by scripture
 He callid was þe fayre Adonides
 And to his worschip and his great increce
 ffor he of *fayrenes* bare away þe flour 5760
 Venus hym ches to ben hir *paramour*
 ¶The which goddes gave to hym a charge
 That he shulde in his *tendre* age
 In *forestes* while he went at large
 Hunt at no best which þat were sauage
 But he contrarie to his disavauntage
 Þurgh wylfulnes I can sey yow no more

Was slayn vnwarlie of a tusky bore
 ¶ At þe which he felly did inchace
 But of foly in veyn was his labour 5770
 ffor he lay slayn ful pale of chere *and* face
 Whom venus turnyd into a ful fresh flour
 Which was as bloode of purpul þe colour
 A budde of golde with goodly levys glade
 Se in þe myddys whos beaute may not fade
 ¶ And whenn þat Mirra fro Bochas was *withdraw*
 And hadd declarid hir grete aduersite
 And of hir fate tolde þe mortal lawe
 Cam Orpheus ful outhlie onto se
 Son of Apollo and of calliope 5780
 And apperid *with* a ful dolful face
 Somtyme brought forth *and* born in Trace
 ¶ fful renomyd in armes *and* in science
 ffamus in Musik and in melodie
 And ful notable also in eloquence
 And for his swete sugred armonie

[22r, col. b]

All fully poetes specifie
 Woodes floodis of þeir course most stronge
 Stynt of þeire course to herkyn his swete songe
 ¶ An harpe he hadde of Mourius 5790
 With þe which Erudice he wann
 And to Bachus as write Ouidius
 Sacrifices solempne he began
 And vnto hell for his wyfe ranne
 Hir to recure with swete touchis *and* sherpe
 Which þat he made vpon his heuynlie harpe
 ¶ But when þat he þis labour on hym toke
 A lawe was made which þat bonde hym sore
 Þat yf þat he backwarde caste his loke
 He shulde hir lese and se his wyfe no more 5800
 But it is saide sithen goon ful yore
 Þer may no lawe lovers well constreine
 So importable is þeir mortall peyne
 ¶ If som husbondes had stond in þis case
 To haue lost ~~his~~ ^their^ wyfe for a loke sodeyn
 Þei wolde haue sofrid and not sayd alas
 ¶ Pa But patientlie indurid all þeir peyne
 And thankyd godde þat brokyn was þe cheynn
 Which hath so longe þem in prison bounde
 Þat by grace haue such a fredam founde 5810
 ¶ To be in prison it is ful grete charge
 And to be stokkyd undre kay and lokke
 It were well Mirryer a man to gon at large

Pen with stronge yrnys be naylyd to a stok
 But þer is a bonde which callid is wedlok
 ffretyng husbandes so sore þat it is wondre
 Which with no file may not be broke asondre
 ¶But Orpheus fadre of armonie
 Thurgh Erudice which was his wyfe so fayre
 ffor hir sake he muste die 5820
 Because þat he when he made his repeire
 Of hir trouth enbracid but ayre
 Pus he loste hir þer is no more to seyn
 And for þe constreint of his grevus peine
 ¶At his herte . hir partyng sat so sore
 Þe greue memorie þe tendre remembraunce
 Þat he neuer wyld wyue more
 So fayre he was escapid his penaunce
 ffor wedlok is a lyfe of moste plesaunce
 But who hath ones infernal peyn seyn 5830
 Wol neuer his thank come in þe snare agayn
 ¶This Orpheus gauē counsel right notable
 To husbandes þat haue endurid peyne
 To such as been prudent and tretable
 Oon hell is dredful *and* more *perilus* be tweyn
 And who is ones bounden in a cheyn
 And may escape onte of daunger blyve
 Yf he resorte godde lete hym neuer thryue .
 ¶Vpon þat sentence women were vengeable
 And to his wrytyng ful contrarius 5840
 Seyd his counsel was not contentable
 At þe feste þei halowyd to Bachus
 Þey fell ychon vpon þis Orpheus
 And for all his retorikes swete
 Þei slough alas þis laureate poete
 ¶And of his harpe yf ye liste to lere
 Þe grete godde Apollo made a translacion
 Amonge þe imagis of þe sterres clere
 Whereof men may haue þer inspeccion
 But fortune to his confusion 5850
 Denyed hym froward of hir nature
 When he was slayn fredam of sepul[ture]
 ¶Next Orpheus þer did apper also .

[22v, col. a]

Of Amazones worthi Quenes tweine
 Merpesia and hir sistre lampedo
 Which of conquest did þeire bysy peynn
 And grete worship in armes did atteine
 Namyng themself by wrytyng nygh *and* ferre
 Doughtres to Mars which is þe godde of werre

¶Merpesia rode oute in region 5860
 And conquerd many a ful grete cite
 ffor couetise off grete possessions
 To encrece hir lordeship yf it wolde be
 And hir sistre kepte sure by þeir cuntre
 ffrom all ennemies . þat þer was no dought
 While Merpesia rode with hir oste aboute
 ¶But while she was in conquest most famus
 And hir enemies proudelie did assaile
 ffortune anon wexed contrarius
 And causid she was slayn in bataile 5870
 Lo what conquest or victorie may availe
 When þat fortune doth at þem disdeigne
 Seth þeire example by theis Quenes tweine
 ¶This Tragedie remembreth thynges fyue
 Of Narcisus þe excellent beaute
 And of Biblis doth also descriue
 The grete luxurie and dishoneste
 Mirra defamed . turnyd to a tre
 To exemplifie þe lecherie and pride
 Ben from al vertu set ful ferre aside 5880
 ¶Hough Orpheus endurid in his liue
 Ioy entermedlid with aduersite
 In his youth when he did wyue
 He felt in wedlok ful grete felicite
 His wordlie blys meynt with duplicite
 As fortune . hir chaunges can diuide
 Which from all vertu be set ful ferre aside
 ¶Merpesia for hir liste to stryue
 With wylful werres to encrece hir cuntre
 But hir pompe was ouerturnyd blyue 5890
 When in bataile vnwarlie slayn was she
 ffor of all werre deth is is þe fine pardie
 So furius Mars can for his folkes provide
 Which from all vertu is þat ful ferre aside
 ¶Ye myghty princes lete wit and reson dryue
 Youre high nobles to considre and se
 Hough fortune estates can depriue
 And plunge þem down from þeir prosperite
 Pride and luxurie I counsel þat ye fle
 Fals Auarice ne let not be youre gyde 5900
 Which from all vertu is set full ferre aside .
De casu priami Regis Troie ac filiorum eius
 Aftyr þis compleinte and lamentacion
 Which þat Bochas did in his boke compile
 Medlid amonge with transformacions
 Set in Ouide by ful souereigne stile
 When he on þem had musid a longe while

Seen þe *maner* both of sorow and Ioy
 He can remembre on priamus of troye
 ¶ffyrst of his byrth and of his kynred
 Hough among kynges he was moste famus 5910
 And as poetis recorde of hym indede
 He descendid of worthi Dardanus
 Which as his line declareth vnto vs
 ffrom Iubiter was lineallie com doun
 Vnto his fadre callid Kyng lamedon
 ¶[Of] olde troy þat Lamedon was kyng
 [De]strued by Grekes he and his contre
 [Aft]yr whome this priamus ~~reg~~ ~~reg~~ reigned
 [Mad]e þer agayn a myghty stronge cite .

[22v, col. b]

Wher he full longe in full grete royalte 5920
 With wyfe and chylde moste worthy of renoun
 With sceptre and crown helde possession
 ¶Gouerned his cite in pece and rightuesnes
 And fortune was to hym fauorable
 ffor of all Asie þe tresour and riches
 He did assemble þis kyng most honorabl[e]
 And in armes he was so commendable
 That thurgh þe worlde as ferre as men [may gon]
 Of high nobles þe renoun of hym shone

¶This Priamus had children many oon 5930
 Worthy princis and of full grete myght
 But Hector was among them euerychon
 Callid of prowes þe lanterne and þe ligh[t]
 Perfor was neuer born a better knyght
 Troilus in knyghthode so manlie eke w[as founde]
 That he was namyd Hector þe secunde

¶But yf I shuld rehearse þe manhede
 Of kyng Priamus and of his sonnes all
 And hough his cite besegid was indede
 And all þe storie to remembraunce call 5940
 Betwen hym and Grekys hough it is befall[1]
 The circumstaunces rehersyng vp and dounn
 To set in ordre þe fyrste occasioun

¶Of þe sege why it was fyrste layde
 By Hercules and also Iasonn
 The *maner* hoole in troy booke is saide
 Rudlie enditid of my translacioun
 ffolowyng vpon the destruccioun
 Callid þo secunde which by acountes clere
 ffully indurid the space of .x. yere . 5950

¶ffor as me semith þe labour were in veynn

Truly also I I not to what intente
 That I nowe shuld writ it newe ageynn
 ffor I had onys in *commaundment*
 By him *pat* was most meke and excellent
 Of kynges all for to vndirtake
 It to translate and write it for his sake
 ¶ And yf ye liste to wit whome I mene
 Herry *pe* .vth. moste myghty of puissaunce
 Gafe me *pe* charge of intent ful clene 5960
 Thynges of olde tyme to put in remembraunce
 The same Herry for knyghtlie suffisaunce
 Worthy for manhode rekenyd kynges all
 With *pe* .ix. worthy for to haue a stall
 ¶ Of holy chirche he was chefe defensour
 In all such causes cristes chosen knyght
 To destroy lollardes he set all his labour
 Lovid all vertues and to sustein right
 Thurgh his nobles his manhode *and* his myght
 Was diligent and did his bysy peynn 5970
 To have set pece between realmes tweine
 ¶ I mene in soth England *and* ffrance
 His purpos was to haue hadde a pece final
 Sought oute menys with many a circumstaunce
 As well by treti as by actes Merciall
 Peron inpartid lyfe · goodes · and all
 But o alas agayn deth is no bone
 Pis lande may say he died al to sone
 ¶ For among kynges he was oon *pe* beste
~~The lande may say~~ So all his dedes conveid wer *with grace* 5980
 I pray to godde so yeve his soule goode reste
 With holy sanctes in heuyn a dwellyng place

[23r, col. a]

ffor here with vs to litle was *pe* space
 That he aboode of whomm *pe* remembraunce
 Shal neuer die in England nor in ffrance
 ¶ This worthi kyng gaue to a charge
 [In] english tong to make *translacioun*
 [O]ute of latin with a volume large
 Hough long *pe* Grekes lay afforn *pe* toun
 And hough *pat* Paris first at Citheroun 5990
 In venus temple slyghlie did his peyne
 Ther to reioyse *pe* fayre Quene Elene
 ¶ In which boke *pe* processe ye may se
 [To] hym hough she was weddyd in *pe* toun
 And of *pe* sege layde vnto *pe* cite
 By Menelaus and by kyng lamedoun
 And many an Erle full worthi of renoun

On euery parte which þat in bataile
 [Fro] day to day eche oþer did assaile
 ¶[Wh]at shuld I tell or wher to shuld I write 6000
 Þe deth of hector or of Achilles
 [O]r wher to I of newe nowe indite
 Hough worthy Troilus was slayn emong þe pres
 Þe ende of Paris or of Palamides
 Or þe slaughter of manly deiphebus
 Or hough his broþer Elenus
 ¶Tolde afforn hough it was grete folie
 Þat Paris shuld wedde Quene Elene
 And hough Cassandra in hir prophecie
 On þis weddyng sore gan compleine 6010
 And for þe constreint of hir hertlie peyne
 Hough she wexid mad *and* ran about þe tounn
 Tyll she was caught *and* shit vp in prison
 ¶All þeis matiere ye may beholde indede
 Set by and by within þe troye booke
 And hough Cresaide leuyd Diomede
 When worthi Troilus she wylfully forsoke
 Of hir nature a querell þus she toke
 To asoy both yf nede eke were to feyne
 To take þe third *and* leue þem both tweyne 6020
 ¶I pass ouer *and* tell of hir no more
 Nor by what menes Grekes wan þe townn
 Hough Eneus nor hough þat Antenor
 Agayn kyng Priamus conspired fals tresoun
 Nor hough Vlixes gate Palladian
 Þe deth of Priamus no Hecuba þe Quene
 Nor hough þat pirrus slough yong polixene
 ¶Nor here to write it is not mynn intende
 Repeire of Grekes home to þeire contre
 Aftyr þe cite and Ilion was brente 6030
 Nor of þeir myschevys þei had in þe se
 Nor hough Vlixes fonde Penolope
 A tru wyfe þof he were longe hir fro
 Þurghoute all Grece I can rede of no mo
 ¶Of þeis matiers þus I make an ende
 What fell of Grekes aftyr þat viage
 To troy booke þe folke ichon I sende
 Which haue desire to se þe sureplusage
 Hough Grekes fyrst made þeire passage
 Toward Troy besegyng þe cite 6040
 Redith þe story ye gete no more of me
 ¶Ye proud folkes þat set *your* affiaunce
 In strength beaute or in high nobles
 Yf ye considre fortunes variaunce
 And couth a mirroure affor *your* ien dresse

Of kyng Priamus and of his grete riches

[23r, col. b]

To se hough he and his children all
From þer nobles so sodenlie be fall

¶ Hector of knyghthode callid sours *and* well
Sadde and demure and famus of prudence 6050
Paris also in beaute did excell

And Elenus in *parfite* providence
Troilus in armes hadde grete *experience*
Eke Deiphebus preuid manlie on his fone
Yit in þe werre þei were slayn *euerychoun*

¶ Had not þis kyng eke as I can deuysel
Noble Heccuba which þat was þe Quene
A doughter callid Cassandra þe wyse
Hir yonge sistre fayre Pollixene
Alas alas what may all such *pride* mene 6060
ffor all be it þeir renown spronge full ferre
Yit were þeis women devourid in þe werre

¶ Was he not myghty and stronge in all þinges
And had also of his alliaunce

Right worthi princis and many riche kynges
And nygh all Asie vnder his obeisaunce
Holden in tyme moste famus of puissaunce
Moste renound of riches and tresoures
Tyl þat fortune with his sherp shouris

¶ When þat he set highest on hir whele 6070
Theis blynde goddes gan hym to assaile
Hir froward malice he felte it right well
His golde his tresure firste þei gan to sayle
And derke gan his riall apparaile
By which example all proud men may se
Þe vnsure truste þe mutabilite

¶ Whiche in þis worlde is seen and found al day
And of estates in þer magnificence
Ebbe and aftyr flowe makith no delay
But halte hir cours þer is no resistance 6080
The tyde abide not for no violence

Iche man þat standith of chaunges here in dought
Mote take his turne as it cometh aboute

¶ Lete Priamus be to you a clere mirour
Ye proude folkes þat set *your* affiaunce
In suche vein glorie which fadith as a flour
And hath of beaute here non attendaunce
The worlde to yow caste a ful bitter chaunce
ffor when ye women sit highest at þe full
þe wyl she rathest youre bright feddyrs pull 6090

¶ Ye haue warning for to take hede

By example of othir clere and right visible
 Hough wordlie blys is medlid ay with ~~h~~ys drede
 And yf youre wittes *and* resons be sensible
 Thyng seyn at iewe is not incredible
 And all þis doctrine is to you in veine
 If in *your* tyme ye haue no chaunges seyn
 ¶Wherfor Bochas vnto *your* availe
 fful prudentlie put yow at þis issue
 ffyrste of all he yevith yow in counseile 6100
 To leue youre vices . *and* take yow to vertu
 And set youre trust all holy in Ihesu
 ffor he may beste in myschefe helpe at nede
 Of wordlie chaunges þat ye dare not drede
 ¶Peis grete lordshipes þeis high dignites
 Chefe þing annexid vnto þe regallie
 When þei sit highest in þer sees
 And rounde abought stande þe chival[rie]
 Drede entrith in perill and envie
 And vnwar change which no man may [knowe] 6110
 The houre whenn fortune wyl make þemm [lowe]

[23v, col.a]

¶They may well holde a statelie grete housholde
 With a veine truste þeire power shuld alway laste
 Cladde in þeir mantele of purpul perle *and* golde
 And on þe whele of fortune clyme vp faste
 Lyke as she myght neuer down þem caste
 But euer þe higher þer clymyng is at all
 Alas þe ferther is þeir vnhappy fall
 ¶The fall of Priamus and of Agamenon
 Ought of right more to be compleynynd 6120
 When fortune had þem pullid downe
 And of malice haue at þem disdeigned
 Then yf þei neuer to worship had atteynynd
 But þeir falling was þe more grevus
 Because þei were aforntyme so glorius
 ¶O þu poverty meke humble and debonaire
 Which þat kepiste þe lawes of nature
 ffor soden chaunges þu wylt not despeire
 So art þu fraunchised fro fortunes lure
 All hir assautes þu lowlie doste indure 6130
 That she may haue no Iurisdiction
 To interrupte þi possessioun
 ¶Thou settyst litle by all wordlie riches
 Nor by his tresoures which be transitorie
 Þu scornyst þem þat þeire shelturmes dresse
 Toward bataile for conquest *and* victorie
 Þu despisest all hynyng of veine glorie

Laude of triumphes which conqueours haue sought
 With all þeir pillages þu settyst þem at nought
 ¶ Pu dispreisist all in superfluite 6140
 Non infortune may chaunge þi corage
 And þe shyppes þat saile by þe see
 With merchaundise amonge þe floode rage
 Theire aventures and þeire perilus passage
 Lyfe bodye . goode all put in aventure
 Onlie for lucre grete riches to recure
 ¶ Oh all such thyng þu tak of litle hede
 Or of þat peple þat maneres do purchase
 Nor of pledoures which for lucre and mede
 Maynten querels and questes don inbrace 6150
 Pu þem beholdist with a ful stille face
 Peir subtile workynges sought oute for þe nones
 And sodenly departe from all at ones
 ¶ Thow causte in litile also haue suffisaunce
 And arte contente with ful small dispence
 ffor þi riches and þin habundaunce
 Withoute grugyng is humble plesaunce
 If eny man do to þe offence
 Pu foryetist and lightlie canst foryeve
 To þe suffiseth so þat þu maiste leue 6160
 ¶ The sterred heuyn is þi conuertoure covertoure
 In somer ceson vndre þe levys grene
 Pus makest þu þi dwellyng and doste þiselfe assure
 Agayn grete hetes of þe sonne shene
 Content with frutes and watyr cristall clene
 To staunce þin hungre and þi thristes sore
 Afteyr þe cesons and carist for no more
 ¶ Pouert liggith eke þe colde wyntyre nyght
 Wrappid in strawe withoute compleynyng
 Withoute drede he goth glad and light 6170
 And tofor theys he meryly doth syng
 He goth also without patesyng
 ffro londe to londe amonge pore and riche
 ffro frende and fo to hym both eliche
 ¶ Morall Senec recordith by wrytyng
 Richest of thynges is gladde pouerte
 [Euer] of o chere voide of all grucchyng

[23v, col. b]

Both in ioy in an aduersite
 Thurghoute all þe worlde laste his liberte
 And hir fraunchise stand in so grete ese 6180
 Pat of hir fredom no man wyl hyr disese
 ¶ She is norice of studie and of doctrine
 In virtues labour doth hir diligence

And of Sciences which þat be diuine
 She is called modre by clerk in sentence
 Of philosophres moste hadde in reuerence
 ffortune and she so were a sondrie varie
 Þat iche to oþer of custom is contrarie
 ¶Hir hertlie ioy is for to lyfe in pees
 Hatith tumulte . noyse . and ~~per~~urbance ~~dis~~ \disturbance/ 6190
 ffor hir discipline called Zenocrates
 In wylful pouerte set oonlie his plesaunce
 Sobre his porte thurgh whos attemperaun[ce]
 Ful many a man by example of his techy[ng]
 Wer brought to vertu . fro vicius lyvyng
 ¶His diete was so miserable
 And devoide of superfluite
 Pat his corage he kepte ferme and stable
 ffro flessshlie luste he was so attempere
 Reson maistrid his sensualite 6200
 Desires vnlefull for to set aside
 Duryng his lyfe pouert was his gyde
 ¶His abydyng and conuersacion
 Was in places þat were solitarie
 Among trees and welles he beldid hym a dougeon
 With multitude he hatid for to tarie
 ffor pouerte was his secretarie
 Sobre of his chere of his intent
 And in Athens to scole fyrste he went
 ¶He was so myghty of auctorite 6210
 Ryght wysdome and Iustice to obserue
 Pat righter full Iuges his sentence tok at gre
 He couth his mouth and tonge ful wel preserue
 Þat in the temple onys of Minerve
 Withoutyn othe vnto his sentence
 To þat he saide þe iuges gave credence
 ¶He askyd was among grete audience
 Whi he was solenn of his daliaunce
 His answeere was þat neuer for silence
 Thurgh litle spekyng he felte no grevaunce 6220
 Speche vnavisid causith repentaunce
 And label ~~ten~~g tonges for lak of restrdyng
 To many a man hath ben ful grete hinderyng
 ¶Diogenes tru eyre *and* next allied
 To wylful pouert by iuste inheritaunce
 ffor all riches he pleynlie hath diffied
 It was to hym a grete incombraunce
 With worldie tresoure to haue aliaunce
 His dwellyng made with a litle ~~town~~ tunne
 Which turnyd about *with* concours of þe sunne 6230
 ¶Hymself refresshyng with þe sonne bemys

For he was content godde wote with ful lit
 Kyng Alexander þat conquerid many realmes
 Cam ridyng down and gan hymself delite
 This philosophir to se and to visit
 Hymselfe sequestrid sole frome al þe prees
 And cam allon to se Diogenes
 ¶Profyrd vnto hym grete riches and tresour
 Badde hym aske what þyng þat he wolde
 Þat myghte hym plese or do to hym socour 6240
 But of all þat he nothyng no tolde
 But prayed hym ful lowlie þat he shuld [end of quire 2]

[24r, col. a]

Not drawe from hym þat thyng agayn alright
 Which for to yeve lay not in his might
 ¶What þing is þat quod Alexander agayn
 I haue by conquest all erthlie tresour wonne
 The philosophir saide þat he spake in veyne
 Þou haste quod he no lordship on þe sonne
 Þi shadow his bemys hide fro my tunne
 And say þu haste no power of his light 6250
 I pray þe frendlie forbare me nor his sight
 ¶This Alexander was myghty of puissaunce
 And all þe worlde had in his demene
 Yit was his resoun vnder þe obeisaunce
 Of freshlie lusts fetrid in a cheyne
 ffor in his persone wyll was souereigne
 His resoun bridild with sensualite
 Troublyng þe fredam of right and equite
 ¶ffor wher þat wyll hath dominacioun
 In a prince with þat shuld sustem right 6260
 And parcial fauour oppresith his resoun
 And trouthis title is borne doune with myght
 And equal dome hath lost his clere light
 Thof al for a ceson þei sit in high chayers
 Þeire fame shall flyde within a fewe yeris
 ¶In this matier to make a comparisoun
 Betwene Alexander and Diogenes
 Þat on indurid but a shorte cesoun
 ffor þat he louyd werre more þen pees
 And for þat oþer was not rekles 6270
 But helde hym content with gyftes of nature
 Vnto a grete age his power did endure
 ¶Alexander was slayn with poison
 In his triumphes when he did excell
 But in a town þat lay ful lowe down
 Diogenes drank watir of þe well
 And of þer ende þe difference for to telle

Alexander with couetise was blent
 The philosophir with lital was contente
 ¶ Blessid be pouerte þat may endure longe 6280
 Maugre þe fraude and daunces of fortune
 Where as kynges and emperoures stronge
 In þeir estate no while may continue
 And of all √ vertues rekned in comon
 Betwen indigence and grete haboundaunce
 Is a good mene content with suffisaunce
 ¶ ffor with grete plente men be not assurid
 Aftyr lyst of þem allway to lyue in ese
 And þof þat men grete tresoure haue recurid
 With þer riches þei fele may disece 6290
 Lordes haue not all thyng þat may þem plese
 But erthlie ioy philosophire expres
 Is grettest tresoure twen pouerte and riches
 ¶ ffor þis chapitle she with a figure
 A maner liknes and demonstracion
 Hough Diogenes lengar did indure
 Pen myghty Priamus or kyng Lamedon
 To exemplifie in conclusion
 Ther is more truste in vertuus simplesse
 Pen in presumyng of vicius fals richesse 6300
 ¶ ffor þe aduoutrie of paris and Elen
 Brought al Troye to destruccion
 Pride and luxurie were also menes tweine
 Why Grekes layde a sege to þe town
 And small cause of þeir confusioun
 To eythir partie losse of many a man
 The grounde conceyvid whi fyrste þe werre began
 ¶ This tragedie pitevus and lamentable
 And dolorus to writen or expresse

[24r, col. b]

That worthi Priamus of kynges most notable 6310
 Was fallen in pouert from his grete richesse
 ffrom knyghtlie honour into wrecchidnes
 ffrom sceptre and crownn and from all ~~he~~ his/ regallie
 To myschefe brought thurgh false avoutrie
 ¶ Was not fortune froward and deceyvable
 ffor to suffre by his doublenes
 And by hir cours which euer is variable
 Pat worthy Ector floure of hir prowes
 Shuld vnwarlie moste famus of nobles
 Be slayn alas chefe stok of chyualrie 6320
 ffrom a querel of fals aduoutrie
 ¶ Agemenon acountid incomperable
 Among Grekes for trouth and rightuesnes

To governe most gloriuſ and able
Within his palace þe ſtorie berith witneſ
His wyfe Climeſtra thurgh hir curſidneſ
Aſſentid waſ to mordre hym of envie
ffor þe occaſion of falſ avoutrie

¶ Ye noble princis conceyveth hough chaungeable

Is worldlie honour thurgh vnſtedfaſtneſ
Sith of kyng Priamus þe glorie waſ vnſtable
ffyre in youre þiſ matier doth expreſſe
And youre corages knyghtlie doth vp dreſſe
Agayn al titleſ holdith champardie
Which apperteine to falſ auoutrie.

6330

De caſu Sampſonis ducis plebiſ Iſrael þer et de condicionibuſ mulierum

Who waſ more worthi or ſtrongar þan Sampſon

Nor more delyuer þe bible berith witneſ
Withoutyn weypon he ſlough a fers lion
And for hiſ enemies to hym did expreſſe

Hiſ vncouth probleme anon he gan hym dreſſe

6340

Again þe philiſteſ and ſlough of þem thirty

To pay hiſ promiſ ſpoylid þem by and by

¶ Hiſ probleme waſ þe texte þuſ reheryng

6343

þer com oute mete of athyng etyng

6345

And ſtro fro þe ſtronger þer went oute ſwetneſ

6346

Aftyr þe lettre in verrey ſothfaſtneſ.

6344

But hiſ wife or frowarde doubleneſ

6347

Which euer wrought to hiſ diſavaile

Of worthi Sampſoun tolde þe counſaile

¶ What iſ more ſtrongar þan a lion

6350

Or more ſwete þen hony in taſtyng

But women have þiſ condicion

Of ſecrete þingeeſ . When þei have knowledgyng

þei boile inward . þeir hertes ay fretyng

ffor outhir þei muſte die or diſcure

So britill iſ of cuſtom þeire nature

¶ Thiſ waſ þe caſ þe lion þat waſ dede

Agayn þe ſunne gapyng vpright

A ſwarne of beeſ entrid into hiſ hede

Of whom þer cam hony anon right

6360

And when Sampſon þeron had a ſight

He fantaſied in hiſ opinioun

fful ſecretlie þiſ propoſicioun

¶ Aſ ye hane herde and gan it forth purpoſe

þat philiſteſ to hym it ſhuld expoune

Vndre apayn þe trouthe to hym vncloſe

But with hiſ wife þei priuelie can rown

And ſhe on Sampſoun gan complenie et frown

And feynynglie ſo longe vpon hym wepe

þat he ne couth hiſ counſel from hir kepe

6370

¶ Which when she knewe she made no t[aryyeng]
But playn all þe hoole she gan it to d[eclare]

[24v, col. a]

Such double truste is in their wepyng
To kepe þeire tonges women can not spare
Such wepyng wyves evyll might þei fare
And all husbondes I pray godde yeue þem sorowe
þat to þem tell þeire counsell euyn or morowe

¶ She tolde þem hole she tolde it them not halfe
And Sampson þen gan vpon þem smyle
If ye not hadde þe herys in my calfe 6380

Ye shuld not haue founde it a grete while
Who may be sure wher women liste begyle
Thof Bochas Sampson of strength so commend
Yit durste he not again his wife offende

¶ This myghti Sampson did also his peyne
Thre hundred foxes ones þat he founde
He toke þer taylez. and knyht þem tweyn and tweyn
And in myddes of euerych he set afyre brond
And as þei ranne in philistes lande
So furuslie vp and doun þe wente 6390

þat þei þeir frutes and þeire vines brente
¶ Eke by treson when was onys bounde
With new cordes as he lay and slepe
þer com thre thousand which þat Sampson founde
To haue mordred hym or þat he toke kepe
He brake his bondes and anon he lepe
Of an asse caught a chaulebone
And a thousand of þem he slewe anon

¶ He gan to feinte and anon he had a soden luste
ffor to drynk . fadide face and chere . 6400

And godde sent hym to staunch with his thirst
ffrom þe assys toth . water cristall clere
Which spronge oute large . as doth a ryvere .
Refresshid his spirites which befor gan dull
Tyl þat he hadde of water dronke his full

¶ After þat he went to Gaza þe cite
Among all his enemies þat were of gret might
To his plesaunce wher þat he did see
A full fayre woman lay with hir all nyght
And on þe morowe longe or it was light 6410
Maugre þe wacchys . vpon his sholdre square
þe yates stronge . vp to an hille he bare .

¶ And in a vale which called is Soreth
ffull hote he lovid Dalida the fayre
In whom his hert was ful fayre set
She couth hir peyn so meke and debonaire

Make hym such chere when þat hym list repeire
 But I dare call hir Dalida þe double
 Chefe rote and cause of all his mortall trouble
 ¶ He neuer drank wyne white nor rede 6420
 Of Nazares such is þe gouernaunce
 Rasoure nor shere touchid neuer his hede
 ffor in longe growyng standith þeir plesaunce
 And þus Sampson most myghty of substaunce
 Hadde all his force by influence of heuyn
 By herys wexyng þat noumbre sebyn
 ¶ It was ful secrete in euery mannys sight
 Among peple tolde for an vncouth thyng
 Wherof Sampson hadde so gret a myght
 Outeward shewyng by force of his werkynge 6430
 But Dalida with hir fals flateryng
 Wolde neuer stynte inquiring euer amonge
 Tyl þat she knewe wherby he was so stronge
 ¶ She lyke a serpent daryng vndre floures
 Or lyke a worme þat wrotith vnder a tre
 Or lyke and Eddir of many folde coloures
 Ryght fressh apperyng *and* fayre vpon to se
 ffor froward was hir mutabilite
 With lowli(h)ede and a fayre pretence
 Of tru menyng vnder fals apparence 6440

[24v, col. b]

¶ He mente truth *and* she was variable
 He was faithfull *and* she was vntrue
 He was stedfaste s and she was vnstable
 He truste on hir *and* she loued thynges newe
 She werid coloures of many diuerse hewe
 Instede of blewe which st(e)dfast is *and* clene
 She loued chaunges of many diuerse grene
 ¶ But to þe purpose for to condescende
 When she of Sampson knewe all þe pryuyte
 Hir falshed shortlie for to comprehende 6450
 She made hym slepe ful softlie on hir kne
 And a sharpe rasoure ~~and~~ after þat toke she
 Shofe of his here large and of grete length
 Whereby alas he loste all his strengthe
 ¶ Damage in erthe is noon so grevus
 As an enemy which þat is secrete
 Nor pestilence noon so perilus
 As falsnes wheras he is priue
 And specialli in feminite
 ffor yf wyves be founde variable 6460
 Wher shall husbandes fynde oþer stable
 ¶ This Sampson was by Dalida deceyvid

She couth so well flatyr forge and feyne
 Which philistes when þei had conceyvid
 Vnwarlie bounde hym in myghty cheyne
 Cast hym in prison put oute his ien tweyn
 And aftyr of despite writen as I fynde
 At þe quernys made hym for to grynde
 ¶ They made a fest statelie and solempne
 When þei had all his treson wrought 6470
 And to rebuke hym shorne hym and contempne
 Blynde Sampson was afforn þem brought
 Which þing ful sore grevid hym in his þought
 Caste hym he wolde in his pryue mynde
 To avenge his blyndnes som maner wey fynde
 ¶ And when he had þus bethought hym longe
 He made a chylde hym pryuyly lede
 To tweyn postes . large square and stronge
 Enbrasid þem or eny man toke hede
 And gan to shake þem withoute fere or drede 6480
 So sturdy^{ly} among his fomen all
 Þat þe temple is [^]vpon[^] among them fall
 ¶ þus he was avengid on his foon
 Which þat falslie did agayn hym stryve
 Slough in his dyyng godde wote ful many oon
 Man þen he did euer afforn in his lyue
 And he was also þe date to descryue
 In Ierusalem þe bible is myn auctour
 XX^{ti}. yere þer luge and þer gounere
 ¶ This Tragedie yevith an euydence 6490
 To whom shall þeir counsell oute discure
 ffor rakkyll tonges for lak of prouidence
 Haue do grete harme to many a creature
 When harme is doon ful hard it is to recure
 Beware by Sampson *your* counsel wel to kepe
 Þof Dalida compleyn crye or wepe
 ¶ Whilom Sampson manhod and prudence
 Had Ierusalem in gouernaunce and cure
 Dauntid lions þurgh his magnificence
 Made on a thousand a discomfiture 6500
 But his most *perilus* aventure
 Was when he lay with Dalida to slepe
 Which falslie couth compleyn crie and wepe
 ¶ Ye noble princes . conceyveth þe sentence
 Of þis storie remembrid by scripture
 Hough þat Sampson of wylfull negligence
 Was shorne and shaven . defacid his figure
 Kepe *your* conceites vndre coverture

[25r, col. a]

Suffre no nyghtworme with in *your* counsel crepe
 Pof þat Dalida . compleine crie or wepe 6510
 ¶Myn auctour Bochas reioysid in his lyve
 I dare not say where it ~~w~~h was commendable
 Of þeis women þe malice to descriue
 Generalli and write it is no fable
 Of þeire nature hough þei be variable
 And hough þeir malice beste by euidence
 Is known to þem þat haue experience
 [¶]Thei can inforce þem all day men may se
 By singler fredam and dominacion
 Ouer men to haue þe souereignete 6520
 And kepe þem lowe vndre subieccion
 fful sore labour in þeir opinion
 By sotell crafte . þat þing to recure
 Which is to þem denyed of nature
 ¶Bochas affermeth and holde it for notable
 If þei wante freshnes of coloure
 And haue þeir face wanne swarte . *and* pale
 Anon þei do þeir diligent labour
 In such a nede to helpe and to socour
 Peir ryvelid skynne abrede to draw *and* constreine 6530
 ffroward frontid to make þem smoth *and* pleyne
 ¶If no rednes in þeir chekys be
 Nor no lillies delectable and white
 Then þei take to increce þeir beaute
 Such enoymentes as may moste delite
 Wher kynde faileth þe surplusage to aquite
 Pei can by crafte so for þem dispose
 Shew rednes þof all þer be no rose
 ¶And for to shew þeir face clere and bright
 With hote spices and oynementes swete 6540
 Pei can be crafte countirfete a right
 Tak in such case many an holsom rote
 Wher kynde fayleth connyng can do bote 6543
 Pei can ful well þe inbosyng down repress 6545
 If þeir brestes vp to high þem dresse 6544
 ¶And yf þei be to softe or els to tendre 6546
 Pei haue connyng to make þem hard *and* rounde
 Peir corcivenes þei can eke make sklendre
 With punyant salues þat been in phisik founde
 Peir subtil wittes in sleightes so haboundant 6550
 Thyng þat is ~~eorvid~~ curvid or wrong in mennes sight
 To make it seme þat it went upright
 ¶They haue strictories to make þeir skyn shyne
 Wrought subtille of gummes and of glayre
 Crafty lyes . to die þeir here citrine
 Distilled watyrs to make þem seme fayre

ffumigacions to rectifie þe ayre
 Stomachers and fresh confections
 To repress fals exalacions
 ¶Of all þeis thynges Bochas hath most despite 6560
 When þeis wycchis ferre ronne in age
 Within þemself haue vaine glorie and delite
 ffor to force and poppe þeire visage
 Lyke as peynters on an olde ymage
 Ley þeir colours riche and fresh of hewe
 Wormeten stokkys to make þem seme newe
 ¶Peir stallid skynne by crafte obroode is streynyd
 Lyke an ~~ory~~ oryngge fro þe Galey brought
 Rich relikes aboute þeir nek cheynyd
 Goolde vpon golde with perls *and* stonys wrought 6570
 And þat þeir colour outewarde appere nought

[25r, col. b]

Wyth wynde or sunne which shuld þem steyne or fade
 ffor vnkynd heetes þei vsen citrinade
 ¶What shulde I write all þeir vncouth desyres
 Som tyme froward som tyme debonaire
 Imagenyng sondrie fressh atyres
 Contrefet of newe many thousand payre
 Diuerse diuises to make þem seme fayre
 In þeire apporte by contrefet liknes
 ffor to resemble to venus þe goddes 6580
 ¶Of on devise þei holde þem not appayd
 Pei muste ich day haue a straunge wede
 If eny be better þan oþer arayed
 Of frowarde grucchyng þei fele þeire herte blede
 ffor euerych thynkith verrelie indede
 A morowe piryngge with a mirroure bright
 ffor to be fayrest in þeir own sight
 ¶Thei can þeire ieen and þeire lokkys dresse
 To drawe folkes by sleightes to þeire lure
 And som while by þeir frowardnesse 6590
 And feynynd daunger . þei can of men recure
 What euer þei liste . such is þeire aventure
 Agayns whos sleightes force nor prudence
 May not availe for to make resistance
 ¶With constreinte wepyng and forgid flaterie
 Subtil spech . forcid with plesaunce
 And many fals dissimulid ~~me~~ maladie
 Thought in þeir hertes þei fele no grevaunce
 And with þeire couerte sobre daliaunce
 Thought ^Thof all^ vndreneith þe double serpent dare 6600
 fful many in a man þei haue brought in þeir snare
 ¶O swetnes full of mortalite

Serpentine . with a plesaunt visage
 Vnstable ioy full of aduersite
 O moste chaungeable of hert and of corage
 In þi desyres hauyng þis avauntage
 Whateuer þu liste to dawten and oppresse
 Such is þi fraunchise Bochas berith wisesse
 ¶ Of nature þei can in many wyse
 Of myghty geantes þeire power wolde aslake 6610
 What wit of man cane compas or devise
 Þeire f sleighty wyls dare it vndretake
 And yf þem liste þerof an ende make
 ffro þis conceit whoso þat discorde
 A thousand stories . þe reuers can recorde
 ¶ Remembred fyrste hough hercules ~~is~~ ^most^ stronge
 Was brought by women to his destruccion
 Þe Quene Climestra did also grete wronge
 To mordre hir lorde kyng Agamenon
 Dalida by trayterie also Sampson 6620
 Amphiorax sank depe doune to hell
 Because his wife his counsel did oute tell
 ¶ It nedith not to make mencion
 Thof phillis died þurgh impacience
 ffor longe abydyng of hir . demephoun
 Nor hough þat Nisus kyng of magarence
 Was by his doughtres cursid violence
 Onwarlie mordred in Ouide it is tolde
 When from his heede she stale þe here of gol[d]
 ¶ Bochas rehersith wyues many oon 6630
 Which in þeire werkyng were ful contrariu[s]
 But among all he writh þer was oon
 Quene of Assirie and wyfe to kyng Ni[nus]
 And by descent doughter to Neptunus
 Semiramis callid in dayes
 Which of all men wolde take assayes
 ¶ She nethir sparid straunger ne kynr[ede]
 Hir own son was not set asyde
 But with hym hadde knowlegyng

[25v, col. a]

Of which þe sclander wente abroode full wyde 6640
 ffor with on man she couth not abide
 Such a fals luste was vpon hir fall
 In hir corage to haue ado with all
 ¶ And trulie it doth my wit appall
 Of this matier to make rehersall
 It is not reason to awiten all
 Thof on or two whilom did fall fayle
 It sittith not nor it may not avayle

Them to rebuk þat *perfite* been and goode
 fferre out of ioynte þof some oþer stode 6650
 ¶The riche rubie noþer þe saphir ynde
 Be not appeyrid of þeir fresh beaute
 Thof among stonys countrefetes fynde
 And sembleable thof som women be
 Not wele governd aftyr þeir degre
 It not defacith . nor doth no violence
 To þem þat neuer did in þeir lyve offence
 ¶The white lillie nor þe holsom rose
 Nor violetttes spredde on bankes thyk 6660
 Their swetnes which þat outward vnclose
 Is not appeyrid with no wedys wyk
 And þof þat brerys and many a crokyd styk
 Growe in gardens amonge þe flourys fayre
 Ther may þe vertu of herbes non appeyre
 ¶And I dare say þat women vertuus
 Ben in þeire *vertu* of price more commendable
 Thof þer be som reknyd vicius
 And of þeir lyvyng found also vnstable
 Goode women ought not to be partable 6670
 Of þeir trespas more of þeir wykkyd dede
 But more commendid for þeir womanhede
 ¶What is appeyrid es of Ester þe meknes
 Thof þat Scilla was sturdie and vengeable
 Nor of Alceste þe *parfite* stedfastnes
 Is not eclipsid but more acceptable
 Thof Climestra was founde variable
 Lyk as whan clowdes þeir blaknes doth decline
 Phebus more clere doth with his bemys shyne
 ¶fful many on haue clene ben all þeir lyve 6680
 Ondefoulid kepte þeir virginite
 And som couth agayn all vices stryve
 Them to conserue in *parfite* chastite
 Devoide of change and of mutabilite
 Thof som oþer haue þeragayn trespased
 The laude of þem . is þerwith not defacid
 ¶And who þat euer of malice liste accuse
 Theis celi women touchyng variance
 Let men remembre and in þeir wittes muse
 Men be not ay stable in þeir constance 6690
 In this worlde her is no perseuerance
 Change is ay founde in men and women both
 On outhir partie be þei neuer so wroth
 ¶No man shuld þe vertuus atwit
 Insted of hym þat did þe trespas
 Nor for a thefe a true a man endite
 Nor for þe gylty an Innocent aquite

Goode and wykkyd abide in euery place
Peir price þeir lak . let þem be reseruid
To outhir *partie* as þei haue deseruid
¶[Tho]f Iohn Bochas in his opinion 6700
[Agayn] women liste a processe make
[Thei þat] be goode of condicion
[Shuld] agayn hym no *maner* quarele take

[25v, col.b]

But lightlie passe and þeire slevys shake
ffor agayn goode myn auctor nothyng made
Who can conceive þe feete of his balade
¶Ye women all þat shulde beholde and se 6708
The Chapitle . and this processe rede 6710
And vertuus both in thought *and* dede 6710
Ye þat be good founde in youre degre 6709
What Bochas saith . tak ye noon hede 6711
ffor his wrytyng . if it be well discernyd
Is not agayn them þat be well governed
¶ffor þof it fall þat .j. or ij. or thre
Haue doon amyse . as þer *æt* fro godde forbede
Þat oþer feithfull and stable be
Shuld be aquytid of þeir womanhede
But more *commendid* . for þeir goodelihede
ffor þis scripture yf it be conserved
Is agayn þem þat be not well gouerned 6720
¶A gallid hors þis is verrey soth *parde*
Who touchith hym bendith his bak for dred
And who is knowe vntrue in his contre
Shrynkith his hornes when men speke of falshede
But goode women haue ful litle nede
To gruge or froune when þe trouth is lernyd
Thof þer be som þat be not well governyd
¶Of Dalida and of Quene paciphe
Thof doublenes did þeir bridill lede
Yit of lucrece and of penolope 6730
The noble fame doth oute shyne and sprede
Out of goode corne men may gedyr some wede
Women rubuk in þeir defautes evel lernyd
And not touche þem . þat be well governyd

De casu Pirri fillij Achillei

BOchas musyng in his remembraunce
And considred in his fantasie
The vusure truste of worldlie variance
Of men and women þe chaunge and þe folie
The same time he sawe a companye
Of myghty princis ful pitevouslie wepyng 6740
To hym appere at fortune compleynyng

¶ Among oþer þat put hymself in prece
Of myghty Pirrus fyrste he hadde a sight
That was þe son of worthi Achilles
Among þe Grekes . moste famus knyght
Most commendid of manhod and of myght
Son and next eire as bokes specific
Of Pelleus kyng of Thesalie

¶ This Achilles ful manlie of his hert
Hurt of Ector and his wounde grene 6750
Slough Ector aftyr or he did aduerte
The which Achilles for loue of polixene
By compassyng of hecuba þe Quene
Vndre trete þis Grekys champion
Was slayn of Paris within Troy town

¶ Whos deth to avenge . Pirrus in his tene
ffuriuslie . with fate dede and pale
Slough aftyr . þe saide polixene
And dismembrid hir on pecis smale
Which for to here is a pitevus tale 6760
Pat a knyght so vengeable was in dede
To sle a mayde ~~qua~~ quakyng hir drede

¶ He couth for Ire . on hir no mercy haue
But with his swerde most furius *and* woode
Merciles vpon his fadyrs grave
Lyk a tiraune he shed hir chaste bloode
The dede horrible . defacid his knyghthode

[26r, col. a]

That to þis day þe sclaudre and diffame
By newe reporte reboundith on his name
¶ Poetis say also . and speciallie Ovide 6770
Write . when Grekys from Troy shulde sayle
Hough þeir shippes by an Ankyr did ryde
Of þeir purpos which longe made þem fayle
But in this while he makith rehersaile
Ou[t]e of þe erth manacyng of chere
Of Achilles an Image did appere

¶ To Grekys . saide with a dedlie face
I fele wele myn honour and my glorie
And my nobles ful lightlie forth doth passe
Vnkynde peple oute of youre memorie 6780
Which by me hadde youre conquest and victorie
Youre deuer doth. polixene to take
And on my graue a sacrifice to make

¶ With hir bloode loke ye spare nought
To spryng it rounde abought my sepulture
Thus bloode for bloode with vengeaunce shalle bought
And for my deth . þe deth ye muste indure

And hole þe maner of þis aventure
 And hough she died in hir maidenhede
 Methamorphoseos þe processe ye may rede 6790
 ¶ In hasty vengeaunce . was set all his ioie
 With thirste vnstaunchid . Troian blode to shed
 He slough Priame þe worthi kyng of Troie
 And into Crete with hym he dide lede
 Andromada þe storie ye may rede
 Weddid hir and aftyr in certeigne
 Be hym she hadde [^]worthie[^] sonnes tweyne
 ¶ But in repairyng home into his cuntre
 As Eolus didde his shippys dryue
 I fynde he was a pirat of þe see . 6800
 And into Grece when he didde aryue
 ffortune vnwarlie began agayn hym stryue
 fforsoke his wyfe . and lete hir lyue ~~allon~~ allon
 And toke anoþer callid Armione
 ¶ Which was þat tyme ~~ioy~~ ioynyd in mariage
 To horrestes . son of Agamenon
 And he allas of wylful loves rage
 Toke hir by force to his possession
 But of aduoutrie . foloweth guerdon
 Soden deth . pouerte . and shame 6810
 Open sclaudir grete myschefe *and* diffame
 ¶ Eke in þis tyme . þis Pirrus as I rede
 ffell into myschef and grete pouerte
 And with such meny as he didde lede
 He was a rowere and robbid *onn* þe se
 And as poetes reherce . ye may se
 Of such robberyng be fraude and diffame
 The worde pirate . of Pirrus toke þe name
 ¶ And as þe storie aftyr doth devyse
 The saide horrestes . gan secretlie espie 6820
 Where þat Pirrus did sacrificise
 Befor Apollo þat godde to magnifie
 ffull inwarlie horrestes . of Envie
 Toke a sharpe swerde or Pirrus couth aduerte
 Where as he stode . *and* rofe him þurgh þe herte
 ¶ This was þe fyne of Pirrus in substaunce
~~fful~~ Ffor all his pride *and* grete *presumpcioun*
 Of fals aduoutrie . foloweth þis vengeaunce
 Losse of som membre . pouerte or prison
 Or hateful sclaudir by som occasion 6830
 Or soden deth shortlie in sentence
 Complete in Pirrus be ful clere evidence

[26r, col. b]

De casu Canacie et Machaire · et de inordi

/ nato amore in eos ·

Aftyр Pirrus cam Canace the fayre
Teris distillyng from hir ieen tweyne
And hir broþer · þat callid was Machaire
And both began pitevuslie compleine
That ffortune gan agayn them so disdeigne
Hyndryng þeir fate by woful aventure
Touchyng þeire loue which was agayn nature
¶ He was hir broþer · and hir loue also 6840
As þe storie plainlie doth declare
And in o bedde þei lay eke both two
Reason was non · why þei shulde spare
But loue þat causith wo · and eke welfare
Gan agayn Kynde so strongelie devise
That he hir wombe · made sodenlie aryse
¶ And finallie myn auctour berith witnes
A chylde she hadde by hir own broþer
Which excellid in fauour and fayrnes
ffor lyke to hym of beaute was non oþer 6850
But of þeir loue · se so guyes was þe rothir
That caribdis twenene wyndys full contrarie
Hath Canace destruede and Makarie
¶ ffor wher þeire fadre the maner gan espie
Of þeir werkyng which was so odible
ffor he fell almoste in frenesie
Which for to pece was impossible
ffor þe matiere was frowarde and horrible
ffor which devoide pleynlie of all pite
Vpon þeire trespas · he woulde avengid be · 6860
¶ The cause knewe þeir fadre anon right
Cast for þeire deth of rigour to prouide
ffor which Macharie fledde out of his sight
And from his presence · his presence gan to hide
But o allas · his sistre muste abide
Merciles · for þeire hatefull trespas
Suffre deth þer was non oþer grace
¶ ffyrste hir fadre a sharpe swerde to hir sent
In tokyn of deth · for a remembraunce
And when she wyste · pleynlie what it ment 6870
And conceyvyd his rigorus ordinaunce
With holo purpos to beyen his plesaunce
She gruchid not but lowlie of intente
Lyk a meke doughter to his desire assent
¶ But or she diede · she caste for to write
A little lentre to hir broþer dere
A dedlie compleint · compile and endite
With a pale face and a mortall chere
The salte teres from hir ien clere

With pitevus sobbyng fet from hir hertes brynk 6880
 Distillyng down · to tempre with hir ynk
 ¶ Oute of hir swownyng when she did abrayd
 Knowyng no mene but deth in hir distres
 To hir broþer ful pitevuslie she saide
 Cause of my sorowe · rote of myn hevynes
 That whilom wēt were chef · sours of my gl[adnes]
 When both oure ioyes by wyll were dis[posid]
 Vndre a kay · oure hertes to be inclosid
 ¶ Somtyme þu were · supporte *and* sicurn[es]
 Chefe reioysyng of my wordlie plesaunce 6890
 But nowe þ þu arte grownde of my sekn[es]
 Wele and wanhope of my dedlie penaun[ce]
 Which haue of sorowe grettest habun[daunce]
 That euer yit hadde any creature ·
 Which muste for loue · þe deth allas i[ndure]

[26v, col. a]

¶ Pu were somtyme my blys and all my truste
 Souereigne comfort my sours to appese
 Spryng and well of all my hertes luste
 And new allas chefe rote of my diseise
 But yf my deth myght do þe eny ese 6900
 O broþer myn in remembrance of tweyn
 Deth shal to me be plesaunce and no payn
 ¶ My cruell fadre moste vnmerciable
 Ordeigned hath · it nedes muste be so
 In his rigour he is vntreteable
 All merciles he wyl þat it be do
 Þat we algate shall die both two
 But I am gladde sith it may be non oþer
 Pu art escapid my beste beloved broþer
 ¶ This is myn ende · I may it not starte 6910
 O broþer myn þer is no more to say
 Louly besechyng with all myn hoole herte
 ffor to remembre speciali þis pray I
 If it befall my litle son to die
 That þu maiste sum mynde vpon vs haue
 Suffre vs both · to be buried both in o graue
 ¶ I holde hym streythe atwyn myn armes tweyn
 Pu *and* nature layde on me þis charge
 He gyltles · with me muste suffre peyn
 And sith þu arte at fredam and at large 6920
 Lete kyndnes oure loue so discharge
 But haue a mynde whereuer þat þu be
 Onys of þe day of þis chylde and me
 ¶ On þe and me dependith þe trespas

Touchyng oure gylte *and* oure greate outrence
 But welaway · most angelik of face
 Oure yonge childe in his pore innocence
 Shal agayn right suffre dethis violence
 Tendre of lymmes · godde wot ful giltles
 The goodlie fayre childe · which lieth her spechles 6930
 ¶A mouth he hath but wordes hath he noun
 Can not compleine alas for non outrage
 Nor gruchid not · but lieth here alloun
 Stille as a lombe moste meke of his visage
 What hert of stele couth do to hym damage
 Or suffre hym die · beholdyng þe maner
 And looke benigne of his · ij · ien clere ·
 ¶O þu my fadre · to cruell is þi wrech
 Harder of herte · þan Tigre or lioun
 To sle a childe þat lieth without spech 6940
 Voyde of all mercy and remission
 And on his modre haste no compassioun
 His youth considre · with lippes soft as sylk
 Which at my brest lith stil *and* soukith mylke
 ¶Is eny sorow remembred by writyng
 Vnto my ferful sighes comparable
 Or was þer euer creature lyvyng
 Þat felt of doole a thyng more lamentable
 ffor comfortles and vnrecuperable
 Are þeis hepid sorowes full of rage 6950
 Which haue with wo oppressid my corage
 ¶Rekyn all myschevys in especiall
 And on my myschefe remembre *and* haue goode mynd
 My lorde my fadre · is myn ennemy motrall
 [Ex]perience enough þer of I fynde
 ffor in his pursute · he hath lefte behynde
 [In] destruccion of my chylde and me
 [Ro]uth and all mercy · and fadrelie pite
 ¶[An]d þe my broþer · avoidid from his sight
 [Whi]ch in no wyse · his *grace* maiste atteine 6960

[26v, col. b]

Allas þat rigour vengeaunce and cruell right
 Shall aboue mercie be ladie souereigne
 But cruelte doth at me so disdeigne
 That þu my broþer my childe and also I
 Shal die · exilid allas from all mercie
 ¶My fadre somtyme by many a sondrie signe
 Was my socoure and supportacion
 To þe and me · moste gracios and benigne
 Oure worldie gladnes oure consolacioun
 But loue and fortune haue turnyd vpsodoun 6970

Oure grace allas oure welfare and oure fame
 Harde to recure so sclaudred is oure name
 ¶ Spot of diffamyng is harde to wash away
 When noyse and rumour abrode do folke manace
 To hyndre a man · þer may be no delay
 ffor hateful fame · flieth ferre in ful short space
 But of vs tweyn þer is noon oþer grace
 Saue oonlie deth · and aftyr deth allas
 Eternal sclaudre of vs · þus standeth þe cas
 ¶ Whom shal we blame or shal we atwite 6980
 Oure grete offence · sith we may it hide
 ffor our excuse · reportes to respite
 Meene is þer noon · excepte þe godde Cupide
 And þof þat he wolde · for vs provide
 In this matier to be oure chef refuge
 Poetis seyn · he is blynde to be a Iuge
 ¶ He depicte like a blynd Archer
 To make aright faylyng discrecion
 Holdyng no mesure · nouþer ferre ne nere
 But lyke fortunes disposicion 6990
 All vpon happe · voide of all reason
 As a blynde archer · with arowes sharpe grounde
 Of aventure yevith many a mortall wounde
 ¶ At þe and me · he wronglie did marke
 ffelly to hyndre our fatall adventures
 As ferre os phebus shynyth in þe ark
 To make vs refuse · to all creatures
 Callid vs tweyn vnto þe woofull lures
 Of diffame which wyl departe neuer
 By newe reporte · þe noyse reportyng ^increcyng^ euer 7000
 ¶ Odious fame · with swyft wynges flieth
 But all þe goode fame · at Envie doth restreyne
 Iche man oþer þe difautes seeth
 Yit on his own no man wyll compleyn
 But all þe worlde oute crieth on vs tweyn
 Whos hateful Ire by vs may not be quemyd
 ffor I muste die · my fadre hath so demyd
 ¶ Now fare weele broþer to me it doth suffise
 To die allon for oure both sake
 And in my moste faithfull humble wyse 7010
 Vnto my dethwarde þof I tremble and quake
 Of þe for euer my leue nowe I take
 Yit ones ayere forgete not but take hede
 My fatall day · þis lettre for to rede ·
 ¶ So shalt þu haue of me som remembraunce
 My name impryntid in þi kalender
 By rehersaile of my dedelie grevaunce
 Were blak þat day · and make a doolful chere

And whan þu commyst and shalt approche nere
 My sepulcure · I pray þe not disdeigne 7020
 Vpon my graue · som teres for to reyne
 ¶ Wrytyng hir *lettre* awhappid and adrede
 In hir right hand hir penne began to quake
 And a sharpe swerde to make hir hert blede
 In hir lifte hand · hir fadre hath hir take
 And hir moste sorowe was for hir chyldes sake
 Vpon whos face in hir barme slepyng
 fful many a tere she wepte compleynyng

[27r, col. a]

¶ Aftyr all þis · so as she toke and quoke
 His chylde beholdyng · myd of hir peynes smerte 7030
 The swerde in hir right hand she toke
 And rofe hirselfe even to þe herte
 Hir ƒ childe fel down which myght not asterte
 Hauyng noon helpe to socour' hym nor saue
 But in hir bloode hymselfe began to bathe
 ¶ And þan hir fadre moste cruel of intente
 Badde þat þe chylde shuld anon be take
 Of cruell houndes in haste for to be rente
 And be devourid for his modre sake
 Of þis Tragedie þus an ende I make 7040
 Proces of which as men may rede and se
 Concludith on myschefe and furius cruelte
 ¶ Remembryng firste as made is mencion
 Hough þat Pirrus delite hym in dede
 Whan Troie was brought to destruccion
 With cruel swerde · Troian bloode to shede
 But of which slaughter · seeth here þe cruel mede
 As right requirith by vnware violence
 Bloode shedde for bloode · is small recompence
 ¶ When surquedie · oppressid hath pite 7050
 And meknes is with tirannie bore down
 And agayn right hasty cruelte
 To be vengeable makith no delacion
 What foloweth þerof by clere inspeccion
 Seth in example hough Pirrus in his tene
 Of hateful Ire slough yonge Polixene
 ¶ Kyng Eolus to rigorus was parde
 And to vengeable in his intencion
 Agayn his children Macharie and Canace
 So importable was his puniss punicion 7060
 Of haste procedyng to þeir destruccion
 Wers in his Ire as it was weele sene
 Then cruel Pirrus which slough polixene
 ¶ Noble princes prudent and attempre

Differreth vengeance of high discrecion
 Tyll youre ire sumwhate aswagid be
 Doth neuer of dome · non execucion
 ffor hate of rancour · *perturbeth* youre reson
 Of hasty Iuges more of intente vnclene
 Pen cruel pirrus · which slough polixene **Book I.7070**
 ¶ Thus Iohn Bochas *procedyng* in his boke **Book II.127**
 Which in noumbre · is callid þe secund
 Gan for to write and his purpos tok
 To set in stories such as ye hadde founde 130
 Of intent all vyses to confounde
 By example which he did expresse
 And at þe begynnyng of his bysynesse
 ¶ Myghty Saul to hym did appere
 Kyng of Israel pitevuslie wepyng
 Dedlie of face and with an hidius chere
 His voice broken · by many a sobbyng
 And to myn auctor · his sorowes compleynyng
 Requiryng hym togyddir when þei met
 ffryst in his booke his woful fall to set 140
 ¶ Anon aftyr · of on intencion
 With penne in hande faste gan me spede
 And as I couth in my translacion
 In þis labour ferþer to procede
 My lorde cam forth by · *and* gan to take hede
 This myghty prince right manlie *and* right wyse
 Gafe me charge · in his prudent advise ·
 ¶ That I shuld in euery Tragedie
 Aftyr þe processe make intencion
 At þe ende set a remedie 150

[27r, col. b]

With a *lenevie* Lenvoie · conueied by reson
 And aftyr þat with humble affeccion
 To noble princes lowlie it directe
 By *opers* fallyng · þei myght þemself correcte
 ¶ And I obeied his byddyng and plesaunce
 Vndre supporte of his magnificence
 As I couth · I can my penne inhaunce
 Al be I was baren of eloquence
 ffolowyng myn auctor in substance of sentence
 ffor it suffised pleylnie vnto me 160
 So þat my lord my making toke at gre · 161

Incipit secundus liber

TO summe folk *parcas* it wolde seme 1
 Touchyng þe chaunges *and* mutabilites
 By me rehersed þat þei myght deme

Of fortunes straunge aduersites
 To princis shewyd · pullid doun from þeir sees ·
 The Tragedies ought not suffice ·
 In compleynyng which ye harde devise
 ¶ The storie pitevus · þe processe lamentable
 Voide of ioy · gladnes *and* plesaunce
 A thyng to grevus and to importable 10
 Wheras no myrth medlid is with grevaunce
 All vpon compleint · stondith þe alliance
 Most whan fortune · who þat hir course well knewe
 Chaungith olde ioye · into sorowes newe ·
 ¶ ffor vnto hym þat neuer wyst of woo
 Remembrance of his olde gladnes
 When his welfare and plesaunce is go
 And neuer afforn knewe of noon hevynes
 Suche vnware chaunge such vncouth wrechidnes
 Causith in princes · þurgh newe dedlie trouble 20
 Aftyr þat fallyng · þeir sorowes to be double
 ¶ Olde example of princes þat haue fall
 Þeire remembraunce of newe brought to mynde
 May be a mirroure · to estates all
 Hough þei in vertu shal remedies fynde
 To eschewe vicis of such as were made blynde
 ffro sodeine fallyng · þemself to preserue
 Longe to continue and thank of godde deserue
 ¶ The fall of oon is a clere Lanterne
 To teche anoþer what he shal eschewe 30
 Perill of oon · is · who can discerne
 Scole and doctrine from perill to remewe
 As men discerne ^deserue^ · suche guerdon þer muste sewe
 In vice nor vertu · no man may godde deceyve
 Lyke þeire desertes · þeire mede þei receyve ·
 ¶ Who þat folowe vertu lengest doth perseuer
 Be it in riches · be it in pouerte
 Light of trouth · his clernes kepith euer
 Agayn þassautes of all aduersite
 Vertu is cause of longe prosperite 40
 And when princes from vertu do decline
 Þeir fame is shrowdid vndre þe eclipsid lyne
 ¶ ffor fals fortune which turnyth as a ball
 Of vnwar chaunges · þof men hir whele atw[ite]
 It is not she · þat princes gafe þe fall
 But vicius lyvyng pleyndie to indit[e]
 Þof godde aboue ful of oft doth þem [respit]
 Longe abideth · and doth his grace sende
 To þis intent · þei shuld þeir lyf amen[de]
 ¶ ffor þeir welfare · *and* þeir abydyng longe 50

[27v, col. a]

Who aduertiseth · dependith not on chaunce
Goode lyfe and vertu · makith them to be stronge
And þem assureth in longe *perseuerance*
Vertu on fortune makith a diffiaunce
Pat fortune hath no *dominacion*
Wher noble princis be governed by reason
¶ But such as liste not correctid be
By example of *oper* fro vicius *gouernaunce*
And from *oper* vicis liste not for to fle
If þei be troublid in þeire high puissance 60
Thei ~~arte~~ arrecte it fortunes variaunce
Touchyng þe gyftys þat þei did vse
Þeire demerites ful falslie to excuse
¶ Vertu conserueth *princes* in glorie
And conseruith þeir *dominacions*
And vicis putten þer þeire pris oute of memorie
ffor þeire trespacis *and* þeire transgressiones
And in all such soden mutacions
Þei cannot refute · nor no bettyr socoure
But agayn fortune · to meke þeire clamour 70
¶ Make and oute crie on hir doublenes
As no gylt were in þeire own dede
Thus vntrulie þei call hir a goddes
Which litle or nought may helpe at such a nede
But yf þei hadde godde in loue *and* drede
Trustith his lordeship in hert and thought
Þen shal fortune be playnlie set at nought
¶ Euidencis ful expert and palpable
Beforn rehersid tolde of diuerse *ages*
Worldlie glories · veyne and ful vnstable 80
With deceites double of þeire visages
Shewyng to *princes* · forme of þeir corages
By þeis examples hough in what wyse
Both þeis fallying · þei shal themself chastyse
¶ Signes shewyd and tokyns in the heuyn
Diuerse *cometes* and *constellacions*
Dredeful thundrynges · fereful fyry levyn
Rumor in erth and grete dissenciones
Disobeisaunce in sondrie regiones
Shewe examples · ful well afferme I dare 90
To myghti *princes* · þem bidyng to be ware
¶ Their lyfe to amend · or þe lorde do smyte ·
Thurgh negligence · or it be to late
And or þe swerde of vengeaunce do bite
Into ~~vertues~~ *vertuus* · þeir vicius lyf to ~~change~~ translate
Cherish rightwesnes ~~all~~ agayn all wronge debate
With drede of godde · make þemself stronge

Pen is no doute · þei shal indure longe
 ¶Who is not ware · by oþer chastysyng
 Oþir by hym shal chastised be 100
 Harde is þat herte which for no wrytyng
 ffor no doctrine nor non auctorite
 ffor non example wyl from his vicis fle
 [To] indurate is · his frowarde entente
 [W]hich wyl not suffre his hardnes to relente
 ¶[The r]ownde dropys of þe smoth reyne
 [Whi]ch þat descende and fall from alofte
 [On] stones harde · at ie as it is seene
 [Perci]th þe hardnes · with þeire fallyng ofte
 [Al be] in touchyng water is but softe 110
 [The] Percyng causid by force nor puissance
 [But] of fallyng by longe continuaunce
 ¶[Sembl]eable of right · I dare reherce
 [Oft re]dyng of bookes fructuus

[27v, col. b]

The hertis shulde of prudent princes perce
 Synk in þeir mynd and make þem vertuus
 To eschew all þing þat is vicius
 ffor what avaylith · þe examples þat þei rede
 To þeire redyng · yf contrarie be þe dede
 ¶Connyng and dede · who can comprehende 120
 In clere conceites · þei be þinges tweyn
 And yf cunnyng doth þe dede amende
 Pen between þem is maade a myghty cheyne
 A noble þing and right souereygne
 ffor þen of cunnyng · þe labour is well spent
 Whan dede folowith · and both ben of assent 126
De casu Saulis primi Regis populi Israel
TThis saide Saul of whom I spake befor[e]
 fful wel compacte *and* large of his statu[re] 162
 Of þe lyne of Beniamin eke borne
 His fadre Cis was callyd in scripture
 Whos asses whilom . lefte þeire pasture
 Space of .iiij. dayes . Saul hadde þesought.
 Lost his labour and yit founde þem nought
 ¶For þei were gonn out so ferre astrayed
 So disseuerde he and couth þem not mete . 170
 Tyl þat a child hym suying all þe way
 Gafe hym counsell his labour for to lete
 And þat he shuld go to þe profete
 Which was ful famus holden in Israel
 Of whom þe name was callid Samuel
 ¶Which Saule made in his house to dyne
 Receyvdyd hym of grete affeccion

And by *precepte* and ordinaunce diuine
 Samuel made no prolongacion
 But shedde þe holi sacrid vnccion 180
 Vpon þe hede of Saul doon knelyng
 And ð ful deuoutlie of Israel made hym kyng
 ¶ Of goddis peple to haue þe *gouernaunce*
 With sceptre and crown hoole þe regallie
 And his nobblesse more . myghtilie to auance 185
~~G~~with ~~mek~~ God gave to hym a spirit of *prophecie* 187
 With meknes to rule his monarchie 186
 Which was grete glorie to his magnificence 188
 Of future þinges to haue prescience
 ¶ And while þat he was humble and meke indede 190
 Voide of pride. and fals *presumption*
 And prudent counsaile with hym did lede
 Hym to *gouerne*. by goode discrecion
 He founde quiete . þurgh all his region
 No foren ennemie . durst hym not warrey
 While he þe lorde . mekelie did obey .
 ¶ Non ennemie myght agayn hym recure
 Thurgh noon *imprisez* . but sore did hym drede
 Made many grete discomfiture
 Thurgh his force knyghthode and manhode 200
 On philistes . and *aduertid* eke in dede
 .ij. mighty kynges þat on of Amonitz
 And anoþer . þat *gouernde* Moabitz
 ¶ He was eke founde . stronge and victorius
 The palestines bryngyng to mischaunce
 Agayn Idumes . so mighty and famus
 Thurgh his knyghtlie prudent *purviaunce*
 That he þeir pride brought on v̄ outraunce

[28r, col. a]

Myschevid them of wysdom and manhede
 Primo Regum as ye may pleylnlie rede . 210
 ¶ He was son callid of oo . yere
 In Israel when his reigne began
 Stable of herte and benigne of chere
 ffrowarde nor sturdie vnto no *manner* man
 All þat while loue of þe peple he won
 The tyme I mene while he was iuste *and* stable
 And in his werkes not founde variable
 ¶ But whan þat pride . began his hert embrace
 Wilfulness and fals melancolie
 Outraied reason to haue þe *gouernaunce* 220
 Of his olde famus pollicie
 And hadde forgeten in his fantasie
 To know þe lorde . and meklie su his lawe

Godde from his *grace* gan withdraw
 ¶ The vnkynde worme . of foryetilnes
 In his herte mynyd þurgh þe wall
 When he to godde for his kyndnes
 Gaue no laude . nor no thank at all
 Which haddde hym reysyd . vnto þe estate royall
 ffrom poore degre emonge his kyme allone 230
 By singlere fredam to set hym in his trone
 ¶ What þing in herte more frowarde may be þought
 Pan is þe soden fals presumpcion
 Of a wrech þat cometh vp of nought
 To yeve hym lordeship . and dominacion
 And for to make a pleyn comparison
 Men shulde of reason drede a lion lasse
 Pan þe rudenes of a crownyd asse .
 ¶ What þing to godde is more abhominable
 Pan pride vpreysyd oute of pouerte 240
 And noþing gladlie is founde more vengeable
 Pan are wrechtes set in high degre
 ffor from his stokke . kynde may not fle
 Ich þing resortith . hough ferre so euer it go
 To þe nature which þat it cam fro .
 ¶ ffrute and appyls . taken þeire tarage
 Wher þei fyrste grue of þat same tre
 And semblie iche kynred and linage
 Ones a yere . it wyl noon oþer be
 By tokyn or signe . at ie as men may se 250
 Draweth comynlie in euery creature
 Som tache f to folowe . aftyr his nature
 ¶ I write not þis in rebuk of pouert
 But for such oonlie as þat it deserue
 Godde of his myght as men be wel experte
 May þem in *vertu* increce and conserue
 ffrom all mischeve a pore man *preserue*
 Reyse þem on high to dominaciouns
 Thurgh high nobles of þeir condicions
 ¶ By influence Godde may his *grace* shede 260
 Wher he fynde cause oonlie by mekenes
 A pore man to reyse hym vp indede
 Vnto þe estate of *vertuus* nobles
 ffor oute of *vertu* cometh ð all gentilnes
 In pore and riche make non excepcion
 But þem *commend* lyk þeir condicion
 ¶ A pore man which þat is *vertuus*
 And dredith godde in his *pouerte*
 Iche þing eschuyng þat is *vicius*
 And to his power doth trouth and equite 270
 I dare right wel avowe whateuer þat he be

[28r, col. b]

Puttyng no rebuke vnto his kynrede
But call hym gentill verrailie indede
¶ But kyng Saul was contrarius
Disobeisaunt founde in his werkyng
Whan godde made hym to be victorius
On Amalech . Wher Agag was kyng
Hym *commaundyng* to spare no *maner þing*
Man nor woman beste nor child socoure
But *þat* his swerde shuld all quyk þing deuour 280

¶ But Saul wrought in all *oþer wyse*
Iche þyng *reseruyng þat* was fayre to sight
And of intent to make a sacrifice
Aftyr his *virctorie* he shope hym anonright
ffattest beste he chose and hath þem dight
Towarde þe fyre to make his offeryng
And from deth he sparid Agag þe kyng
¶ He was *repreuyd* aftyr of Samuel
To goddes byddyng for he was contrarie 290
Of godde abiecte to reigne in Israel

þat all goode hoope in hym gan dispaire
His grace his myght gan palle and apaire
His *prophecie* aftyr hath hym faylid
And with a fende . he was also travayled
¶ Thus from hir whele . fortune caste hym down
Avaylid hym from his royall see .
And godde also toke away his croune
Bothe from hym and his posterite
And set vp Dauid for his humilite
Lo hough þe lorde . his domys gan devide 300
To inhaunce meknes . and to abate pride

¶ Saul indurid . in his frenesie
A wykkyd spirit so sore hym did assaile
Vnto David euer he hadde ~~En~~ envie
Pat he was hardie . to entre into bataile
With staffe slyng voide of plate and mayle
Slough Goliath without fere or drede
Pullid oute his swerde *and* smote of his hede

¶ And *þer* repairyng home onte of þe felde
When David hadde slayn þis Golie 310
Yong maydyns whan *þat* þei behelde
The grete victorie . þei in þeir armonie
In laude of David þis gane þei syng *and* crie
Saul hath slayn a thousand þurgh his myght
David .x. thousand . þe yong lusty knight

¶ Saul disdeigned . and said frowardlie
Thei *granted* haue a thousand to my name

And to þe son here of Isaie fully
 Yeue .x. thousand to increce his fame .
 Which is to me ^^ rebuke and shame 320
 Whervpon þis Saul fret with Ire
 Of young David gan þe deth conspire
 ¶ In his herte he had a fantasie
 Of þeir syngyng whan þat he toke hede
 Demyd it was *maner* of *prophecie*
 Pat David shuld *preferrid* be indede
 And to þe crown aftyr hym succede
 Pof his children as can devyne
 Shuld be deprived of þe royall lyne .
 ¶ Thus day by day Saul weyes out soug[ht] 330
 To sle David pleyndie yf he myght
 Albesit so þat he no malice þou[ght]

[28v, col. a]

But euer kepte hym lowlie [i]n his sight
 Perfor godde euer and grace on hym light
 ffor euer þe lorde of his magnificence
 Agayn tiraunes *perserueth* Innocencie
 ¶ And as þe Bible pleyndie doth vs lere
 Thus Daudid hadde in his tender age 338
~~And whan þat Saul . ful many rage~~ 341
~~Daudid anon to swage his wodness~~ 342
 ffor his nobles þe kynges daughter dere 339
 Callid Michel ioynyd by mariage 340
 And whan þat Saul fel in any rage
 Daudid anon to aswage his wodness
 Touched his harpe . and brought hym in gladnes
 ¶ Saul ful ofte gan Daudid to inchace
 And warrie þurghoute all his landes
 Thurgh desertes hym pursue and manace
 Of intente to shit hym vp in bondes
 Or to haue slayn hym yf he com in his handes
 But finallie godde þurgh . his ordinance
 Preseruyd his knyght from al *maner* mischaunce 350
 ¶ Saul ful ofte was brought to mischefe
 Yit ay fro deth dauid did hym saue
 And here of þis was a special prefe
 Whan dauid cut his garment in þe caue
 And mo tokyns yf ye liste to haue
 Anoper tyme dauid also kepte
 The lyfe of Saul whan he lay and slepte .
 ¶ The cas was þis as þei lay hostenyng
 Not ferre asondir . and Saul lay aslepe
 All his peple aboute hym slepyng 360
 And vnpurveide like a flokke of shepe

Of which þing Daud toke goode kepe
Doun descendid and made no delay
Cam to þe tente where kyng Saul lay
¶The spere of Saul stondyng at his hede
Daud toke it and went his way anon
Of his *comming þer* was no man toke hede
ffor Saul slepte and his men ichon
And whan þat he vp to þe hyll was goon
Toward Saul agayn he caste loke 370

Made a noyse þat all his knyghtes wooke
¶ffyrste to Abner prince of his cheualrie
Daud saide þeis wordes in sentence
Abner *quod* he þu haste do a grete folie
This day showed a grete negligence
To suffre of Saul þe magnificence
In perill stond . and noon hede to take
Aboute his *person* to make his knyghtes wake
¶Þu arte to blame for þi e reclenes 380
To leue þe kyng . stonde in so grete a drede

In slepe to haue more sauour or swetnes
Pan of his lyfe for to take hede
Suche negligence requirith for his mede
Deth and torment . by rightful iugement
Aboute a prince whan folke be negligent
¶[A]nd yf þu list to se an euidence
[Ho]ugh þat his lyfe stode in ~~perill~~ Ieopartie
[S]ee here his spere . *and* yef þerto credence
[Hou]gh vnprovided ye were in *your* partie
[Sau]l nor þu may it denye 390

[You]re lyfe your deth ~~p~~ *your* power *your* puisaunce
[This] day godde put hoole in my *gouernaunce*
¶[But m]e to aquite of pure Innocence
[As eueri m]an shuld t̅o vnto his kyng

[28v, col. b]

And to declare in me was noon offence
Agayn his noblesse in wyll nor in werkyng
As godde well wote þat knoweth euerythyng
That I *neuer* by conspiricie
Wrought nor compassid agayn his regallie
¶Loo here example of parfite pacience 400
Agayn malice to shewe kyndnesse
Wher Saul shewyd his mortal violence
Daud aquitte hym with suffreaunce *and* goodnes
The tiranne venquessid by his *prudent* meknes
Men agayn trouth may well werre begynne
But at þe laste . þe palme he doth ay wynne
¶ffor of þis storie yf þat ye take heede

Saul is fall for his frowardnes
 Into myschefe and to seden drede
 ffor philistes þe bible berith witness 410
 With a grete powere . gan þeir wardes dresse
 Vpon king Saul avenged for to be
 Peir tentes pyght beside Gelboe
 ¶ Wherof king Saul astonyd in his herte
 Had loste his spirit of knyghtlie hardynes
 And speciallie when he did aduerte
 Profite was noon his harmes to redresse
 Of future þinges . trouþis to expresse
 Of Israel which caste in grete drede
 By cause þat tyme Samuel was dede . 420
 ¶ ffor Saul hadde caste oute all diuinesse
 ffrom Israel and eche diuinieresse
 Not withstondyng þat þe palestinesse
 Were wyse . again his powere to ~~expresse~~ oppresse .
 And he ne knewe no maner sorceresse
 Of whom he might eny counsel take
 And he of godde þat tyme was forsake
 ¶ In þis wyse he stode disconsolate
 Counsel of godde nor prophete knewe he noon
 But like a man moste infortunate 430
 Vngraciuslie he spedde hym forth anoon
 And secretelie þis Saul is forth goonn
 To a woman þat shuld hym rede and wyse
 In Israel callid a Phitonisse .
 ¶ Which is a name as clerkys written all
 An office þ who þat takith hede
 Soules of men again to clepe *and* call
 I mene of such as beforne were dede
 Which is a thing straunge for to rede
 That eny woman who so liste to ~~rede~~ lere 440
 ffor to make soulez of dede men to appere
 ¶ Vncouth and straunge is þis opinioun
 And to wit a man ~~impossible~~ impossible
 Not acordyng me semyth vnto reason
 Nor lyke a thing which þat is credible
 Þat a soule of nature invisible
 Myght appere or shewe visible
 Vnto ien which þat be & bodilie
 ¶ But or þat I eny ferþer flit
 Lest I were holde to *presumptuus* 450
 To diuines þis matier I committee
 And wyse clerkes þat be *vertuus*
 In þeire wittes subtile and curius
 To conclude as it doth þem seme
 In þis matier trouth for to deme

¶ Wheþer it was þe soule of Samuel
Or som oþer spirit þat she did vp call

[29r, col. a]

Which þat tolde þe king of Israel 458
On Amalech for he toke not vengeance 465
Thus þe spirit bare hym to witnes
Wherof Saul . fel in ful grete hevynes
Knowyng no mene to scape oute of þis doute
¶ Tolde hym also . his ennemies were so wroth 470
The philistes beside Gelboe
In þat bataile he and his children both
Shuld die þat daye of necessite
His cheualrie shall scomfitid be
Of his reigne þer is no lengar date
ffor godde from hym his kyngdam wyl translate
¶ And þus Saul returnyd is again
His meny aftyr broughte to discomfiture
And when he sawe all his peple slayn
And hough þer was no mene to recure 480
In þat dedelie wooful aventure
He bade his squiere take his swerde ablyve
And þurgh þe herte þat he shuld hym ryve .
¶ Þat his ennemies which were vncircumscide
Shuld haue no powere in storie it is founde
To fall vpon hym as þei haue devised
To yeve hym his laste fatall wounde
His high nobles at myschefe to confounde
But his Squiere for fere of godde and drede
Wolde not assente to do so foule a dede . 490
¶ To sle his lorde he gretelie was afferde
A thing hatefull in euery mannes sight
But Saul toke þe pomel of his swerde
And in þe grounde ful depe anon it pight 494
Made þe poynte in his furius peyne 496
To perce his herte . and parte it evyn on tweyn
And in all haste possible þat he myghte 495
¶ The philistes anon as he was dede 498
Despoilide hym of his riall armure
Dismembrid hym and smote of his hede 500
And in token of þeire discomfiture
Toke all þe spoilez with all þeire besy cure
And þerof made in all þeire best intende
To Ascaroth of pride . a grete presente
¶ Thus was Saul slayn in sentence
Of þis philistees in Gelboe
fforsaken of godde for inobedience
Abiecte also down from his riall see

And þus for lakkyng of humilte
 Of godde he was foreuer set aside 510
 Lo here þe ende . of surquede and pride .
 ¶Haue mynd of Saul . which of estate riall
 ffrom lowe degre was callid for meknes
 But presumpcion made hym haue a fall
 Of godde abiecte . for his frowardnes
 Loste his crown þe bible berith witnes
 And cause was for his disobeisaunce
 To goddess biddying he caste non attendaunce
 ¶Godde askith not . of man no more at all
 But hold herte without doublenesse 520
 ffor all þe gyftes which in especiall
 He gaue man of his high goodnesse
 But he chastiseth all vnkyndnesse
 Such as be rebell for to do plesaunce

[29r, col.b]

Vnto his biddying . ne yeve non attendaunce
 ¶Noble princes of vertu moste principall
 Yow to conserue in youre high noblesse
 As to inprinte in youre memoriall
 ffeith . equite . all wronge to redresse
 To susteine trouth and rightuesnesse 530
 And tofor godde holdith euyng þe balaunce
 And to his biddying yeueth hole *your* attendaunce

[29v, col. a39]

De casu Roboam Regis Israhel

¶Nto Iohn Bochas in ordre next þer cam
 With ful grete dole and lamentacion
 The younge kyng callid Roboam
 Sunne and nexte eyre to kyng Salomon
 Entryng by title of iuste succession
 Besought myn auctour to make of his folye
 And off his fallyng a pitevus Tragedie 630
 ¶ffirste whan he entrid into his region
 Xij. tribus governde indede
 Reulid hymself by wyll and no reason
 Kepte hys subiectes pleynlie as I rede .
 Not vndre loue but vndre froward drede .
 Of olde vise to his grete disavaile
 He despised þe doctrine and counsaile
 ¶He demenyd . as it is wel couth
 His sceptre his crown and his regallie
 By such folke as flourid in þeir youth 640
 Couth of custom þeire wittes well applie

To blynd hym falslie with þeire flaterie
Which is a stepmodre callid in substaunce
To all vertue and all goode governaunce
¶ Allas it is grete doole and grete pite
That flaterie shuld haue so grete fauour

[29v, col. b]

Which blyndith princes þat þei may not se
Mestetus þe ieen of euery governoure
That þei cannot knowe þeire own errour
ffals hony shedde ay on þeire sentence 650
A fole is he . þat yevith to þem credence

¶ Thei may be callid þe devels Tabereres
With froward sowndes þe erys to fulfill
Or of Circes þe perilus botilers
Which gall and hony togyddyr doon distill
Whos drynke ben both amarous and ille
And as clerkes well devise canne
Wers þen þe drynke of Sirenes tunne

¶ Erys off princes full well þei can enoynte 660
With þe softe oyle off adulacion
And þeire termes most subtillie appeinte
Iche þinge concludyng with fals decepcion
Ay blandisshyng with amorus poyson
And finallie as þe poete saith

Peire faith of custom concludith with vnfeith
¶ ffLOURYNG IN ~~wordes~~ woodis þof þer be no frute
Double of herte . plesaunt of language
Of true menyng voide and destitute
In moustring outewarde pretending of fayre visage
Who trustith þem fyndith small avantage 670
By apperence and glorius fresh shewyng
Princes deceyvvyng and many a worthy kyng

¶ Roboam can bere full well witnes
From hym avoidyng folkes þat were true
Hough he was hyndrid by flaterie and falsnes
By them þat couth forge oute tales newe
Whos counsel aftyr sore didde hym rue
And with þeire feynyd fals suggestion
Gretelie abriggid his dominacion

¶ He dampne hym ð selfe of more auctorite 680
Of folie youth and of presumption
Pan was his fadre in all his roialte
And þis fals pompus opinion
Cam to his conceit by adulacion
For flaterers bare to hym witnesse
Hough he excellid his fadres high noblesse

¶ He did grete rigour and oppression

Vpon his peple as it is well previd
 And þei to fynde som mitigacion
 In matiers which þat haue þem grevid 690
 And of þeire tributes for to be relevid
 Besoughte he wolde releve þem in þeire nede
 But al for nought . he toke þerof noon hede .
 ¶ All hole counsail from hym he set on side
 And refusid þeire doctrine and þeire lore
 And by fals counsail of folkes ful of pride
 His poore leges he oppressid sore
 And .x. kynredes anon withoute more
 ffor tirannrie and mys gouernaunce
 ffrom hym withdrowe þeire trouth and þeire legeaunce 700
 ¶ Thus of þe kyng conteynynd þe rigoure
 The peple anon of indignacion
 Stonyd Adoram which was þe collectour
 Of þe tributes in all his region
 ffrom hym departyng þe rebellion
 Wherof astonyed to avenge his grete vnright
 Into Ierusalem toke anon his right
 ¶ And when þei were departid from Roboam
 Þe .x. kynredes by diuision
 Chese þem a kyng callid Ieroboam 710
 And Roboam within his roiall toune

[30r, col. a]

To be avengid on þeire rebellion
 And for to do on þem cruel iustice
 An hundred þousand he made anon to ryse
 ¶ Wyth Ieroboam he caste hym for to mete
 And all at ones set in Ieopardie
 But Rameus þe prophet badde hym lete
 And from þe werre withdrawe his partie
 And more þe querele for to Iustifie
 Of his peples frowarde departyng . 720
 This was goddes wyll don for a punishyng
 ¶ Touchyng þe surplus of his gouernaunce
 His roiall beldyng of many fayre cite
 His grete riches and famus suffisaunce
 Of wyne and oyle hauyng grete plente
 And hough his empire incresid yeres . thre
 Eke hough þat tyme he rightful was indede .
 In Iosephus his storie ye may rede
 ¶ Of his children borne in þe right lyne
 Xviij. wyves as made is mencion 730
 I fynde he hadde and many a concubine
 Sonnes and doughtres by procreacion
 And hough his riches and grete possession

Pat tyme increcid as it is wel knowe .
To godde aboue . while he bars him lowe
¶ But as þis auctour makith rehersaile
In his increce and augmentacion
Meknes of harte in hym gan waste and faile
And pride entrid with fals presumpcion
Vertu despisyng and all religion 740
Aftyr whos vicis as saith þe same booke
Wykkyd example off hym þe peple toke .

¶ Aftyr þe maners wher þei be goode or ille
Vsyd off princes in diuerse regiones
The peple is redie ro vsen and fulfill
ffolowe þe traces of þeire condicion
ffor lordes may in þeire subieccions
So as þem liste who so can take hede
To vices or vertu þeir subiectes leede

¶ Thus Roboam for his transgressions 750
In Iosephus as it is devised
And for his froward fals opinions
Onlie for he all vertu hath despysid
Of godde he was ryghtfullie chastised
In Ierusalem his chefe roiall town
Off his ennemies besegid environ

¶ The kynges off Egipte a sege abought hym laide
With so grete peple þat socoure was þer noon
Albeit so þat Roboam abraied 760
And prayde godde deliuer hym from his foon
All voide of mercie . his ennemies euerychon
But liste not to graunte hym his prayer
But hym chastised . like as ye shal here

¶ ffyrste his cite and his noble town
Delyueryd . he knewe no better socoure
Vndre a feynyd fals composicion
ffor at þeire entring voide of all fauour
Kepyng no tanaunce . toke al þe tresoure
Within þe temple . havng no pite 770
But ledde it home to Egipte þe cuntre

¶ And to reherse it is to grete doole
Hough Roboam as Iosephus doth declare
Was inlie prowde . and . þerwithall a fole
And of all wysdom destitute and bare
Vnmerciable his peple for to spare
And hatyng goode counsaile and so in his folie
Reignyng a fole . and I lete hym die . 777

[30r, col. b]

¶ Hasten . youth . and rancour . in contrarie wyse 785
Which haue to wyll all þeir aduertence

Excepte þemselfe . all oþer men despise
 Thurgh þeire vnbridilde furius insolence
 Nothyng aqueyntid with wysdom nor *prudence*
 Brynges agaynwarde . wherof þei be to blame 790
 Nobles of *princes* in myschefe and diffame
 ¶Kyng Roboam agayn right and Iustice
 To yong fooles gafe faith *and* moste credence
 Cruellie his subiectes to chastise
 Which put his peple from his beneuolence
 Drowe .x. kynredes from his obeisaunce
 Which was to hym by recorde ful grete shame
 Puttyng his nobles in myschefe and diffame .
 ¶Noble *princes* doth wyselie aduertise 800
 In *preseryng* of youre magnificence
 Of olde experte . not blynde with couetyse
 Taketh youre counsaile . and doth þem reuerence
 Eidd as Argus in þeir high prouidence
 Which conserue by reporte of goode name
 Nobles of *princes* from myschefe and diffame .

[32v, col. b24]

**De casu Ieroboam Regis Israel colente falsos
/ deos.**

NExte þis storie in Bochas as I fynde
 Þer did appere vnto his *presence*
 Kynges .vj. hym *prayng* to haue in mynde
 Vpon þeire fall by vnware violence
 ffrom þeire estates of roiall excellence
 And befor all I rede hough þat þer cam
 Of all Israel kyng Ieroboam 1470
 ¶Vnto myn auctour he began declare
 His dedelie compleint with a ^{^ful^} pale face
 His grete mischevis and his evyl fare
 And hough he fel down from his knyghtlie place
 Thurgh grete vnhappes which did his hert embrace
 And as his storie pleyndly hath devisid
 ffor his offence hough he was chastysid
 ¶And of Idolatrie . he was as it is told
 Reysid vp alters of verrey force and myght
 Þerupon set .ij. calvys of pure golde 1480
 Did þem worship agayn all skylle and right
 Gaue evyl example to þe peples sight
 Whan þat he did with fumes and incense
 Do false idols vndre reuerence
 ¶ffro þe temple he made þe peple goon
 Prestes ordeigned aftyr his own guyse
 ffor folke þe tribe of levi and ~~aron~~ aruon

And vpon Bethel his offryng gan devise
 And he did vnleful sacrifice
 Godde þat wel knowe of hym þe fals intent 1490
 ffrom Ierusalem a prophet to hym sent
 ¶ Which hym rebukyd of his mysgouernaunce
 And gan þe perils s to hym specifie
 Tolde hym afforn for to do vengeaunce
 Of david kynne . þer shuld com oon Iosie
 Which shuld his prestis þat falslie couth lie
 Manlie destrue . and sle þem all at ones
 And in to asshis brenne þem flesh *and* bones
 ¶ And in token of þeire destruccion
 The prophete tolde among þem all 1500
 Hough his alters shuld bow down
 And his Idols from þeir stages fall
 Whom þat foles þeir goddes falslie call
 Which haue no power to helpe in no maner

[33r, col. a]

ffor þei may nouþer see . feele . ne here
 ¶ Aftyr þis prophete Iadan hadde tolde
 This saide signes pleyndie to þe kyng
 His alters fel down in pecis many felde
 And ouerturnyd bakward his offryng
 ffor which þe kyng furiuslie lokyng 1510
 Put forth his hande þe storie makith mynde
 Badde his men þe prophete take and bynde
 ¶ And he as his arme raught oute on length
 Had no powere it to withdrawe agayn
 [W]ex vnweldy contracte and loste his strength
 And when þe kyng hath þeis tokens seen
 Gretelie astonyd couth say no more
 But prayd þe prophet his arme to restore
 ¶ And by his prayer and mediacion 1520
 Of his arme aftyr þis vengeaunce
 [Per] was anon made restitucion
 And of his peyn felit alegaunce
 ffor which þe kyng with ful grete instance
 Requirid hym to be so gracios
 Pat day to abide and dyne in his house
 ¶ But þe prophete wolde not assent
 Nouþer with hym to ete nor to drynke
 But toke his asse . and for anon he went
 On whos departyng þe kyng gan sore þink 1530
 And fantasies gan in his herte synk
 Speciallie whan he taketh hede
 Of all his tokyns hough þei were tru indede
 ¶ Godde bad Iadan in þis grete empris

To Ieroboam fyrste whan he was sent
Ete nor drynk in no maner wyse
In þat cite while þat he was present
But yit anoþer prophete of intent
fful olde and sligh upon þat oþer syde
Compellid hath þis Iadan to abide 1540

¶ Hym offryng by fals collusion
To t̄ resorte agayn to þe cite
And to make no contradiccion
With hym to dyne of goode fraternite
To hym affermyng . it may non oþer be
ffor godde sent hym as to hym frende *and* broþer
To abide with hym and pleyntie with non oþer

¶ Of frendhed and true affeccion
Within his house to shewe his *presence*
ffor a repaste and a refeccion 1550

This is goddes wyl and fulli his sentence
To whos wordes þe prophete gave credence
And as þei sat at diner both in fere
Godde vnto Iadan saide in þis manere

¶ ffor þe brekyng of my *commaundment*
Thy grete offence and transgression
þat þu haste ben so wylfullie negligent
þu shalt endure þis punicion
Be al totorne and rent of a lion

And in þi cuntre þu shalt not recure 1560
With *prophetes* to haue þi sepulture

¶ Of which tytynges þis Iadan noþing fayn
Gan to departe with a ful heuy þought
Of a lion amyddes of þe way slayn
But his asse armyd was right nought
A ful grete *merveile* yf it be well sought
þe lion sittyng as in þeir defen[c]e
And kepte þem both from all violence

¶ All þeis tokens myght not conuerte 1570
Ieroboam from his iniquite .

[33r, col. b]

Goddys warnyng hym liste not to aduerte
Nor by his *prophete* correctid for to be
¶ Wher for godde wolde þat he shulde se
Vengeaunce folowe right as it fel indede
Both vpon hym and eke on his kynrede
¶ A sonne he hadde which fel in ful grete seknes
Callid Abimen ~~doth~~ þe boke doth specifie
ffor which þe kyng badde þe quene hir dresse
To go disguyside withoute companie
Vnto a *prophete* which callid was Achie 1580

Hym to require . trulie for to sey
 Wheþer þe childe shulde lyve or dey
 ¶And in his inward sight contemplatine
 Godde shewyd hym by clere inspeccion
 Of Ieroboam hough she was þe wyfe
 ffor all hir sleightie transformacion
 ffor nouþer fallace nor fals decepcion
 May be to godde but it be perceyvid
 ffor he ne his prophetes may not be deceyvid
 ¶She cam to hym in a straunge weede 1590
 At þe entring he callid hir by hir name
 Com forth *quod* he for certes it is no nede
 To hide þiselfe right as it s were for shame
 ffor þe trouth trulie to ataine
 Godde haue yeue me fullie knowlechyng
 Hough þu shalt make answere vnto þe kynge
 ¶Say playnlie to hym and marke it in þi þought
 In þi repaire theis wordes rehersyng
 Sith godde made þe and reysid þe vp of nought
 ffrom a *seruaunt* to reigne as a kyng 1600
 ffro dauid kynne moste worthilie reignyng
 Partid þe kyngdam and yeven it vnto þe
 And þu vnkynde þerof canste noþing se
 ¶His grete goodnesse is oute of remembraunce
 ffullie forgetyn of þi froward pride
 In fals goddes put þin affiaunce
 And godde aboue falslie þu settyst aside
 Wherfor from þe anon he shall diuide
 Þi kyngdom hole withoute more delays
 And from þi lyne þe crown shal take away 1610
 ¶And for þu haste to þi confusion
 Þi feyth vnfeythful to fals goddes take
 Wrongfullie refusid þe religion
 Of godde aboue and pleynlie hym forsake
 Þis is þe s ende which þat þu shalt make
 The and þi kynne no man may socoure
 fflesh skynne and bone houndes shal deuoure
 ¶And at þe entring home to þi cite
 Þi sonn and his þu shalt fynde hym dede
 Of all his kynne . þof þer was non but he 1620
 ffonde verrey godde . take her of goode heede
 Of which answere þe quene fel in grete drede
 Entringe þe cite in especiall
 Hir childe was dede . and lay colde by þe wall
 ¶Of þis warnyng þe kyng toke non hede
 But made hym redie with grete apperaile
 .xl. thousand with hym he did lede
 Of manlie men armyd in plate *and* nayle

With kyng Abias to haue a grete bataile
 The which Abias þat was of Iuda kyng[e] 1630
 Vnto his peple saide at þeir metyn[g]
 ¶O noble knyghtes haue o þing in memor[ie]
 No man venquesshith platlie to conclu[de]
 With grete peple nor getith hym vic[torie]
 With noumbres hepyd or grete mult[itude]
 ffals idolatours godde wyl þem delu[de]
 Not suffre his seruauntes to be ouerlede. ^þat be [trewe and sad]^
 Of myscreauntes to be ouerle[dde]

[33v, col. a]

¶Triumphes are non founde of newe or olde
 In þeis idols of stone nor of syluer shene 1640
 Nor in calues of metall made or golde
 Yeue to þat partie which vnrulie mene
 And sith þat godde knoweth oure querele clene
 Þer is no hope force nor no myght
 With þem þat grounde þem a cause agayn right

¶Hoope of victorie standith on rigtuesnesse
 Of þem þat caste þer þeire synful lyfe to amende
 And liste forsake wronge and all falsnesse
 And with hoole herte vnto þe lorde intende
 Which all þis day his grace to yow sende 1650
 On true cause trulie to termine
 And þus Abias gan his tale fynde

¶His prestes gan þeir triumphes for to blowe
 And kyng Abias ^þurgh^ þerof his high renoun
 Gafe to his peple both high and lowe
 fful manlie confort and consolacion
 And .l. thousand by true computacion
 Were slayn þat day which ful prouddie cam
 Vpon þe partie of Ieroboam

¶And all þe partie of Ieroboam 1660
 And all þat were of his line borne
 Aftyr þis bataile vnto mischefe cam
 Whan þei were slayn with houndes al totorn
 As þe prophete hadde tolde beforene
 But for þe kyng toke þerof noon hede
 With soden vengeaunce god quit hym his mede

De casu Zaree Regis Ethiopie

Aftyr hym to Bochas did appere
 Nexte in ordre pleylnlie as I fynde
 On zareas with a sorowfull chere
 And he was kyng of Ethiope and Inde 1670
 Whos ren were with wepyng almost blynde
 Prayng myn auctour his vnhappy chaunce
 With oþer woful to put in remembraunce

¶ And þat he wolde recorde also by scripture
 His sodden fall and dolorus distresse
 And his diffamus hateful discomfiture
 With þe dispoiling of his grete richesse
 And hough þat kyng Asa þurgh his high noblesse
 In myddes of his peplie as he did hym assaile
 Hath hym venquissid and slayn in bataile 1680

De casu Achab Regis Israhel

Of Israel þer cam þe woful kyng
 Callid Achab ful pitvuslie wepyng
 Hough kyng Basa by subtil fals werkyng 1684
 Vnto Bochas his compleint rehersyng 1683
 With soden slaughter causid his fallyng
 Whan fortune gan falslie on hym frown
 And toke vniustlie from hym scepte and crown

De casu Zambrie principis

Next cam Zambrias a prince ful vengeable
 Which slough kyng holam by ful fals treson
 Pat founde also fortune ful vnstable 1690
 ffor þis zambrias of intencion
 [Ha]th mordred hym within þe chefe dongeon
 [Of] his castel with a ful grete route
 [As] he vnwarlie laide a sege aboute
 ¶ [But] Anarine a prince of ful grete might
 [Cam] into Tharse a famus grete cite
 [And ca]ste hym pleylnlie like a worthy knyght
 [On þ]is zambrias avengid for to be 1698

[Into a] toure as zambrias went 1699
 [Set it a fyre] and so hymselfe he brent 1700

¶ [With] sighyng sore and wepyng importable
 [Cam kyn]g Achab vnto Iohn Bochas
 [Whos he]rtlie sorow was incomparable.

[33v, col. b]

And compleynyng ful oft he saide allas
 Besechyng hym to write his woful case
 Compile his fallyng and his fate in fere
 Of Athalie his own doughter dere
 ¶ To godde aboue moste contrarius
 This Achab was in all his gouernaunce 1710
 And hadde a wife cruel and lecherus
 Callid Iezabel which for all hir plesaunce
 On goddes prophetes for to do vengeaunce
 In þe bible þeir malice men may se
 And Idolatoures þei were both he and she
 ¶ Godde for þeir trespas as it was wel seyn
 Afforn shewyd by true prophecie

Sent .iiij. yere nouþer dewe nor reyn
 Tyl efte agayn Vpon þe erth þeir graine [to multiplie]
 Tyl efte agayn by prayer of hely 1720
 Holsom watyrs from hevyn gan descende
 Which gaue þem cause þeir cursid lyfe to ame[nde]
 ¶But his wyfe þat cursid Iezabell
 To yche þing hateful which þat was diuine
 An .C. prophetis she slough in Israel
 Vnto Baal þeine wolde not incline
 And she also slough Naboth for his vine
 Thurgh whos outrage and fals oppression
 Achab was brought to his confusion
 ¶Of his eniemies outraied in batalie 1730
 With a sharpe arowe ~~by bledyng ded faile~~ ^caught his fatal wounde^
 Tyl al his blode . by bledyng did faile
 Aboute his chare with many dropys rownde
 Pat þe wordes were ful true founde
 Of helias which tolde hym as it stode
 Pat hungrie houndes shuld lykken his blode
 ¶And in a cite called Iesrael
 Doun from a toure ioynyng to a wall
 Pei saide quene callid Iezabel
 Was ouer caste and a dedelie fall 1740
 Touchyng þeis myschevys for she was cause of all
 Beware ye princes remembryng all *your* lyves
 To eschewe fals counsaile yeven by *your* wyves
**De Casu Sotholie Regine . cognate Regis Ioram
 que fecit ipsum Iora occidi . vt ipsa sola regetur Iuda**
NExte to Achab in ordre þer did & su // **et Ierusalem**
 Sotholia with dooful countenance
 Bochas besechyng as she þought it du
 Hir soden fall to put in remembraunce
 Sours and chefe of sorow and mischaunce.
 Vsurpacion and of fals couetise
 Lyke as hir storie herafter shal deuyse. 1750
 ¶She was vpreysid by fauour in .iiij. þinges
 ffor fadre. broþer. and also husbonde
 Were in þat tyme ichon crownyd kynges
 With sceptre and sworde as ye shal vndrestond
 Many emprises ^in^ þeir days tok on honde
 And hough fortune þat highnes did assaile
 I purpos shortlie to make rehersalie
 ¶She fell of fortune þe vnhappy bondes
 ffyrste whan hir fadre was with an arow dede
 His blode vplykkyd with cruel hungrie houndes 1760
 About his chare rennyng down ful rede
 His bodie pale lay who þat toke hede
 Lyk a bareyn naykd and dispoilid

With ~~f~~-foule blak erth myd þe felde desoylid
¶Cause of anoþer vnhappy hevynesse
And of hir dedelie desolacion
Was þe peple fully did þem dresse
Of Arabie in þeire rebellion
Agayn hir husband of intencion
To robbe his tresoure to þeir avauntage 1770
And his richesse by outragius pillage

[34r, col. a]

¶Somme of his mony þei putten on prison
Ther was agayn þem maked no defence
Sparid nouþer cite burgh nor town
Slough man and chylde by sturdie violence
[Hi]r lorde infecte with contagius pestilence
[C]onceyvid fullie by his maladie
[Ðer] was no geyn but he muste die
¶[A]ftyr þis deth moste wrechid and odible 1780
His bodie corrupte his bowelis fall down

Of his careyn þe stynk was so horrible
The eyre infecte aboute hym environ
[W]ith so grete horroure and putrefaccion
[T]hat non myght abide nor endure
[To] bryng his bodie to sepulture
¶[Hir] thyrde vnhap wher of she was ful fayn
[T]hat fortune liste hir efte assaile
[M]ade hir vncler kyng Ioram to be slayn
[W]ith an arowe as he fledde in bataile
[S]he supposyng it gretelie shulde availe 1790
[Lyke] a woman moste furius and woode

[S]he kyng Daid slough þe roiall blode
¶Hir purpose was to gouerne all þe realme
Allon hirselle to haue *dominacion*
To reigne in Iuda and Ierusalem
This Sitholia by vsurpacion
And for þat cause in hir intencion
With mortal sworde she made all þo to fyne
Þat were descended from Daid down by lyne

¶Excepte on Ioas þer lefte non alyve 1800
Chylde of a yere son of kyng Occhosie
Whom Iosaketh þe storie doth descryve
Of verrai pite caught a fantasie
The chylde to saue þat he shal not die
ffrom þe malice of Sotholia
And she was wyfe to bishop Ioiada
¶She and þis bisshop with hole hert *and* intiere
Kepte þis childe in ful secrete wyse
Within þe temple þe space of .vij. yere

And in þe .vij. yere . þe storie doth devise 1810
 Ioiada toke on hym þis Empris
 Yong Ioas within a certen day
 By iuste title to crowne hym yf he may
 ¶His messengers he sendith oute anon
 Of princes tribunes gan a counsel call
 Of prestes eke and leuites euerychon
 And whan he hadde discourid to þem all
 Hoole his intent þus it is befall
 Sworne and assentid as it was sitting
 Pat Yonge Ioas shal be crownyd kyng 1820
 ¶ffor by promise which þat is diuine
Quod Ioiada yf ye take goode heede
 Godde hath behestyd to dauid and his lyne
 And assuryd vnto his kynrede
 In *Ierusalem* hough þei shall succede
 And þof Ioas be yong *and* tendre of age lyghte
 He to þe crown hath neuerþelesse right
 ¶In þis matier I wyl not þat ye slepe
 But to shewe yowre true diligence
 On iiij. parties þe temple for to kepe 1830
 Pat no man entre by no violence
 And in þe myddes by roiall excellence
Quod þis bishop no man shal vs lete
 On Ioas hede a crown for to set
 ¶And whan iche þing was brought vnto þe poynte
 His high estate to increce and magnifie
 The peple anon whan he was enoynte
 Viuat rex þei began to crie
 And whan Sotholia gan þis þing espie

[34r, col. b]

ffor verray Ire and þe soden wondre 1840
 Of melancolie hir clothis cut asondre
 ¶Ran to þe temple and gan make affray
 With hir meyne and to crie lowde
 Badde þem go sle and make no delay
 Þe yonge Kyng in all þe haste þei h̄ cowde
 Hir venym hidde vndre a couerte clowde
 All at onys hir purpose to recure
 By sodon malice she gan þat day discure
 ¶The temple kepte . ~~intre~~ entres had she non 1850
 Peple ordeigned awaytyng for þe nonys
 ^And or she myght eny forþer g[on]^
 Clenlie armyd þe centurionys
 Þe cruel quene assailed all at ones
 And of hir malice to write a shorte tale
 They slough hir aftyr of Cedron in þe vale

¶ Lo here þe ende . of mordir and tirannie
Lo here þe ende of vsurpacion
Lo here þe ende of fals conspirici
Lo here þe ende of fals *presumpcion*
By vnrightful eyres wronglie to put þem doun 1860
O noble princes þof godde haue made yow stronge
To rightful eyres beware ye do no wronge

¶ This Tragedie . þe estates and degres
ffullie declareth þe decepcions
Of fortune fals mutabilites
Shewyd in *provinces* cites and eke townes
Prynces vnwarlie lost þeire possessiones
Which from þeir synnes in no maner wyse
Hadde of godde warnyng *and* liste not for to aryse 1870

¶ Myghty kynges caste down from þeir sees
Lost þeir lyfes and þeir regions
Vnwarlie throwen from þeir felicities
Ieroboam for his oppressiones
And for his frowarde fals oblaciones
Doon to Idols his storie doth devise
Hadde of godde warnyng . and list not to arise

¶ Achab hadde also grete aduersitees
Thurgh fals counsaile and extorcions
Of Iesabel rote of iniquites
Did to his peple grete destrucciones 1880
She slough *prophetes* and goddes champions
Both he and she moste cursid in þeir guyse
Hadde of godde warnyng *and* list not to aryse

¶ Sotholia with hir duplicites
And conspirid fals intracions
Slough Daud seede . to entre þeir dignites
And to possede þeir dominaciones
But for hir hateful fals collusions
Vnwarlie slayn for hir grete couetyse
Hadde of godde g warnyng *and* list not to aryse 1890

¶ Prynces remembrith in youre prosperites
And seth afforn in youre discreciones
Wrong clymyng vp of estates or degres
Ouper by modre or by fals tresons
Askith a fall for þeir finall guerdons
Namelie of þem þat þe lorde despise
And for no warnyng liste not to arise
De casu Didonis Regine · que fundauit Cartaginem

Now must I put my rude stile in pres
To quene Dido make my passag[e]
Hir lorde Siche · was preste to h[ercules] 1900
Hir fadre Belas fall into grete ag[e]
Kynge of Tyre and she quene of C[artage]

And it is redde in bookes þat be t[rewe]

[34v, col. a]

Hough fyrste in Tyre was founde purpul hewe

¶ Cadmus founde fyrste *lettres* for to write

Gafe þem to Grekes as made is mencion

Whos broþer ffenix as clerkes eke indite

ffounde fyrste þe colour of vermylon

And of Cartage þo famus myghty town

This saide Dido hyr storie doth expresse

1910

Hough she was both quene and founderesse

¶ But hir husbond was chefe lorde and sire

Callid Cicheus ful famus of renoun

Of þis noble cite namyd Tire

Hadde grete tresoure and grete possession

And for envie kyng Pigmalion

Broþer to Dido þus she slough in dede

Of fals intent his riches to possede

¶ Dido þis slaughter toke greteli at hert

Sore compleynyng þis vnhappy chaunce

1920

fflein oute of Tire and hirselle avaunce

1922

With all þe tresoure and all þe habundaunce

Behynd lefte whan hir lorde was dede

Hir shippes entryng went away for drede

¶ She knewe and dredde þe gredie avarice

Of hir broþer kyng pigmalion

¶ And hough þat hateful and vnstable vice

Was grounde and rote and chefe occasioun

Why þat hir lorde was slayn in þat townn

1930

ffor whom ful oft she cried welaway

Whos deth was cause whi þat she fled away

¶ She hadde also þis opinion

Which causid moste hir hertlie hevynesse

That she hir broþer Kyng Pigmalion

Hadde sle hir lorde for his grete richesse

Yf she abode þat she wolde hym dresse

Parcel for malice · *parcel* for couetyse

To haue hir tresoure som treson to practise

¶ And for to eschewe his malice and his tresoun

1940

ffor hir naveie she makith ordinaunce

Boldest of þem in whom as by resoun

She shulde of right set hir affiaunce

And ful redy for to do plesaunce

By on assent for noþing wolde faile

With fayre Dido oute of þat lande to assaile

¶ In cypre fyrst was hir aryvaile

And þer she fonde by a ryuersyde

Of yong maydyns with ful rich apperaile

Sixti and tenn · in þe same tyde 1950
 Which in þe temple of venus did abyde
 Aftyr þe custom as I can reporte
 Of Cipriens straungers to disporte
 ¶ In þeir moste feithful humble wyse
 Aftyr þe rites of Cipre þe cuntre
 Vnto venus ich day do sacrifice
 Them to conserue in þeire virginite
 Duryng þe lyfe to lyve in chastite
 Neuer to be ioynyd in mariage
 [A]nd with Quene Dido þei went forth to Cartage 1960
 ¶ [In] þeire passage fell a grete miracle
 [As] Seruius maketh mencion
 [For] Dido toke of Iuno þis oracle
 [Oþer] by apperying or by a vision
 [Of] Cartage to belde þat myghty town
 [And at] reuerence of þat grete goddessse
 [She to] parties fast gan hir dresse
 ¶ [The] saide cite statelie for to founde
 [And hir] workmen as þei þiddyrsought
 [An oxes he]de of aventure þei founde 1970
 [And to Que]ne Dido þe hede anon þei brought

[34v, col. b]

Menyng wherof to serche oute she thought
 And in clerkes in þeire diuinaile
 Tolde it was tokyn of *seruage* and *travaile* ·
 ¶ ffor which she lefte to belde in þat place
 And gan remove as she ought of right
 And from þens but a litle space
 A soile she founde ful delectable of sight
 And as hir werkmen with þeir ful myght
 Þe grounde gan serche anon or þei toke hede 1980
 The storie tellith þei founde an horse hede ·
 ¶ And by expounyng of hir diuinacions
 ffonde þis beste gretlie myght availe
 Vnto *princes* and myghty conqueroures
 Necessarie in werre and in bataile
 And for no wight hir nobles shuld assaile
 Cartage she beldid of so grete excellence
 Agayne all ennemies to stonde at defence
 ¶ Som bookes declare and specifie
 Dido did as mich londe purches 1990
 As a skyn in rownde myght occupie
 Of an ox · þeron to belde a place
 Þe grounde compasside toke a ful large space ·
 Which stronglie beldid · þus it is befall
 Aftyr þe skynne · men did B it Birsa calle

¶ And whan þis cite myghtilie was wallid
Aftyr a skyn wrought by good corraie
The name ~~toke~~ ^take^ Carta it was callid
Leddyr of Birsa · pleynlie þis is no nay
Toke eke ~~it~~ his name duryng many a day 2000
Carta *and* Birsa knyht in þeir language
As mych to say as þis worde Cartage ·

¶ And in Affrik stonidith þe territorie
Where she beldeþ þe cite delectable ·
ffoundid it in laude and memorie
Of myghti Iuno þe goddessse honorable
The Cite wallid with tourys stronge *and* stable
Tyme of kyng David myd þe iiiijth · age ·
As I saide erste callid it Cartage ·

¶ With grete worship she reigned in þat town 2010
Euer of purpos to lyue in chastite
And rownde aboute flourid þe renown
Of hir prudence and hir honeste ·
Tyl þe reporte of hir famus beaute
Cam to þe eris · which gladlie wyl not hyde
Of a kyng þat dwellyd þer besyde ·

¶ Of musitans he was lorde and syre
As poetis playnlie liste descryve
Which in his herte gretelie gan desire
The quene dido by hir assent to lyue 2020
Vnto hir grace yf he myght aryve
But for she hadde avowed chastite
She neuer caste ~~wowed~~ ^married^ for to be ·

¶ The kyng supprid with loue in his corage
ffor hir wysdam and hir grete beaute
Sent to þe princes of all Cartage
Of þis matier to haue a grete trete
To condescende yf it myght be
Lyke his desire in all þeire best intende
Don þeir deuer · to make her to consent 2030

¶ With his request he gan þem eke ~~manee~~ ^manace^
If he faylid of his intencioun
Lyke his desire to stonde in his grace
Sayde he wolde ~~lyue~~ be enmye to þe town
To ordeigne by force for þeire destruccioun
Not fully sobre nor fully a in a rage

[35r, col. a]

This was to þem pleynlie his language
¶ But for þei knewe hir grete stedfastnesse
And hir hert verreie immutable
They were afferde any worde to expresse 2040
[L]est þeire answer were not acceptable

[T]o his highnesse for þei were no tretable
 [E]ke in þeire conceit þei gan also recorde
 [T]o his desire · þe quene wolde not accorde
 ¶[W]ith good advise an answeere þei purveide
 To his purpos in partie fauorable
 [A]fferde he wolde þeire noble town verrey
 [A]nd of disdeigne vpon þem be vengeable
 [Bu]t quene Dido in hir intente ay stable
 [Ca]ste she wolde · whateuer þei hir tolde 2050
 [H]ir chaste avowe feithfullie to holde
 ¶She set aside of þis cruel kyng
 [H]is fell manaces and his wordes grete
 [A]nd to hir princes for þeir consentyng
 Which stode in fere of þat he did þem threte
 She vnto þem gaue a maner hete
 ffor þei were bold attemp or tame
 To trete of matier rebowndyng to hir shame
 ¶Nay raper *quod* she þan to assent
 To þis desyre which þing godde forbede 2060
 Or fro þo cuntre of my chaste intente
 ffor to remove ouþer in þought or dede
 Which were disclaundre to all womanhed
 To condescende for eny manacyng
 To breke my vowe for plesaunce of a kyng
 ¶Touchyng manaces made to þis cite
 ffor to destrue it þurgh his grete myght
 Withoute cause or title of equite
 To grownde hym a querel agayn right
 Onlie for he is blyndyd in his sight 2070
 With frowarde luste my chaste vowe to assaile
 Beth right wele sure · hough ^{^he^} þerof shal fayle
 ¶If ye were bolde and manlie of corage
 ffor comyn profit youre cite to defende
 And to withstonde youre vicius outrage
 To trete with hym ye wolde not condescende
 But myn intent pleynlie *comprehende*
 Wheþer it to yow be ioy or displesaunce
 In my promisse shal be no variance
 ¶My lorde Sitheus which allas is dede 2080
 Vnto þe ~~wol~~ worlde whoso liste aduerte
 Trustith right well for manacyng or drede
 þat he shal neuer die in myn herte
 Nor ye shal neuer myn avowe peruerte
 Thus advisid while þat I stonde fre
 Quene of Cartage to gouerne þis cite ·
 ¶Myn hasty answeere I pray yow not disdeigne
 But þat ye liste to yeve me liberte
 With youre supporte þat I may atteine

To haue a space grauntid vnto me 2090
 This is to mene þe space of monethes thre
 My lordes wyll to accomplish of intente
 Which he whilom made in his testament
 ¶ Vndre colour to hir avauntage
 She toke þis space bookes specifie
 Pat she myght hir cite of Cartage
 In þe mene while stronglie fortifie
 Agayn hir ennemies þat for no slogardrie
 Of þem þat wolde hir high estate confounde
 Vnpurveide hir Cite þat þei founde 2100
 ¶ When · iij · monethes passid were and goonn
 She aftyr wolde for hir hertlie plesaunce
 With sundrie rites many mo þan oon
 To all hir goddes doonn som obseruaunce ·

[35r, col. b]

ffor a special ^and^ singler remembraunce
 Of hym þat was as folk shal vndrestond
 Whilom hir lorde and best beloved husband
 ¶ And nere to exalte his glorie and his honour
 Holde his exequies by du reuerence
 Of all Cartage in þe highest toure 2110
 With brennyng fyre fumys and incense
 Hir princes all beyng in presence
 To which she gan declare in compleynyng
 Hir dedelie sorowe down from hir toure lokyng
 ¶ ffare wele my frende fare wel for euermore
 Vnto my lorde my husband I muste goon
 To hym I mene þat was my lorde of yore
 ffor of husbandes godde wote I haue but oon
 Prayng yow to reporte euerychonn
 Aftyr my deth hough Dido of Cartage 2120
 Ioynyd was but onys in mariage ·
 ¶ Sey to þe kyng which haue yow manacid
 My chaste beaute þat he wolde assaile
 And telle hym hough þat I am passid
 And of his purpos hough þat he shal fayle
 His manacyng shal not hym availe
 And say hough dido died for þe nones
 ffor she not wolde be weddyd more þan ones ·
 ¶ Leuer I haue my lyfe as now to lese
 Raþer þan saile my wydowes chastite 2130
 Lete hym go forth som oþer for to chese
 ffor in such case he shal not spede of me ·
 And with þe tresour' of myn honeste
 Which I haue trulie obseruyd all my lyve ·
 I wyl departe out of þis worlde now blyve ·

¶ And into fyre þat brent clere and bright
She ranne in haste þer is no more to seyn
Sawe with a knyfe in euery mannes sight
fful sodenlie she rafe hir hert in tweyn
Whos pitevus deth þe cite gan compleyn 2140
Sore wepyng for wondur and for routh
In a woman to fynde so grete a trowth

¶ Aftyr hir deth þei did þeire bysynesse
To holde an halow a feste funerall
Worshippid hir like a chaste goddesse
And hir commendyng in especiall
To heuenlie goddes and goddes infernall
And wedowys all in þeire clopis blake
At þis feste wepte for hir sake

¶ Touchyng Dido · lete þer be no stryfe 2150
Pof þat she be accusid of Ovide
Aftyr Bochas I wrote hir chaste lyfe
And þe contrarie I haue set it asyde
ffor me þought it was better to abyde
On hir goodnesse þan þing reherse in dede ·
Which myght resown agayn hir womanhede

¶ To Eneas þof she was faorable
To Italie makyng his passage
All þat she did it was full commendable 2160
Hym to receyve commyng by Cartage
Thof al som folke were large of þeire lang[uage]
Ones to expown by reporte to expresse
Thyng doon to hym oonlie of gentilnesse

¶ Ther shal for me be made no rehersaile
But as I fynde writen in Bochas
ffor to say well may mych more availe
Than frowarde speche in many diuerse case
But al Cartage oft saide allas
Hir deth compleynyng þurghoute þeir [cite]
Which slough hirselle to obserue hir chas[tite] 2170

[35v, col. a]

¶ O fayre Dido moste stable in þi constaunce
Quene of Carta · mirroure of high noblesse
Reignyng in glorie and vertuus habundance
Callid in þi tyme chefe sours of gentilnesse
In whom was neuer founde doublenesse
Ay of oon herte and so þu didiste fyne
With light of trowth all wedowes to illumine
¶ Chaste and vnchaungid in þi perseuerance
And immutable founde in þi goodnesse 2180
Which neuer þoughtist vpon variance
fforce and prudence wardens of þi fayrnesse

I haue no language þi vertues to expresse
By newe reporte so socreteli þei do shyne
With light of trouth all widowes to illumine
¶ O loodesterre of all goode gouernaunce
All vicius lustes by wysdam to represse
Thy grene youth flouryng with all plesaunce
Þu dedist it bridill with vertuus sobrenesse
Diane demenyd so chastlie þi clenness
While þu were sole pleyndie to *termyne* 2190
With lyght of trouth all wydowes to illumine

¶ Thy famus beaute to put in remembraunce
Þu slough þiselfe of innocent purnesse
Leste þi surenes were hangyde in a balance
Of such as caste þi chastite to oppresse
Deth was enough to bere þerof witness
Causyng þi beaute to clenness to incline
With light of trouth all wydowes to illumine
¶ O noble matrones which haue of suffisaunce 2200
Of womanhede *your* wittes doth vp dresse
Hough þat fortune lyste to turne hir chaunce
Beth not to racle of soden hastynesse
But ay providith in youre stablenesse
Pat no such foly entre youre corage
To folow Dido þat was quene of Cartage

¶ With hyr maners haue non aqueyntaunce
Put oute of ~~my~~ ^mynde^ such foltish wylfulness
To sle youreselfe were a grete penaunce
Godde of his grace defende yow and blysse
And *preserue* youre varyyng britilnesse 2210
Pat youre trouth fall in non outrage
To folow Dido þat was quene of Cartage

¶ With *couerte* coloure and sobre contaunce
Of feithful menyng pretendith a liknesse
Countrefetith in speche and daliaunce
All þing þat sowndith into stedfastnesse
Of prudence by grete avisenesse
Youreselfe restreynyth yonge and olde of age
To folow Dido þat was quene of Cartage

¶ Lete all youre porte be voide of displeaunce 2220
To gete in frendes doth youre bysynesse
And beth *neuer* withoute purveiaunce
So shall ye beste increse in richesse
In oon allon may be no sicurnesse
To youre hertes be diuerse of language
Contrarie to Dido þat was quene of Cartage

¶ Holdith your' *seruantes* vndre obeisaunce
Lete þem nouþer haue fredam nor largesse
But vndre daunger don þeire obseruaunce

Dauntith þeir pride · þem brydil with lownesse 2230
And whan þe serpent of newfanglenesse
Assaileth yow · doth youre avantage
Contrarie to Dido þat was quene of Cartage
**De casu Sardinopalli Regis Assiriorum et
de eius feminea ei condicione**

[35v, col. b]

Of Assirie to rekyn kynges all
Which hadde þat londe vndre subieccion
Laste of ichon was Sardinapall
Moste feminine of condicion
Wherfor fortune hath hym þrowe down
And compleynyng moste outhlie of maner
Nexste aftyr Dido to Bochas did appere · 2240

¶ To vicius luste his lyfe he did incline
Among disers when he his reigne began
Of fals vsage he was so feminine
Pat among women vpon þe rokke he span
In þeire habit disguysid from a man
And of froward fleshlie insolence
Of all men he fledde þe presence
¶ ffyrste þis kynge ches to be his guyde
Modre of vices callide Idlenesse
Which of custom ich vertu set asyde 2250

In iche courte wher she is maistresse
Of sorow and mischefe þe fyrste foundresse
Which causid oonlie in þis Sardanapall
Pat to all goodness his wittes did appall
¶ He founde vp fyrste riot and dronknesse
Callid a fadre of luste and lecherie
Hateful of harte he was to sobrenesse
Cherisshyng surefetes wache and glotenye
Callid in his tyme a prince of baudrie
ffounde rere soppers and feddyr beddes softe 2260

Drynke late *and* change his wynes ofte
¶ The eyre of ~~mete~~ metes · and of baudie cookes
Which of custom all day roste and sede
Savours of spites ladil and fleshhokes
He lovid well and toke of þem goode heede
And folke þat dranke more þan it was nede
Smellyng of wyne for þeir grete excesse
With þem to abide was holy his gladnesse
¶ He þuog þought also þat it did hym goode
To haue abought hym agayn al skylle *and* right 2270
Boristous bochers all besprent with bloode
And wattrie fysshers abrode euer in his sight
Peire cootes powdrid with scales syluer white

Demp þeir odour duryng all his lyfe
 Was to his corage beste *perseruatife*
 ¶ffor þer was herbe spice nor rote
 To hym so lusty as was þe bordelhouse
 Nor garden non so holsom and so sote
 To his plesaunce nor non so delicius
 As þe presence of folkes lecherus 2280
 And euer gladde to speke of ribaudie
 And folke to cherish þat couth flater and lie
 ¶Til at þe laste godde of verrey right
 Displesid was with his condicions
 Because he was in euery mannys sight
 So feminine in his affeccions
 And holy gaue his inclinacions
 Duryng his lyfe to euery vicius þing
 Terrible for to here and namelie of a kynge
 ¶But as Bochas liste to put in mynde 2290
 Whan Arbachus a prince of grete renown
 Sawe of þis kyng þe fleshlie lustes blynde
 Made with þe peple of þat region
 Agayn hym an ordinaunce
 And to hym sent for his mysgouernaunce
 Of high disdeigne a ful pleyn diffiaunce
 ¶Badde hym beware and prowdlie to hym tolde
 Pat he hym caste his vicius lyfe to assaile
 And in all haste also þat he wolde
 Within a felde mete hym in bataile 2300
 Wherof astonyd his hert gan to fayle **[end of quire 3]**

[36r, col. a]

Where among women he sat and made gaudes
 No wyght aboute but flaterers and baudes
 ¶And vp he rose and gan hymselfe avaunce
 No stuffe with hym but surefetoures
 Toke þe felde withoute governaunce
 No men abought but fooles and riotoures
 Whos aduersarie callid Arbachus
 Made hym prowdelie þe felde to forsake
 That lyke a Cowarde his castell ha hath take 2310
 ¶And for his herte frowardlie gan fayle
 Not lyke a knyght but lyke a losengeoure
 [H]is riche perre · his roiall apperaile
 [H]is golde his Iuelles vesels and tresoure
 Was brought afforn hym down out of a toure
 In myddes of his pales and gaue his men in charge
 Of coole and faget to make a fyre full large ·
 ¶In which he caste his tresoure and Iewellis
 More bestiall þan I like a manlie man

And in myddes of his riches · stones and vesels 2320
 And into þe fyre furiuslie he ranne
 This triumphe Sardanapal wanne
 With fyre consumyd for his finall mede
 Brent all to asshis amonge þe coles rede
 ¶ Beforn his deth badde men shuld write
 Vpon his Grave ~~ð~~ þe booke doth specifie
 With *lettres* large þis reson for to indite
 My cursid lyf my froward Tirannie
 Myn idlennesse myn hateful lecherie
 Haue causid me with many false desyre 2330
 In my laste dayes to be consumid with fyree
 ¶ This Epitaphie on his Grave he set
 To shewe hough he was in all his lyve
 Besy *euer* to hyndre and to lette
 Al *maner* vertu and þeragayn to stryve
 Who followeth þe traces is neuer lyke to thryve
 ffor which ye *princes* seth for youre availe
 Vengeance *euer* foloweth vices at þe taylor ·
 ¶ Ther were eke oþer þat liste falslie provide 2340
 False fleshlie lustes and dissolucions
 Roiot outrage frowarde disdeigne *and* pride
 Vices to enhaunce in þeire affeccions
 With many vnleful crokyd condicions
 Reson avoydyng as I reherce shall
 Themselfe delityng for to be bestiall
 ¶ Tweyn *maner* folkes to put in remembrance
 Of vice and vertu and set a difference
 Þe goode alway haue set þeir plesaunce
 In vertuus labour to don þeire diligence
 And vicious peple in slouth and negligence 2350
 And þe reporte of both is reservid
 With laude or lake lyke as þei haue deserued
 ¶ Men muste of right þe vertuus preferre
 And truly prayse labour and besynesse
 Agaynwarde dispreyse folke þat erre
 Which haue no ~~ȝ~~ ioy but in idlennesse
 And to compare by a *maner* witnessse
 Vertuus folke I wyl to mynde call
 In rebukyng of kyng Sardanapall
 ¶ The olde wyseman Pictagoras 2360
 Reson of hamris auctours certifie
 Example toke and chefe maistre was
 Pat fonde oute fyrste Musik and melodie
 Yit of Tuball som bookes specifie
 That he by stroke of smythes þer þei stode
 Found fyrste oute Musik before Noes flode
 ^¶ De Inuentoribus diuersarum artium^

¶ And Iosephus remembrith by scripture
That þis Tuball couth forge right well
ffyrste ymagend makyng of armure
With instrumentes of Irine and of stele
And þeire tempers he founde oute euerydele

[36r, col. b]

Lucius Tarquine in storie as I fynde
ffonnde cheynys fyrste folkes to fettyr and bynde
¶ The chyldren of Seth in storie ye may se
fflouryng in vertu by longe successions
ffor to profit · to þeire prosperite ·
ffonde fyrste þe crafte of the hevynlie mocions
Of sundrie sterres þe reuolucions
Bequathe þeire connyng for grete avauntage
To þem þat cam aftyr of þeire linage

¶ ffor þere vertu godde gave þem grete connyng
Touchyng natures both of erth and hevynn
And it remembrid sothlie by wrytyng
To lasten ay for watyr ðf or for levyn
Generations þer were of þem seven
Which of vertu withoute werre or stryfe
Traveld in connyng duryng al þeire lyfe

¶ And for þat Adam did prophecie
Twys þe worlde s destrued shuld be
With water ones stonde Ieopardie
Next with fyre which no man f may fle
But þe children of Seth all þis did se
Made .ij. pillers where men myghte grave
ffro fyre and water þe carectes for to saue ·

¶ That on was made of Tylez harde combake
For touche of fyre to saue euer þe scripture
Of harde marble þei did anoþer make
Agayne watyr strongelie to indure
To saue of lettres þe printe and þe figure
ffor þeire connyng afforn gan provide
ffro fyre and water perpetuallie to abide

¶ They dempte þeir connyng hadde ben in veyn
But folk with þem hadde be partable
And for þeir labour shuld aftyrwarde be seyn
They it remembrid by wrytyng ful notable
In þe sight of godd a thyng ful commendable
To þem folowe by scripture or wrytyng
Or þat men die departe with þeir connyng

¶ ffor be olde tyme men diuerse craftes founde
In sondrie wyse for occupacion
Vertu to cherish and vices to confounde
Theire wit þei set and þeir intencioun

To put þe labour in execucion
 And to vntray þis is verrey trouth
 ffro mannes lyfe negligence and slouth
 ¶ Olde Ennok ful famus of vertu
 Duryng þat age fonde fyrste of euerychonn
 Thurgh his prudence *lettres* of hebrue
 And in a pillere þei were kepte of stone
 Tyl þat þe floode of Noe was goon 2420
 And aftyr hym Cham · was the secunde
 By whome of hebrue þe *lettres* were fyrste founde
 ¶ And Catacrismus þe fyrste was þat founde
Lettres also as of þat langage
 But *lettres* writen with goddes own hand
 Moyses fyrste toke moste bright of his visage
 Vpon Sinna as he helde his passage
 Which of carectes and names in sentence
 From oþer wrytyng hadde a difference
 ¶ Eke aftyrwarde as oþer bookes telle 2430
 And Seint Jerom reherseth in his stile
 Vndre þe Empire of Zorobabell
 Esdras of hebrue gan *lettres* fyrste compile
 And Abraham gan sith a grete while
 The fyrst he was in bookes men may se
 Þat founde *lettres* of Cire and of Chalde
 ¶ Isis in Egipte founde diuersite
 Of sundrie *lettres* partid into tweyn
 Fyrste to prestes and þe comenalte
 Vulgare *lettres* he did also ordeigne 2440
 And Phenices did þeir besy peyn
Lettres of Greke to fynde of þeir intent
 Which þat Cadmus fyrst in to Grece s[ent]

[36v, col. a]

¶ Which in nounbre fully were · xvij
 Whan of Troy was endid þe bataile
 Palamides þeire language to sustene
 Put .iiij. þer to which gretelie did availe
 Pidagoris for prudent *gouvernaile*
 ffounde fyrste oute · Y · a figure to discernen
 Peir lyfe here shorte · and lyfe þat is eterne · 2450
 ¶ ffyrst latin *lettres* of oure A · B · C ·
 Carventes founde of full high prudence
 Grete Omerus in Isidre ye may se
 Founde emong Grekes crafte of elequence
 Fyrste in Rome by souereigne excellence
 Of Retic Tullius fonde þe floures
 Ple and defence of subtile oratoures

¶ Callicrates a Grauer most notable
Of white zeuour dide his bysynesse
His hand his ies so iuste were and stable 2460
Of oon ampte to graue oute þe liknesse
Vpon þe grounde as nature doth þem redresse
This crafte he founde as Sardanpall
Founde idlenesse modre to vices all
¶ Offa scryven Bochas makith mencion
Hough in a scrowe in a litle quantite
Wrote of all troy þe destruccion
Folowyng Omerus by grete subtilite
Which amonge Grekes is hadde in grete dignite
Because he ~~wrote~~ fonde in his writyng 2470
So compendius þe storie rehersyng
¶ Mirmychides made a chare also
And a small ship with all þe apperaile
So þat a Be myghts close þem both two ·
Vndre his wynges which is agrete mervaile ·
And no þing seen of all þe hole entaile
This crafte he founde of vertuus bysynesse
To eschewe þe vice of frowarde idlenesse ·
¶ Pan godde of g kynde with his peces .vij.
Of recorders founde fyrste þe melodies 2480
And Mercurie þat sit so high in hevyn
Fyrste in his harpe fonde sugrid armonies
Holsom wynes þurgh synyd from all lies
Bachus fonde fyrste · and wynes heuy lade
Licour of licours · corage for to glade ·
¶ Perdix by compas founde oute triangle *and* line
And Euclide oute founde ~~Astronomie~~ Geometrie
And phebus founde oute crafte of medicine
Albumazar founde oute Astronomie
And Minerua gan fyrste charys to guye 2490
Iason fyrst saylid in storie it is tolde ·
Towarde Colchos to wyn þe flees of golde
¶ Ceres þe goddes fond fyrst tylth of lande
Dionisius · triumphe transitorie
And Bellonus by force oute he fonde
Conquest of knyghthode *and* in þe felde victorie
And Mars son as put is in memorie
Callid Etholus founde spers sharpe and kene
To renne in werre in plates bright *and* shene
¶ Eke Aristeus founde fyrste þe vsage 2500
Of mylke and cruddes and of hony sote 2501
ffro flyntes smet fyre daryng in þe rote 2503
And Pallas which þat may to colde do bote
ffonde onto wevyng þis is þe verray soth
[Þu]rgh hir prudence of al maner clothe

¶[An]d ffido fyrst fonde oute þe science
Of mesoures and of *proporcions*
[And] for merchauntes did his diligence
[To] fynde balance by iuste diuisions 2510

[36v, col. b]

To awoide all fraude in Cites and townes
On nouþer partie playnlie to compile
Of tru weightes þat þer were no guyle
¶Compare in ordre clerlie all þeis þinges
ffounde of olde tyme by diligent travaile
To þe plesaunce of *princes* and of *kynges*
To shew hough mych connyng may availe
And wey agaynwardes þe frowarde a pyntaile
Contrariuslie hough Sardanapall
ffounde idlenesse modre of *vices* all 2520

¶Noble *princes* here ye may wel se 2528

As in a mirroure of ful clere euidence
By many example moo þan .ij. or .iij. 2530

What harme folowith of slouth & negligen[ce]
Depe emprintyng in youre aduertence
Hough grete hyndryng doth wylful frowardn[nes]
To youre estate þurgh vicius idlenesse

¶Whan reson fallith · and sensualite
Holdith þe bridell of lecherus dissolence
And sobrenes hath lost his liberte
And to fals luste is don þe reuersence
And vice of vertu hath an apparence
Misdith *princes* and wylful rebelnesse 2540

To grete erreure of frowarde Idlenesse
¶Ther may to slouth non oþer guerdon be
Nor non oþer condigne recompence
But sorow myschefe and aduersite
Soden vengeaunce and vnware violence
Whan ye be frowarde in youre magnificence
To know þe lorde and bow yow by meknesse
To obei his preceptes and eschew idlenesse ·

De casu Amasie Regis Iuda . et Osie

IN his studie as Bochas sat musyng
With many uncouth soden fantasie 2550

To hym apperid many a worthy kyng
And befor all cam worthy Amasie
His sonn also þat callid was Iosie
Of Daud blod descendyng as I rede
Eche aftyr oþer Iuda to succede

¶ffyrst Amazias compleynyng on fortune
Causyng his grevous grete aduersites
Þe traytoresse callid in comynn

Pis kynges tweynn castyng from þeir sees
 Whos ouerturnyng from þeir dignites 2560
 Vnware fallyng dredeful and terrible
 Ben ceriuslie remembrid in þe Bible
 ¶Peire pitevus ende men may þer rede *and se*
 Hough fortune þeir *fates* did intrete
 Wherfor to eschewe and fle *proluxite*
 All tedious þing in þis *processe* to lete
 And in substaunce to geuen oute þe grete
 Of þeire fallyng in purpos not to spare
 Compendiuslie þe causes to declare
 ¶This Amazias havyng *gouvernaunce* 2570
 But ful iuste title of *sie* succession
 Pe scripture of Iuda with all þe hole *puissaunce*
 Ful pesible in his *possessioun*
 Tyl þat pride and fals *presumpcioun*
 Most frowardlie did his hert embrace
 Which all at ones made hym lose his *grace*
 ¶In herte he had a *maner* of veynglorie
 Because þat godde made hym for to *preuaile*
 In his conquest for to haue *victorie*
 Amalachites to venquish in *bataile* 2580
 Eke Gabanites as he þem did *assaile*
 Purposyng aftyr yf þat he myghte
 With Israelites of pride for to fight

[37r, col. a]

¶Vnto kyng Ioab of Israel he sent
 Hym *commandyn* obeie his *biddyng*
 And be like subiecte as were in þeire *intente*
 [His] *predecessoures* in all *maner þinges*
 [Wh]ilom to David þe noble worthy *kyng*
 [Th]is was His ^{his} sonde to Ioab plat and *playn*
 [Wh]ich by a problem þus wrote to hym *agayn* 2590
 [¶The] outhlie Thystil of þe vales *lowe*
 [P]roudelie *presumyng* aboue his *degre*
 To make his pride opynlie be *knowen*
 [Se]nt his ~~messengers~~ message to þe *Cedre tre*
 Þat his sonne weddyd myght be
 To his daughter ~~all~~ althof in *substaunce*
 [B]etwen þem two þer was a grete *discordaunce*
 But of þe foreste þe *bestes sauagine*
 In þeire *corages* hadde þer of *disdeigne*
 Of all assent ferslie dide *incline* 2600
 The thistil leves abrode upon þe *pleyn*
 Þat þer was ~~no~~ nouþer *lefe* nor *pryk* *seyn*
 Pis was þe *probleme* which Ioab by *wrytyng*
 Sent in an *Epistle* to Amazie þe *kyng*

¶ But Iosephus in his originall
 He saide *Epistles* as he doth expresse
 Seth of þeir vaile hough þe *pod* [^]*powe* [^]*powdur* [^] finall
 Of pride sent to þe high Cipresse
 Pat his daughter of excellent fayrnesse
 Vnto his son pleynlie to destryne 2610
 Myght be delyerd and haue to hir wyve .
 ¶ But a fell beste which þat beside stooode
 Of cruell Ire and indignacioun
 With feete disdeignyng þe powdre cast abrode
 High in þe eyre aboute hym environ
 The which example conceyvid of reson
 Who þat attemptith to clymbe high alofte
 With vnwar chaunge his fal is ful vnsofte
 ¶ Betwen þe Cedre of trees most roiall
 And a sharpe thistill is no conuenience 2620
 ffor betwene a Cipresse estatelie sond all
 And lothsum *podur* is as grete difference
 ffor roiall bloode shulde haue noon assistence
 To be ioynyd nor knyght in mariage
 With such as ben brought forth of low parage
 ¶ The Cedre is stronge and myghti of substaunce
 In his vprysyng right as any lyne
 And þof þe thistil haue spottes of plesaunce
 He hath eke prykkes sharpe as any spyne
 And both natures pleynlie to *termine* 2630
 The Cedre of kynde who lokith wel aboute
 To no þowthistle shulde his braunche lowte
 ¶ Holsum of odour is þe fayre Cipresse
 As bokes tell and *vertuus* of kynde
 Duste and powdir pleynlie to expresse
 Troublith þe ayre *and* makith folkes blynde
 ffor which in spousaile conuenience to fynde
 Lete estates of þeire birth honerable
 Avoide all raskall and wedde þeir semblable
 ¶ But Amazias wolde not beware 2640
 ffor no warnyng nor for no *prophecie*
 But still in hert grete hatred he bare
 Agayn kyng Ioab of malice envie
 And into a felde brought all his chevalrie
 Gaddrid þem oute both nye and ferre
 Agayn goddes wyll on þem to gynne werre
 ¶ And kyng Ioab ful like a worthy knyght
 Into þe felde faste gan hym spede
 And all þe knyghtes of Iuda anonright
 Were smet with vengeaunce with a soden drede 2650

[fol. 37r, col. b]

To bidde þem fle godde wote it was no nede
 And Amazias for all his grete pride
 Stode destitute and no man by his side
 ¶ With hym was noon lefte þ of his menye
 So godde in Ioab þat day agayn hym wrought .
 Of Jerusalem entrid þe Cite
 And Amazie of force with hym he brought
 And in þe temple þe tresoure oute he ~~four~~ sought
 Golde and syluer and holy þe richesse
 And into Samarie home he gan hym dresse 2660

¶ And Amazias he lete oute of prison
 Aftyr all þis and suffrid hym go fre
 To his myschefe and his confusion
 And was delyuerde from his captiuite
 ffor slayn he was in lachis þe cite
 Amonge his frendes by simulacion
 His deth conspirid vndre fals treson

De Casu Iosie Regis Iuda .

Aftyr in Iuda þe myghty region
 Nexte Amazias Iosias gan succede 2670
 Wondur manlie and famus of renown
 In all his workes ful provident indede

And of his knyghthode venquisshid I rede
 The palestines for all þeire grete puissaunce
 With all Arabie he brought onto outrage

¶ Beldid townes and many a stronge Cite
 And vnto Egipte he his boundes set
 Made Castelles beside þe rede see
 And in his Conqueste whom þat euer he met
 Of manlie pride he ne wolde let
 I mene al þoo þat were his aduersaries 2680
 To his lordship ^{to} make þem tributaries

¶ He did his labour also to repare
 Ierusalem aftyr his ruyne
 The walles reryd which in þe soile lay bare
 Made newe tourys right as eny lyne
 Phanyes of golde þeir turrets to illumine
 And to afforce þem lete werkmen vndretake
 Square bastels and Bulwerkes make .

¶ He delitid to make fresh gardens
 Dyuerse herbis and Greynes for to knowe 2690
 Reioysid to plante diuerse wynes
 And to gryffe trees a and seedes for to sowe
 And straunge fruites to make þem growe arowe
 And with hym hadde his ennemies to encombre
 CCC. thowsand of manlie men in nowmbre

¶ His noble faime gan to sprede ful wyde
 And gretelie dredde was for his high prowesse

Wher þurgh his herte corrupte was with pride
Because oonlie of his grete richesse
And frowardlie he did his bysynesse 2700
ffor to maligne in his estate roiall
Agayn þe lorde which is immortall

¶ To godde aboue he gan þ to be obstinate
þat by processe ful finall he did wyne
In saueur caught in his roiall estate
To folow his fadre in vntryfte and synne
That grace and vertu didde from hym twy[nne]
In moste shynng of his magnificence
ffortune proudelie assailid his excellence

¶ Caste she wolde within a litle while 2710
His surquedie and frowarde pride assaile
And ful vnwarlie deceyue hym and beg[uile]
To make his power to to appalle and to fai[lle]
Whan þat þis kyng toke on him þe apper[aille]
Of a bysshop of verrey forwardness[e]
And into þe temple prowdelie gan hy[m dresse]

[37v, col. a]

¶ Beyng in purpos on a solempne day
To take his wey up to þe high altere
ffalslie vsurpyng whosoouer saide nay
To sacrificise holdyng þe sensere 2720
Before þe altere þat shone of golde ful clere
ffor which offence þe bible saith þe same
Azarias þe bisshop didde hym blame

¶ Gan withstonde hym in þe face anon
iiij^{xx}. prestes beyng in presence
Of þe kynred descendid of Aaron
Which forbade hym *and* made resistence
þat with his hande he shuld put incense
Vpon þe altere agayn goddes lawe
Hym chargyng boldelie his presence to withdrawe 2730

¶ But of despite he made þem holde þeir pees
In payn of deth he gan þem to manace
And sodenlie emong all þe prees
An erthquaue fell in þe same place
And þerwithall in þe kynges face
Of þe sonne þer smote a beme so bright
þat all his ~~vs~~ visage was scorkynd with þe light

¶ He wex a lepre ful foule and right horrible
ffor his offence as godde liste ordeigne
To euery man of looke he was terrible 2740
And but fewe his myschefe gan compleyne
And a grete hill þe same hour carue on tweyn
Not ferre asyde from þe town withoute

Citees destroyng þat stode rownde aboute
¶Of kyng Iosie godde toke his vengeance
ffor all his lordeship and his magnificence
To punish his pride and his froward puissaunce
And brought hym lowe for his grete offence
ffor his persone was put oute of presence
Perpetuallie as holy writ can telle 2750
ffrom all peple with lepres for to dwell

¶His flesh was troubled with diuerse passiones
ffor his seknes avoidid þe cite
In crie . sorowe . and lamentacions
His lyfe he ledde in grete aduersite
And so he died in myschefe and pouerte
Simplie buried for all his grete myght
Within an ilelande þat stode ferre out of sight

¶Lat *princes* all in þeire providence
Be right well ware anyþing to attame 2760
Which vnto godde shuld ben offence
Lesse þan synne conclude into þeir shaimie
Lat þem ere þink for all þeir noble fame
But þei repente godde of his iustice
Peir froward pride vnwardlie wyl chastise

¶Lat þem beware of Malice to presume
Agayn his chirch to do offensioun
ffor godde of right all tirannes wil consume
In ful shorte tyme for þeir *presumpcion*
Which wyl not suffre þeir *dominacion* 2770
To interrupte for all þe grete myght
Nor breke þeir fraunchise of holy chyrch rutht

¶To prudent *princes* which þat can discernie
[La]t kyng Iosias considrid his offence
[Be] in þeir mynde a *mirroure* and lanterne
[To] holi chirch to do du reuerence
[An]d to conceyve in þeir magnificence
[Godde] wyl of right be þei *neuer* so stronge
[Chast]ise þeir malice which do þe chirch wronge

¶[Ther w]as anoþer þat callid was Osi 2780
[Which] whilom regnyd as I afferme dare
[In Israel] whome fortune by envie

[37v, col. b]

Made hym be take or þat he was ware
Besegid aboute of kynge Salmanazare
And into Assire vndre his daungere
Pe bible tellith he was prisonere
¶His citees and townes brought to destruccion
And all his peple vndre longe *seruage*
Were take and kepte in stronge Babilon

Suffrid þei grete peyne and grete damage
And in a prison by furius outetrage
This saide Osias in cheynes bounde sore
ffor sorow dyed of hym write I no more

2790

[38r, col. b43]

De Casu Astriages Regis Asie

Aftyr þeis kynges oon folowed in þe pres
And gan to Bochas his compleint discure
And he was callid þe grete Astriages
Which tolde in ordre his vncouth aventure
Lord of all Asie as bookes vs assure
And hadde of tresoure duryng all hys lyve
Aboue all kynges a prerogatyve

¶Moste fortunate in all his governaile
ffelte of fortune noon aduersite
Saue an eyre male nothyng did hym fayle
ffor he moste glorijs sat in his roial see
Of worldlie welthe lakkyd no plente
Excepte oonlie as clerkes of hym write
He hadde no sonne his kyngdam to inherit

2970

¶Which to his welthe was grete disencres
Lest succession fallith in his line
A doughter he hadde callid Mundanes
Oute of whos wombe as bookes determin[e]
He dremyd on a nyghte hough he sawe a v[ine]
In hys vision with hym so it stode
Ouer all Asie his braunchis spredde ab[rode]

2980

¶He hadde also a revelacion
Slepyng a nynht aftyr his soper
Pof he not knew þe exposicion

[38v, col. a]

He thought he saw a cristall ryver
With lusty watres as eny berall clere
Oute of hir wombe with his stremys fresh
The soule of Asie make tendre and nesh
¶Touchyng his ryuer and þis lusty vine
To hym shewyd in his vision
Within hymselfe his couthe not determine
Therof to fynde no clere conclusion
Withoute som maner of exposicion
To hym declarid by folke in sentence
Which of suche dremes hadde experience

2990

¶To hym callid his astronomers
His philosophirs and his diuinours
Pat knewe þe mevyng of þe .ix. spers

Images of sterrys þeire houses and þeir course 3000
 And suche as were *experte expositoures*
 And when þei were assemblid euichon
 Touchyng hys dreame þei accordid all in oon
 ¶ To tell hym trouthe þei were not reclesse
 Saide hys doughter fro whom þer cam a vyne
 ^[A]nd was callid Mundanes^
 Shuld have a son descendyng not from hys lyne
 Whose noble forme þurgh Asia shuld shyne
 Which shuld hym put þurgh his high renoun
 By force of armes oute of his regioun 3010
 ¶ This was his fate he myght it not refuse
 Þe hevynlie course but it didde faile
 Whervpon he sore gan to muse
 Such fantasies didde his hert assaile
 Fell in grete dought þeire diuinaile
 Thought he wolde make purviaunce
 For to withstond Goddes ordinaunce
 ¶ Ful harde it is to make resistence
 Agayn þing ordeigned whan Godde whyl þat it be
 And namelie wher as influence 3020
 Or heuyn aboue hath shape a destinye
 Som men recorde þat no man may it fle
 Þe dome of þis · wheþer it holde or flit
 To þe astronomers all holy I it comitte
 ¶ This saide kyng of whome I spake but late
 Caste he wolde for avauntage
 Þeire divinaunce reuerse and þe fate
 Of þe heuyn with all þe surplusage
 And ^yeve^ yef his doughter as in mariage
 To som vnworthie pore infortunate 3030
 Þat neuer were likly to rise to high estate
 ¶ And ¶ in þis wyse kyng Astriages
 Married his doughter as in his intente
 To on vnworthie callid Cambises
 Demyng þerby by shorte avisment
 Within hymselfe þat he was right prudent
 Wenying þat nobles cam by descent of blode
 And not by grace nor as þe heuyn stode
 ¶ In his reson was not comprehendid
 Hough Socrates maistre of Platon 3040
 Of ful lowehede by byrth was descendid
 But for to haue ful possessioun 3043
 And not to inherit kyngdam nor region 3042
 Of moral matier and philosophie 3044
 [Du]ryng his lyfe his wit he didde applie
 ¶ [He] sought countrees for wysdam and science
 [And] secret kunnyng to serche didde his peynn

[And] he fonde oute þurgh his diligence
[This] philosophir as bokes acerteyn
[To ioy] reseruid ouþer vnto peyn 3050
[By grac]e of godde which is eternall
[Houg]h mennes soulys be founde ay immortall

[38v, col. b]

¶ By grete Apollo in booke it is founde
Gafe iugementes of equite and right
That Socrates of vertu moste habounde
And moste preferrid in euery mannes sight
Was callid of wysdam þe lanterne and þe ligh[te]
And wysest namyd at evyn and at prym[e]
Of all philosophres þat were in his tyme 3060

¶ The poete also callid Eripides
Moste honorable callid in þat age
Allbe his modre of lyfe was recles
And contagijs þurgh visions outrage
Yit was þis poete for all his vile linage
Moste vertuus founde at all assaies
Of all poetis þat were in his dayes

¶ Callid in his tyme a grete tragicion
Because he wrote many Tragedies
And wolde of trouth spare no maner man
But þem rebuke in his poetries 3070
Touchyng þe vice of fleshlie fantasies
Compleyn in princes þeire dedes moste horrible
And iche þinge punish þat was to godde odible

¶ Anouþer philosophre callid Diogenes
Be moste subtle rethorician
And moste inuentyve emonge all þe prees
Þat euer was sith þis worlde began
Allbe of birth he was a ful pore man
Yit hadde he moste souereigne excellence
Amonge philosophres of speche and eloquence 3080

¶ By which example me semyth doutelesse
That roiall bloode nouþer high linage
To mennes birth yevith but small encrece
Nor vnto vertu but litle avantage
For high noblesse takith not his corage
Of riche nor poore nor states souereigne
But of his grace as godde liste to ordeine

¶ Wherefor of folie kyng Astriages
Contrariuslie ~~all-gentrie~~ agayn all gentrie
Badde þat his doughter callid Mundanes 3090
ffyrste whan folkes with chylde hir did espie
ffor to accomplish his frowarde fantasie
Whan it were born chargyng aboute all þing

Of Achanie to bere it to þe kyng
 ¶Which in þat tyme was callid Arpagus
 And as I fynde he did in vertu floure
 And pite hadde þe storie tellith þus
 That bestes shulde þe litle childe devoure
 But godde þat may in myscheffe best socoure
 To kepe þe chylde was not reccllesse 3100
 Agayn þe malice of kynge Astriages
 ¶Which hadde commaundid of malice and hatrede
 Hough þat his childe grene and tendre off age
 By Arpagus shulde be caste in dede
 To be devourid of bestes moste sauage
 But for he dredde to do so grete outraie
 To his shepherd hymselfe to stonde at large
 The chylde to sle he fully gauē þe charge
 ¶This herdman albe þat he was loth 3110
 To execute þis wofull aventure
 Into a forest forth with þe chylde he goth
 And gave .ij. bestes þat litle creature
 Whom to fostre by grace agayn nature
 A wylde byche hir whelpys þer forsoke
 And to hir pappis þe litle chylde she toke
 ¶And with hir mylke she made hym suppe *and* dyne
 And bysy was from him to enchase
 Wylde foules *and* bestes sauagyne

[39r, col. a]

That non ne durste neighen to þat place
 Lo hough þat godde disposyng gan his grace 3120
 [I]nnocentes fro michief to preserue
 Agayn fals envie which make þem sterve
 [¶]O bloode vnkynde founden in kynred
 ffor covetise a blode disnaturall
 Of fals malice · o · bloode ful of hatered
 [T]o morþer a childe born of þe stok royall
 [Wh]ere mannes reson is turnyd bestiall
 [ffa]lsie transformyd vnto cruelte
 [To] sle a chylde where bestes haue pite
 [¶]The sely herde hath tolde his wyfe þe case 3130
 And she anon for pite didde aryse
 [Wit]h hir husband she wente a ful grete pas
 Into þe forest beholdyng all þe guyse
 As herd beforne ye haue herde devyse
 Seyng þe chylde with lippys tendre *and* softe
 The bycchys pappes hough soke ful ofte
 ¶The saide herde callid Sparages
 His wyfe also of whom beforne I tolde
 This younge chylde toke in hir own despose

And in hir armie she softe gan to folde 3140
 And he ful goodlie hire face gan beholde
 And on hir man in þe same while
 In chyldy wyse on hir he gan to smyle
 ¶ The chyldes laughter whan she did aduerte
 With all hir hole feithful diligence
 She gan to cherish it · with all hir herte
 She gave it souke with ful grete reuerence
 Albe þe bicche made resistence
 Compleynyng stode felly at abaye
 The litle chylde whan she sawe ledde away 3150
 ¶ Ful pitevuslie she gan to yell and crie
 At þe departyng doolfullie compleyn
 And aftyr þem ful faste began to hie
 The chylde to let she felt so grete a peyn
 Lo hough þat godde of mercy gan ordeyn
 A cruel beste such sorow for to make
 And so to morne for a chyldes sake
 ¶ But euery þing þat godde wyl haue preseruyd
 Ne may not fayle to stonde in sicurnesse
 His secrete domes doth to hymselfe reserue 3160
 Þer can no man expoun as I gesse
 ffor he shope fyrste þat þis sheperdesse
 Of Soparagos þe tru poore wyfe
 ffor to be a mene to saue þe childe lyfe
 ¶ Home to hir hows þe childe she ledde anon
 And it to fostre didde hir bysynesse
 And oþer salarie godde wote knew she non
 Saue þat hir hert þerto didde hir dresse
 And more entierly þe storie berith witnessse
 She tendrid hym and with more bysy cure 3170
 Than hym þat was hir child born of nature
 ¶ And as þe storie pleyedly doþ expresse
 This yonge chylde as he wex in age
 ffro day to day incresid in noblesse
 Lyk for to be right manlie of corage
 Cirus callid he was in þat language
 To sey in latin pleyedly in substaunce
 A man born to grete inheritaunce
 ¶ And whan þe renoun of his excellenciae
 By longe processe of his grete increce 3180
 Cam by reporte vnto þe audience ·

[39r, col. b]

Of his ayel þe grete Astriages
 And hough þe kyng was founde recclis
 Callid Arpagus for to do vengeaunce
 On yon Cirus he fell in displesaunce

¶ This is to mene Astriages was wrothe
That Arpagos was founde *merciable*
Cirus to saue and for þat he was loth
Agayns all right for to be vengeable
To sle a childe a thyng not *commendable* 3190
Demyng of trowth in his conscience
Godde was not payde to mordre innocence
¶ Astriages caste hym for to be wreke
On Arpagos by fals collusion
Because þat he his biddyng did breke
And was contrarie to his *þ* intencion
Cirus to sle agayn all reson
And for þat cause Astriages I rede
Of Arpagos let sle þe childe in dede ·
¶ This is to sey by ful fals compassyng 3200
And *couerte* mordre wrought by Astriages
The sonne was slayn of Arpagos þe kyng
And aftyr rested allas ful causles
And sith *presentid* amonge all þe pres
Beforn his fadre a þing moste lamentable
With Astriages as he sat at þe table
¶ But whan þe kyng callid Arpagus
Conceyvid hath þis mordre moste *terrible*
And hough his sonne was slayne þus
In his Ire moste *furius* and *odible* 3210
In all þe haste þat myght be possible
He is repairid home to his housholde
And all þe case to Cirus he hath tolde
¶ And hough his son was slayn for his sake
In þe moste hateful *odius* *cruelte*
Excityng hym with hym to *vndretake*
On his fals mordre *avengid* for to be
To hym declaryng of trowth and *equite*
Hough he was born by descent in dede
As rightful eyre to reigne in *Perce and Mede* 3220
¶ To hym declaryng þe storie by and *bie* by
ffyrste of þe *dreme* of Astriages
And hough þat he by *fraude and falslie*
Made his doughter callid *Mundan*
Porlie be weddyd vnto *Cambises*
Which was his modre and hough in *tendre* age
He was outecaste to *bestes* ful *sauage*
¶ By a shepherde and shepherdesse
ffostrid he was in ful grete *pouerte*
And broute fro *bestes* oute of *wyldirnesse* 3230
Because godde wolde þat he shuld *savid* be
ffor þat lorde which *euerythyng* may se
Whan þat he hath befor a þing *disposid*

Nedes þ it muste fall and may not be deposid

¶ This said Cirus at his natiuite

Ordeynd was by reuolucion

Of þe heuynlie speris in noumbre thris .iij.

So stode þat tyme his constellacion

þat he shuld haue þe domynacion

Ouer all Asie by influence diuine

3240

Afforn figurid by spredyng of þe vine

¶ What may þe fraude of sleighti folke au[aile]

Innocentes to put oute of þeir right

Pof trouth be hidde among þe porai[le]

Hard brought forth *and* dare not shew [his light]

Godde wyl ordeyn þat þe bemy[s bright]

[39v, col. a]

Shal somday shew oute his clernesse

Maugre all þo þat his title wolde oppresse

¶ ffor þis Cirus as clerke of hym write

Was by the title of his modre syde

3250

Borne to be kyng all Asie to inherit

All his ayel from hym wolde it ~~de~~ diuide

But godde þat can for trouth ay beste provide

Hath for Cirus by processe so ordeynde

þat he of Asie þe lordeship hath atteynynd

¶ Cirus þat tyme was grow up wel on length

Wel *proporciond* of membres and of stature

Wondre deliuer and passyng of grete strength

Straunge emprisez prowldie to endure

And to Ieoparde and put in aventure

3260

Hough is own *person* þe fame was of hym so

Was no more liklie wher men shuld haue ado

¶ And by connsaile of kyng Aspagus

Whan þis Cirus was wel wex in age

With parciens proude and surquedouse

And Archanites cruel of corage

ffor to recure his rightful heritage

Be go with Cirus armid in plate and maile

With Astriages to holde a bataile

¶ And he agaynwarde gan to take hede

3270

And with hym toke many a worthi knyght

With all his *puissaunce* of þe lande of Mede

Hath take þe felde þe same day forthright

To disherit Cirus of his right

But godde and trouth was betwen þem tweyn

Egal iuge þeir querel to darayn

¶ The felde ordeynd and splayed þeir banere

On eyþer partie prowldie on þei set

At þe assemblyng like lions of þeir cheris

In þe face os þei ferslie met 3280
 With rounde spers sharpe grounde *and* whet
 Tyl þat Cirus of Grace more þan noumbre
 Of his ayel þe partie did encombre
 ¶ This myghty Cirus þis yong champioun
 Thurghoute þe felde gan such a slaughter make
 With his knyghtes as he went vp and doun
 Pat as þe deth his fomen hym forsake
 Astriages vnder his baner take
 Þe felde venquesshid for all his veinglorie
 To shew þat right hath allwey þe victorie 3290
 ¶ A man of malice may a þinge purpose
 By a maner frowarde providence
 But godde aboue gan gracioslie dispose
 Agayn such malice to make resistens
 Men for a while may suffre violence
 And wronges grete whereso þat þei wende
 But trouth allway venquesshith at þe ende
 ¶ Astriage founde ful tene his dreame
 Thof he agayn it · made purveiaunce
 To haue deprivid Cirus of his realme 3300
 He was deceyvid in his ordinaunce
 ffor where þat god þurgh his myghti puissance
 [Li]ste for eyres iustlie to provide
 [Sle]ighte in such caas of man is layde aside
 ¶ Maugre þe myght of Astriages
 [Cir]us of hym made discomfiture
 [An]d al Asie reioysid eke in pees
 [Of ve]rray right as was his aventure
 [And] by iuste title he did also recure
 [The l]ande of Mede lyke as was his fate 3310
 [And in]to perce he did it hole translate

[39v, col. b]
 ¶ Agayn his ayel he was not vengeable
 Which had wrought to his destruccion
 But was to hym benigne and merciabile
 And *grauntid* hym of hole affeccion
 Þe iiijth parte of þe region
 Of Archanie of which afforn I tolde
 Hym to sustein in his dayes olde
 ¶ For kyng Cirus wolde not his lyue
 Suffre his ayel of verrey gentilnesse 3320
 Pat men shuld hym finallie depryve
 Of kynglie honour for non vnkyndnesse

Pof godde haue yeue þem power in erth *and* my[ght]
 Þei shuld on merci medil with þeire righ[t]

¶ Noble *princes* your eris doth incline
And considre in youre discrecions
Hough dremys shewith by influence diuine
Be not like sweuens but like visions
Or resemblid to reuelacions 3330

Whith þof men wolde distrouble and make fai[le]
Godde wyl not suffre þeire malice to preuaile

¶ Astriages dremyd he sawe a vyne
Shewyd of trouth and noon illusions
ffrome his doughter wombe right as a lyne
Spred in Asie ouer þe regions
But to disherit by fals collusions
Yong Cirus þe kynge did his travaile
But not suffrid his malice to preuaile

¶ Princes remembrith ye þat in honour shyne 3340
Vpon þis storie in youre intencions
And beth welwyllid wher godde list ferþer a lyne
Oupe[r] to richesse or dominacions
To fauour þem to þeir promocions
Beth ʒ not contrarie in youre aquitaile
Sith godde wyl suffre no malice to preuaile

De casu Candali Regis lidie

While Iohn bochas caste his looke aside
In his studie as he sat wrytyng
To his *presence* cam þe kyng of lide
Callid Candalus ful pitevuslie pleynyng 3350
With salte teres ful lowlie besechyng
Pathe wolde aswage his grevaunce
His dedlie sorow put in remembraunce

¶ His compleynt was moste for vnkyndnesse
ffor fals deceit agayn all skyl and ryght
That wher his truste was moste of gentilnesse
He mekkyd was for all his grete myght
ffor of his howse þer was a *certen* knyght
Gigus callid þinge shameful to be tolde
To speke pleyn englissh made hym cukkolde 3360

¶ Allas I was not avised wel befor
Vncunnynglie to speke so foule language
I shulde have saide hough þat he had an horn
Or sought som terme with a fayre visage
To excuse my rudnesse of þis grete outrage
As in som lande Cornodo men þem call
And som afferme hough such folke have no gall

¶ This was þe case whan phebus shon ful shene
Þe somer ceson in his ascension
Whan swete braunchis were clad in new grene 3370
Heete importable hadde *dominacion*
Whan þat þe quene for recreacion

Vnprovidid þat no man did hir kepe
Vpon hir bedde lay nakyd for to slepe
¶And as clerkes vpon hir bewte write
þer was alyve no fayrere creature
Nor more excellyng like as þei indite
Of semlynesse hir storie doth assure .

[40r, col. a]

Callid for beaute Cosyn to nature
And worthi eke yf þat I shal not feyne 3380

[T]o be comparid to Creyseide or helene
[¶K]ynde in his forge liste no þing to erre
[W]han she hir wrought by grete avisnesse
[T]o make of beaute þeir verrey lode sterre
[A]nd yeve hir fauour beaute and semlynesse
[B]ut for nature hadde so grete besynesse
[B]eforn a woman þat was so fresh of hewe
[S]he hadde forgete for to make hir true
[H]ir ien were verrey celestiall

[H]ir here vntrussid lyke phebus in his spere 3390

[A] t]hyng resemblyng þat were immortal
[S]o] angelik she was of loke and chere
An exemplarie of porte and of manere
[þ]er was no lake saue nature þurgh hir slouthe
Hadde lefte behynf to yeve hir feith and trouth

¶And on a day as she lay slepyng
Nakyd on bedde moste goodlie vnto sight
fful vnwarlie cam Candalus þe kyng
Vnto þe chambre wher Titan shone full bright
And shewyd hir bewte vnto his own knyght 3400

Of intent he shuld bere witnessse
Hough she excellid all oper in fayrnesse

¶And whan Gigas gan in ordre se
Of þis quene þe grete excellence
He was enamourd vpon hir beaute
All þe while he stode þer in presence
Gan imagin a treson in silence
To sle his lorde withoute longe taryyng
Wynne þe quene and aftyr reigne as kyng

¶This was þe ende doolful and pitevus 3410

To be remembrid hateful and terrible
Of þis noble worþi Candalus
ffor of his truste to miche he was credible
Vnto Gigas þe Traitour moste
And ^yit^ more foltish wherby he loste his lyfe
Outewarde to shew þe beawte of his wyfe

¶þof she ware fayre and goodlie vnto se
þer was no truste nor sicurnesse

ffor oþer hadde as goode parte as he
 Gigas couth bere þerof witnessse 3420
 Allas a quene or eny grete princesse
 Assent shuld hir fame for to trouble
 But yf nature excuse þem to be double
 ¶But whosoeuer was þer with loth or fayn
 Gigas was aftyr crownyd kynge of lide
 Whan þat hir lorde was by treson slayn
 Of hym þe surplus Bochas set aside
 And in his studie as he did abide
 þer cam of Phrige Mydas þe riche kynge
 Tolde myn auctour his compleynt with wepyng 3430
 ¶For þer was neuer by conquest nor labour
 No kyng afforn þat hasse more richesse
 Nor more plente of golde nor of tresoure
 At whos birth poetes þis expresse
 Aboute his Cradil Amptes gan þem dresse
 While he slepte and gan abowte hym ley
 A ful grete noumbre of purid whet grey
 ¶When vpon moste experte diuinours
 As þei toke hede in þeire attendaunce
 Such as were beste expositoures 3440
 Saide it was a token of habundaunce
 To haue of richesse al maner suffisaunce
 And concludyng pleynlie gan to tell
 Hough he all oþer in treson should excell
 ¶Poetes of hym wrote þat were ful olde
 Hough Bachus gave hym þe myghty god of wyne

[40r, col. b]

What he touchis shal turne into golde
 As goode as þat which cam oute of þe myne
 At all assayes to be as pure and fyne
 This request as write Ouidius 3450
 Was vnto Midas grauntid of Bachus
 ¶He thought golde myght hym moste availe
 What he handlid was golde with touchyng
 But whan hungre his stomak gan assaile
 His brede his mete was was clere golde in shewyng
 And whan he gan to faile of his fedyng
 And founde in golde no recur to askape
 Besought Bachus som remedie to shape .
 ¶Bachus badde hym go baþe hym in a ryuer
 To wash away þe colour aureate 3460
 Where yit is shewyd þe golden gravel clere
 Which example declarith to euery astate
 Pat golde allone maketh men not fortunate
 ffor what may golde or tresour þer auaile

Wher men in hungre fynde no vitaile
 ¶ Or what is worþi goode perle or stonys rede
 Grene Emeraudes of Saphirs Inde
 When men infamyed haue neþer corne nor brede
 ffor in suche myschefe vitaile may non fynde
 ffor to fostre þeire nature and þeir kynde 3470
 A barely lofe in suche a distresse
 More myght availe þan all worldlie richesse
 ¶ This knewe Midas and was experte indede
 Thof he of golde hadde so grete plente
 Yit with metall he myght hymselfe not fede
 Which causid hym of necessite
 To considre and clerlie for to se
 That brede mor availeth for fostryng of nature
 Than all richesse þat men may here recure .
 ¶ ffor which þis kyng gan hate all richesse 3480
 Golde and tresour he hadde eke in disdeigne
 Lefte his crown and his roiall noblesse
 And chese to kepe shepe vpon a playnn
 All worldlie worship was to hym but veyn
 Of melancolie and frowarde pouerte
 Endid his lyfe in grete aduersite
 ¶ ffor all Ire and impacience
 ffynallie þus with hym it stode
 ffuriuslie in his gret ~~diligence~~ indigence
 As writith Bochas hough he drank þe bloode 3490
 Of a bull sauagine and woode
 With loue eschafid made no delayes
 Moste bestiall endid þus his dayes
De casu Baltazar Regis Babilonie
 NExte to Bochas as þat he was ware
 As he sat wrytyng with ful gret labour
 Of Babilon cam grete Baltazar
 To declare his sorow and his langour
 Which hadde myvsid ful falslie þe tresour
 And þe vesel brought to Ierusalem
 In Babilon I chefe Cite of ^his^ realme 3500
 ¶ ffor at a soper with his lordes all
 Whan of þe vesell he dranke myghty wyne[s]
 And solemplie sat in his roiall stall
 And rownde aboute all his concubines
 Philosophres Magiciens and diuines
 Per cam on hande þe bible doth assure
 And on þe wall gan write þis scripture
 ¶ Mane Techel Phares writen in his sigh[t]
 Thof he þe menyng conceyvid neuer a del[e]
 Which on þe wall shewed clere and brigh[t] 3510
 ffro whos sentence auailid non appele

But þe *prohet* holy Daniel
ffully expounyd to Balthazar þe ky[ng]
Pe grete misterie of þis derke wryt[ynge]

[40v, col. a]

¶ This worde Mane pleynlie and not tarie
In latin tonge betokenth in substaunce
The dayes countid and rekenyd þe noumberarie
Of þi reknyng and of þis grete puisaunce
And Techel soundith a weyying in balaunce
In token þi kyngdam and power . by mesure 3520
Godde hath peysyd þei shall no while indure

¶ Phares also betokynth a brennyng
In Romane tonge into *peces* small
ffor þi power and frowarde rebellyng
Shall from an high be brought into a vale
This is holy writ and no feynyd tale
ffor whan princes wyl not þeir lyfe redresse
Godde wyl vnwarlie þeir surquedie ^represe^ repesse

¶ *Pu* were be tokens warnyd longe affore 3530
By many example þe storie ye may rede
By þe fall of Nabugodonesor
And þu þerof toke ful litle hede
The lorde to þanke and haue his name in drede
ffor which þu shalt within a litle þrowe
Lose sceptre and crown and be brought ful lowe

¶ Lete *princes* all þis storie haue in mynde
And for þemselve notablie provide
And namelie þei þat be to godde vnkynde
Peir concubines for to set asyde
And make *vertu* for to be þeire guyde 3540
Avoide lecherie and fals *presumpcioun*
Which haue so many brought to destruccioun

¶ Nabugodonesor hadde repentaunce
And was restorid to his possessiones
But godde of right toke sodenlie vengeaunce
On Balthazar for his transgressiones
Wherefor ye *princes* disposith youre resons
Aftyr youre *merites* to haue godde *merciable*
Or youre *demerites* do fynde hym vengeable 3550

¶ Agayn holy chirche takith no querels
But aduertisith in youre inward sight
ffor Balthazar dranke of þe vesells
Stale fro þe temple of verrey force *and* myght
He loste lordeship and lyfe vpon a nyght
So þat þe kyngdam of Assiries
Translatid was to Mede and Perce

De casu Regis Cresi

NExte to John Bochas within a litle þrow
 Wrytyng of princes many pitevus fate
 He sawe kyng Cresus with oþer in þe rowe
 Lowlie besechyng his fallyng to *translate* 3560
 And hough fortune agayn hym gan debate
 And of his myschefe ~~ðof~~ doleful for to rede
 ffor to descryve anon he gan *procede*
 ¶ffor as it is remembrid by wrytyng
 As god and kynde liste for hym ordeine
 Of lide he was governour and kyng
 And lordship hadde þe storie cannot feynn
 Of many kyngdams mo þan oon or tweyn
 ffame in þat tyme so did hym magnifie
 Pat he was callid floure of chyualrie 3570
 ¶And he was also in his tyme founde
 Pe moste *experte* in werre and in bataile
 And of riches was þe moste habounde
 And nexte excellyng in conquest to *preuaile*
 [Ple]nte of peple with roiall apperaile
 [And w]ith all þis grete avauntage
 [Non] of childre to enbelish his lynage
 ¶[In þe] moste highest of his roial see
 [And all] was well and nothyng stode amisse

[40v, col. b]

Ye to amenuse his felicite 3580
 A dreme he hadde and s trulie þat was þis
 Hough þat is son which callid was achis
 Was take from hym and by mortal outra[ge]
 Slayn sodenlie in his tendre age
 ¶This woful dreme did hym grete distress[e]
 And put his herte in full grete dispeire
 Stondyng in fere and in grete hevyness[e]
 Because his childe tendre yonge and fey[re]
 Which þat was born for to be his eyre
 Shulde causeles in suche myschefe die 3590
 So as his dreme afforn did specifie
 ¶Of þis *processe* to declare more
 Hough Cresus dreme fulfillid was indede
 ffrom Olimphus þer cam a wylde bore
 Moste furius and sauagine of drede
 With mony toskes which faste gan hym sp[ede]
 Doun descendyng *and* now here list abide
 Til þat he cam into þe lande of lide
 ¶And gan destru þeire frutes *and* þeire vines
 Whereuer he cam in any maner place 3600
 Brake þe nettes and þe stronge lynes
 Of þe hunttere þat did at hym enchace

But vndre supporte of þe kynges grace
His son and ayre of whom I spake before
Gate hym licence to hunte at þe bore
¶His fadre Cresus demyng of þis case
Þer was no cause of drede in no manere
Pof his son were present in þe chase
With oþer hunters such gamme for to lere
But euer fortune with hir double chere
Is redy euer by som fatal trayne

3610

At such disporte som myschefe to ordeine
¶ffor on þer was which had gouernaunce
Vpon þis childe to wayte and to se
Chasyng þe bore to save hym fro mischance
ffrom al damage and aduersite
With many lusty folke of þat cuntre
With hornes and houndes and sharpe spers grounde
Sekyng þe bore tyl þei haue hym founde

3620

¶And as þei cam ferslie þis bore inchase
Pat he was chargid to be þe chyldes guyde
As with his spere he gan þe bore manace
Þe hede not entrid but forby gan to glyde
And on þe chylde which þat stode beside
Þe stroke alight . and or he did aduerte
The spers hede rofe hym þurgh þe herte

¶But of þis chylde whan þe deth was couthe
Tolde and reporte holy þe manere
Hough he was slaynn in his tendre youth
Borne to be eyre vnto his fadre dere
Cresus for sorowe he chaungid his loke and chere

3630

And for constreint dole in his visage
He resembled a verrei dede image
¶But euery sorow by longe continuaunce
At þe laste it somewhat muste aswage
ffor þer is non so furius grevaunce
Nor so mortall importable rage
But þat longe processe yevith hym avauntage
I mene as þus þer nys so grete a sorowe

3640

But it muste cesse ouþer euyne or morow
¶Philosophris concluden and discerne
Pat by þeir resons recorden in scripture
Þing violent may not be eterne

[41r, col. a]

Nor in on poynte abide non aventure

ffor stondemele þurgh fortunes variaunce
Þer foloweth ioy aftyr grete grevaunce
¶The sorow of Cresus þof it were importable

And at his hert þe grevaunce sat ful sore
 Sith þat þis dole was irrecuperable 3650
 And mene was non his harmys to restore
 Myn auctour Bochas write of his wo no more
 [B]ut at his fall hough þat it fell indede
 [T]o tell þe maner forth he doth procede
 [¶]And for a while set his stile asyde
 [A]nd his processe in partie he forbare
 To speke of Cresus þat was kyng of lyde
 [A]nd gan resorte to write of Baltazar
 Agayn rehersyng or þat he was ware
 Hough myghty Cirus of fatal aventure 3660
 Made of hym prowldie a discomfiture
 ¶And as it is put in remembraunce
 Of Baltazar to holde vp þe partie
 Cresus with hym hadde made an alliance
 With all his puissaunce and all his cheualrie
 His lyfe his tresoure to put in Ieopardie
 Sworne in armes as broþer vnto broþer
 By Cirus vanquesshid þat on aftyr þat oþer
 ¶Paire bothe myschefe no longar was delayde 3670
 Allbe þat Cresus faught longe in his defence
 He finallie by Cirus was outrayed
 And depryved by knyghtlie violence
 Takyn in þe folde þer was no resistance
 And rigoruslie to his confusioun
 With myghty fetris caste in derke prisoun
 ¶And more to increce his aduersite
 A son of his tendir and yonge of age
 Pat was dome fro his natiuite
 And neuer spake worde in no maner language
 Cirus commaundyng by furius outrage 3680
 Pat Cresus shulde by vengeable cruelte
 By a knyght of perce in prison he did be
 ¶And with his swerde as he gan manace
 Cresus to haue slayn withoute all reuerance
 Þe dome chylde þer present in þe place
 Which neuer hadde spoke þus sayde in audience
 Withdrawe þi stroke and do no violence
 Vnto my lorde þi fame so to confounde
 To sle a knyght þat lith in prison bounde
 ¶Þe knyght astonyd hath his strok forborn 3690
 Gretely abasshid in þat derke habitacle
 Which herde a childe þat neuer spake befor
 Agayn his swerde to make an obstacle
 Ran and tolde þis marvelus miracle
 To myghti Cirus with euery circumstance
 Hopyng þerby to haue temperid his grevaunce

¶ But wheras tirannes beset in cruelte
 Per crokyd malice it is to apese
 So indurat is þeire iniquite
 Pat all in vengeance is set þeir hertes ese 3700
 Þemselfe reioysyng to se folke in disese
 Lyke as þei were in þeire froward daunger
 Clenlie fraunchesid fro godde *and* his power
 ¶ This cruel Cirus moste vengeable of desyre
 To execute his fell intent indede
 Lete make in haste of fagetes a grete fyre
 And gan þem kyndil with many colis rede
 And made Cresus quakyng in his drede

[41r, col. b]

ffor to be take whereas he lay ful lowe
 And badde men shuld into þe fyre hym þrowe 3710

¶ But Iubiter which hath þis vengeance seyn
 Hough cruel Cirus with malice was atteinte
 ffrom hevyn sent a tempest and a reyn
 Pat sodenlie þe horrible fyre was queynte
 And woful Cresus with dredefull fyre made feynt
 Escapid is his furius mortall peynn
 Godde and fortune for hym liste so ordeigne

¶ This aventure in maner marvelus
 The herte of Cirus gan som to embrace
 And causid hym for to be pitevus 3720

Agayn Cresus and grauntid hym his ^{his} [^]þis[^] grace
[^]To occupie while he hath [lyfe and space][^]
 The lande of lyde excepte oonlie þis þing
 He shuld aftyr no more be callid kyng

¶ And þus of lide þe kyngdam dide fyne
 Which toke his begynnyng of on Ardisus
 And endurid þe space of kynges .ix.
 And at laste endid at Cresus

Here of no more but forth vnto Cirus
 I wyl procede with all my besy cure 3730
 ffor to translate his wosul aventure

[42r, col. a42]

De casu duorum fratrum Amilij et Mimitoris

After kyng Cirus Bochas did espie
 Two worthy breþren *with faces* ful pitevous
 Born by descent to reigne in Albanie
 Both of o fadre þe story tellith vs
 That on of þem callid Amilius
 And to remembre þe name of þat oþer
 Mimitor callid was his broþer

¶ They hadde a fadre which namyd was *percas* 3970
 Kyngs of þat londe þe storie doth devyse
 Aftyr whos deth pleynlie þis is þe case
 Amilius for false couetise
 His broþer slough in ful cruel wyse
 Pat he iustlie by fals tirannie
 Myght haue þe kyngdam allone of Albanie
 ¶ This Albania by descripcion
 Lyke as Bochas affermeth in *certeine*
 Is a Cite not ferre from Rome town
 Set on an hill besyde a large pleyn 3980
 Þe beldyng statelie rich and wel besyn
 Stronge wallid with many a riche toure
 And Ascanius was fyrste þerof foundour
 ¶ Which callid was in his fundacion
 Albania for þe grete whitnesse
 Pat kynges aftyr by succession
 Namyd Albaneyns *princes* of grete noblesse
 And by descent þe story bereth wytness
 ffor kyng *procas* recorde in bookes olde
 Cam þeis .ij. breþren and Rea as I tolde 3990
 ¶ Mimitor slayn as made is mencioune

[42r, col. b]

The kyngdam occupied by Amilius
 And Rea entrid into religion
 ffor to be wypyld in þat holy howse
 Sacrid to *vesta* with virgines glorius
 Perfor to abide and be contemplatyfe
 ¶ And þus was don while she was yong of age
 By her broþer of fals intencion
 Pat she shulde haue no maner heritage 4000
 Nor cleyme nor title in þat region
 Of hir kynrede by non occasion
 But stonde *professid* to virginite
 Beforne *vesta* and lyve in chastite
 ¶ Yit notwithstanding hir virginal clenness
 She hath conceyvid by natural miracle
 Gan so increce in hir holynesse
 Whos wombe arose in kynde was non obstacle
 Agayn such bolnyng avaieth no triacle
 But þe goddesse for hir did so ordeine 4010
 Pat she at ones hadde fayre sonnes tweyn
 ¶ The temple of *vesta* stode in wyldyrnesse
 Wher Rea hadde holy þe *gouernaunce*
 Of prestlie honour doon to þe goddesse
 With many straunge vncouth obseruaunce
 But by his broþers mortall ordinaunce

Hir yonge sonnes myght not be socourd
 Caste oute to bestes for to be deuoured
 ¶But a celi wolfe whiche whelpid had late
 To yeve þem souke did his bysynesse 4020
 By godde ordeynd or by som heuynlie fate
 Þem to conserue from deth in þeir distresse
 ffor holy writ pleynlie berith witnesse
 Godde can defende as it is well couth
 Children from myschefe in þeir tendre youth
 ¶But in þis while . þis saide Amilius
 Þat was þeir vncler as made is mencion
 Agayn his sistre frowarde and furius
 Made hir be shot in a ful dark prison
 And þer compleynyng þe dolful destruccion 4030
 Of hir .ij. children born to hir reprefe
 ffor verrey sorowe died at grete myschefe
 ¶This saide children deuoide of all refute
 Besyde a ryuer lay pitevuslie cryyng
 ffrom all socoure nakyd and destitute
 Except of wolves vpon them awi awaytyng
 ^At whos wombe ful styll þei la[y sowkyng]^
 Vnto nature a thyng contrarius
 Children to souke of bestes ravenouse .
 ¶But he þ^at^ is lorde of euery creature 4040
 Right as hym liste can both saue and spylle
 And bestes whiche be rage of þeir nature
 He can adaunte and make þem be ful stille
 Tigres lions obey at his wyll
 The same lorde hath made a fell wolvesse
 Vnto .ij. children hir bagges for to dresse
 ¶And while þis wolvesse hadde þem in depose
 Þer cam an herde callid ffaustulus
 He helde þer sowkyng and saw þem he ful cloos
 Which shepherd was of kyng Amilius 4050
 Caught vp þis children þe storie telleth þus
 And brought þem home with ful grete dilig[ence]
 Vnto his wyfe þat callid was laurence
 ¶And she of loue did hir besy paynn
 Them to fostre till þei cam to age
 Gave þem souke of hir brestes tweynn
 ffro day to day of herte and hole corage
 And þei were callid as in þat languag[e]
 Aftyr þe storie . þat on of them Re[mus]
 And the secund was namyd R[omulus] 4060

[42v, col. a]

¶Of which breþer preflie to termyne
 Þe town of Rome toke his originall

Of fals dysclaundir fyrste began þat lyne
 Þe rote oute sought ful vicius found at all
 Clerlie remembrid for a memoriall
 Þeir begynnyng groweth of such incontinence
 As clerkes call Incestus in sentence .
 ¶ Incestus is a þing not fayre nor goode
 Aftyr þat bookes well devise canne
 As trespasyng with kynred or with bloode 4070
 Or frowarde medlyng with hir þat is a nonne
 And þus þe lyne of Rome was begonne
 ffor slaughter mordir and fals robbrie
 Was chefe begynnyng of all þeir auncetrie
 ¶ Of couetise þei toke þeir avauntage
 Liggers of weys and robbers openlie
 Mordrers also of þeir own lynage
 And strengest thevis . gate to þeir companie
 Spoylyng al þo þat passid þem forby 4080
 Vndre shadowe of kepyng þeir bastaile
 Al maner peple þei prowldie did assaile
 ¶ To sle Merchaundes þei hadde no conscience
 And for to modir folk of euery age
 Women to oppresse of force and violence
 In all þat cuntre þis was þeir vsage
 Where þei abode þer was no fayre passage
 And þeis .ij. breþren lyke as it is founde
 ffounde fyrst þe maner of spers sharp grownde
 ¶ A spere in Greke callid in quiris 4090
 And for þat cause þe saide Romulus
 As bokes sayn and sothlie so it is
 He aftyr þat was callid Quirinus
 Which with his broþer þat namyd was Remus
 Was in all þing confederat and partable
 Þat affor godde was vicius and dampnable
 ¶ And as it was acordyng to þeir lyfe
 ffor lake of vertu þei fell in grete diffame
 Betwen þem þer was an vncouth stryfe
 Which of both shuld yeve þe name 4100
 Vnto þe cite betwene arnest and game
 Aftyr þeir names Rome to be callid
 Þus felle þe case afforn or it was wallid
 ¶ And þervpon ful longe laste þeir stryves
 Which shuld of þem haue dominacion
 Shewyng þeir titles and þeir prerogatyves
 Who shuld of þem yeve name to be townn
 And reigne as kynge in þat region
 Þer was no reson who shuld go befor
 Because þey were bothe at onys borne
 ¶ But to fynysh þeir fraternal discorde 4110

Pei haue *provided* betwen þem anonright
 Pus condoscendyng to put þem at acorde
 Nowþer by force . oppression nor myght
 Pat which of þem fyrste sawe grettest flyght
 Of byrdes flien high vpon an hill
 Shulde name þe cite at his own wyll
 ¶ Of þis accorde for to bere witnessse
 Pei with þem hadde a ful grete multitude
 Peron to yeve a dome of rightuesnesse
 [B]othe of wyse and of peples rude 4120
 [All] at onys þus matier to conclude
 [And] up to an hill callid aventyne
 [Thei] ben ascendid . þis matier for to fyne

[42v, col. b]

¶ And byrdes fix to Remus did appere
 By Augurie as þei gan procede
 Callid vultures ful fers in þeire manere
 But þe noumbre in double did excede
 Pat Romulus saugh whan he toke gode hede
 Whereof þer fell a grete contraversie
 Whiche of þem shulde prevaile in þeire par[t] 4130
 ¶ Thus fyrst of all Remus hadde a sighte
 Of .vj. byrdes callid vultures
 And for to avaunce and preferre his rig[ht]
 He ful proudelie put hymselfe in pres
 But Romulus was not reccles
 His broþers cleyme pleynlie to entroubl[e]
 Afforcid his title with þe noumbre double
 ¶ Yit of his purpose on of þem muste fayl[e]
 Pof it be so þat þei euer stryve
 But Romulus gan finallie prevaile 4140
 And to þe cite forth he wente blyue
 And as ~~auctours~~ auctours liste ichon descryve
 And in þeir bookes as þei reherse all
 Aftyr his name Rome he did if call
 ¶ And all foreyns for to exclude oute
 Amonge þem to make stronge defence
 ffyrste he began to walle it rounde aboute
 And made a lawe ful dredeful in sentence
 Who clambe þe wall by any violence
 Outewarde or inwarde þer is no more to sey 4150
 By statute made he must nedes dey
 ¶ This was enacte by ful pleyn ordinaunce
 In peyn of deth which no man breke shall
 But so be fulle Remus of ignorance
 Which of þe statute knewe noþing at all

Of aventure went ouer þe wall
 ffor which a knyght ordeyned in *certeyn*
 The sayd Remus hath with a pykex slayn
 ¶ His broþer liste not in no maner wyse
 Agayn þe lawe to be faorable 4160
 But assentid *parcell* for couetise
 Vpon Remus to be more vengeable
 Of þis intente to make his reigne stable
 Þat allon myght *gouerne* and non oþer
 By no clayme founde nor brought in by his broþer
 ¶ And þat þe peple shuld þem more delite
 Ther to abide and haue possession
 As olde auctours of Romulus do write
 Which in þe boundes of þe saide towne
 Pat he devisid by grete *provision* 4170
 In compas rownde so croniclers *compile*
 A territorie þat callid was Asile
 ¶ This Asilimr by Romulus devisid
 Was a place of refuge and socoure
 Like a theatur with libertes fraunchisid
 ffor to restreyne al foren trespasoures
 Thevis moþeres weyliggers robboures
 By grete resorte within þe walles wyde
 To fostre all bribours þat nowhere durste abide
 ¶ And with fledde peple fro diverse regions 4180
 Þe cite gan to increce and multiplie
 And bannyshid folke of straunge nacions
 To fynde refuge þider gan þem high
 And þus þ by *processe* began þeir cheualrie
 ffyrst þurgh tirannes recles of þeir werkyng
 Tyll þat þe worlde obeyed þeir biddyng

[43r, col. a]

¶ Of wylfull force with title of right
 They brought all peple under subieccion
 [A] cleyme þei made by violence *and* myght
 [A]nd toke non hede of trouthe nor of reson 4190
 [Þu]s þe fyrste auctour of þeire fundation
 [Wa]s Romulus þat gaddrid all þis route
 [Wi]thin þe cite and wallid it rounde aboute
 [¶] [An]d many day as made is mencion
 [He] hadde þat cite in his *gouernaunce*
 [A]nd was þe fyrste kyng crownyd in þat town
 [A]nd reigned þer by *continuaunce*
 ffull many yeris tyl þe variaunce
 Of fortune þurgh hyr fals envie
 In Campania made hym for to die 4200
 ¶ Vpon a day whan it gan thondur lowde

His name foreuer to be more magnifiede
 Som bokes seyn he was rapte in a clowde
 High vp in hevyn to be stellifiede
 With oþer goddes statelie deifiede
 Þer to be stallid by Iubiter syde
 Lak for his knyghtes as Mars list provide
 ¶Lo here of paynymes a fals opinion
 To cristes lawe contrarie and odius
 That tirannes shuld for fals oppression 4210
 Be callid goddes or namyd glorius
 Which by þeir line were founde vicius
 ffor þis is pleyn trowth I dare right well tell
 Þei raþer ben fendes ful depe in hell
 ¶ffor but in erth þeir d(am)nacion
 Conveide be by vertuus noblesse
 And þat þeir power and þeir high renoun
 Be set on trouþ and on rightuesnesse
 Lyk þeir estates in princes or in princesse
 I dare afferme of þem both tweyn 4220
 ffor vicius lyvyng þei muste indure peyn
 ¶But whan þei be faithful of intente
 ffaith and trouthe iustlie to susteine
 And in þeir roiall powere be not blent
 Wronge redressyng and pore folke to maintene
 And so continue with conscience moste clene
 Such lyfe more raþer ban pompe of worldlie werres
 Shal make þem reigne in hevyn aboue þe sterres
 ¶ffor which þat princes vndrestond at onys
 And worldlie princesse with all þeir worldli riches 4230
 And þeir high hornys fret with rich stonys
 Toward hevyn þeir passage doth not dresse
 But vertuus lyfe charite and meknesse
 Whan þei liste pride oute of þeir hert arace
 Þat causith þem in hevyn ^to^ fynde a place
 ¶Þer is no more straunge abusion
 Nor afforn godde gretter idolatrie
 Þan whan princesse liste cach affeccion
 Creatures falslie to destrue
 By collusion brought in by sorcerie 4240
 Now godde defende all princes wel disposid
 With such false crafte neuer to be anoysid
 ¶And þat þeir ien by non illusions
 Be not inglued nouþer with hoke nor lyne
 Nor by no baytes of fleshlie inspeccions.
 Wrought by Cirenes by drynke or medicine

[43r, col. b]

Which of þeir nature resemble to a shryne

Purgh richesse outewarde and beaute souereigne
 And who looke inwarde be lyke a foule careyne
 ¶ Godde if his grace amend al suche outeage 4250
 In noble *princes* and saue þem from such werre
 And þem illumine disposyng þeir corage
 In such fals worship þat þei no more þei erre
 Lyke to Argus þat þei may se a ferre
 Pat no fals flateryng cause þem to be blynde
 ¶ And þof Romanes did worship and honour
 To Romulus by a constreynyd drede
 Late no man take example of þeir error
 But to þat lorde whos sydes were made rede 4260
 To saue mankynde and on a crosse was dede
 But men to hym in chefe þeire lyfe obserue
 Which can þem quyte better þan þei can deserue
De casu Mecij Suffocij Superbissimi viri
 NExt Romulus with teris al besprent
 Vnto John Bochas apperid Metius
 Of chere and looke and of his porte ful feynte
 His fall declaryng frowards and despitous
 And he was callid eke Suffocius
 Low of byrth and simple in vp growyng
 Of Albanes tyl fortune made hym kyng 4270
 ¶ Agayn whos pride þe Romanes gan werrey
 fful myghtylie he oppressyng his cuntre
 And for kyng Mecuis lyste hym not obey
 Þei caste þem fully avengid for to be
 Because his byrth was but of lowe degre
 And was rysen vp vnto estate royall
 Þei þem purposid yeve hym a soden fall
 ¶ Hasty clymyng of pouerte seete on hight
 Whan wronge title maketh hym to ascende 4280
 With vnware peyse of his own wyght
 A soden fall makith hym to descende
 Whan he liste not his surquedie attende
 ffro whens he cam nor hymselfe to knowe
 Tyl godde and fortune his pompe hath ouerþrowe
 ¶ ffor þis Mecius of *presumpcion*
 Thought agayn Romanes his pride myght availe
 Gan werre agayn þem by rebellion
 Was not ferful þeire noblesse to assaile
 Tyl on e a day was signyd a bataile
 Both þeir hastys within a felde to make 4290
 To take þeire parte were it of soure or swete
 ¶ That tyme in Rome reignyd Hastilius
 A manlie man and a ful worthi knyght
 Betwene hym concludid and kyng Mecius.
 They tweyn to mete in stele armyd bright

ffor both batailez to trie oute þe right
 By iuste accorde and þerfro not varie
 Þe partie venquesshid to be tributarie
 ¶And holy put hym in subieccion
 With intretyng or any more delay 4300
 And finallie for shorte conclusioun
 Kyng Hastilius þe triumphe wan þat day
 Pat Albanes ne couth not say no nay
 But þat Romanes is put is in memorie
 By singler bataile hadde wanne þe victor[ie]
 ¶Thus haddde Romanes fyrste possessioun
 Of Albanes to obey þem and to drede
 Mecius yolden and sworn vnto þe town
 Neuer to rebell for fauour nor for mede
 But for he was double founde indede 4310
 Of his assuraunce and fals to þeir [cite]
 He was chastisid anon as ye shal s[e]

[43v, col. a]

¶Agayn ffidenates a cuntre of Italie
 Kyng Hastilius for þeire rebellion
 Caste he wolde mete þem in batail
 ffor comyn profite and for defencion
 Both of his cite and of his roiall town
 And for to afforce his partie in werkyng
 Of Albanes he sent vnto þe kyng
 ¶To com in haste with his hole cheualrie 4320
 An tarie not in no maner wyse
 But make hym stronge to susteine his partie
 Lyke his behest as ye haue herde devise
 But kyng Mecius ful falslie gan practise
 A sleightie treson and a couerte wyle
 Agayn his promisse þe Romanes to begyle
 ¶Yit he ontewarde pretendyng to be true
 Cam to þe felde with a ful grete meny
 Lyvyng in hope to se som chaunges newe
 Pat he on Rome myght avengid be 4330
 And specialli þat he myght se
 Kyng Hastilius of froward fals envie
 Pat day outrayd with all his chevalrie
 ¶But whan he sawe þe Romanes enbateld
 And ffyndenate on þat oþer syde
 Their wardes redy for to haue assaylid
 He couertlie did on an hyll abyde
 And to nere fro liste not go nor ride
 Nor his person put in Ieopartie
 But who was strengest to holde on þat partie 4340
 ¶Where of Romanes ~~ful~~ fell in suspeccion

Of Kyng Mecius whan þei toke hede
 Tyll Hastilius of high discrecion
 Thurgh his knyghthode put þem oute of drede
 And gan dissimul of Mecius þe falskede
 And to comfort his knyghtes of intent
 Sayde what he did by his assent
 ¶ He was ful loth þat his cheualrie
 Shulde knowe þe effecte of Metius treson
 Which cause myght in all or in partie 4350
 fful grete hyndryng by som occasion
 To deme in hym falsnesse or treson
 Yit of trouth þe story berth witnesse
 All þat he ment was vntrouth and falsnesse
 ¶ Thus of mannhode and of high prudence
 He to his knyghtes gave hert and hardynesse
 Made þem set on by so grete violence
 Pat he þe felde gate of high prowesse
 On ffidenates brought in so grete distresse
 And so outrayed in force on euery syde 4360
 Be for þe Romanes þat þei ne durste abyde
 ¶ And whan Mecius saw þem þus ontrayed
 By maner of feynyd fals gladnesse
 Loke as he had in hert be well apayd
 To Hastilius anon he gan hym dresse
 Hymself reioysyng by a countrefet lyknesse
 And for his menyng pleynlie was conceyvid
 So as he cam right so he was receyvid
 ¶ Thus whan Mecius stode in his presence
 With a pretence of feithful stablenesse 4370
 And all þe apporte of trouth in apparence
 He shewed hath his expert doublenesse
 Vndre swete hony couerte bitternesse
 [Fr]endlie visage with worde smoth and pleyn
 [Thouh] mouth and hert departid were on tweyn
 [¶] But Hastilius hath all his herte espyed
 [And] his compassid falsnes in treson
 [And] vpon hath iustlie fantasied
 [A peyne] acordyng peysid of reson
 [Hym to] punissh by a double passion 4380

[43v, col. b]

This is to mene like as he was diuidid
 A double turment for hym he hath providid
 ¶ This was his dome and his fatall peyne
 By Hastilius contryvid of iustise
 His fete his armys betwen charietes tweyid
 Nakyd and bare þe stoue doth devyse
 To be bounde and knyht in travers wyse

Contrariuslie þe haste to drawe and hale
 Tyl all his bodie were rent on peces smale
 ¶And right as he was cause of ful grete tro[uble] 4390
 ffonde ay indede moste ful of variaunce
 Perfore his peyn was made in maner double
 Ryght as hymselfe was double in gouernaunce
 ffals of his othe of heste and of suraunce
 And double in menyng as he hath perseuerde
 So at his ~~nede~~ ende his membris were disseuer[ed]
 ¶His fete were drawe from þe hede assondre
 Per was no ð ioynthe with oþer for to abyde
 Here was a legge and an arme lay yendre
 Thus iche membre from oþer gan diuide 4400
 And for his couth holde on oþer syde
 By fals pretence to eyþer partie true
 Hym to chastise was founde a peyn newe
 ¶Lo here þe ende of double fals menyng
 Whan worde and herte be contrarius
 Othe and beheste fals founde in a kyng
 Of Albanes as was þis Mecius
 O noble princis prudent and vertuus
 Lete neuer storie aftyr more recorde
 Pat worde and dede shuld in yow discorde 4410
 ¶ffor kyng Mecius varyng ^variant^ of corage
 Whos inward menyng was euer on treson set
 Traynes contryvyng with a fayre visage
 His thought his hert with double corde fret
 Hem callid Bochas deceit and fals baret
 Which ð vice descryvyng concludith of reson
 ffraude of all fraudes is fals deceptioun
 ¶ffo with a face flatryng and pesible
 Pretendyng trouthe undre fals plesaunce
 With his panteris perilus and terrible 4420
 Trappith innocents þat with graynes of myschaunce
 I mene deceit þat with his contenaunce
 ffolke inclineth simple and reccles
 And þem werreyth vndre a face of pes
 ¶Puissaunce of princis famus and honorable
 Haue ben deceyvid by þis traitoress
 And folk moste prudent in þeir estate notable
 Haue ben disturbid by such fals doublenes

 And many a knyght vertuus and prowesse
 Haue been intripte for all his high renown 4430
 ¶Deceit deceyvith and shall be deceyvid 4432
 ffor by deceit who is deceyveable
 Pof his deceites be not oute preceyvid
 To a deceyvere deceit is returnable

ffraude quit with fraude is guerdon ^{^ful^} covenable
 ffor who with fraude fraudulent is founde
 To a defrauder fraude will ay rebounde
 ¶What shuld I more of deceit endite
 Touchyng þe fraude of kyng Mecius 4440
 ffor I me caste now finallie to write
 The fatale ende of Hastilius
 Which was þe fyrste as saith Valerius
 In Rome cite þat auctours knowe
 Amonge kynges þat were purpul hewe
 ¶But aftyr all þis his triumphall nobles
 And mony vncouth knyghtly high emprise
 ffortune to appall þe pris of his prowesse

[44r, col. a]

Made hym to be in ful frowarde wyse
 Recceles and slough ðe to do sacrifice 4450
 To Jubiter for which sent from hevyn
 He was consumpte with soden fyry levyn
 ¶Here men may seen þe revolucions
 Of ffortunes double purviaunce
 [T]hough þe moste myghty of Roman champions
 [H]aue sodenlie be brought vnto myschaunce
 [A]nd þeir outrages to put in remembraunce
 [G]rete conquestes turnyd to woo fro ioye
 ffor a rebuke I sende þem þis lenvoie
 ¶Rome remembre of þi fundacion 4460
 And of what peple þou toke þi begynnyng
 Thy beldyng of fals dissencion
 Of slaughter mordir and outragius robberyng
 Yevyng to vs a maner knowlegyng
 A fals begynnyng auctours determine
 Shal by processe com to Ruine
 ¶Where be þin emperours moste souereigie of renoun
 Kynges exilid for outragius lyvyng
 Thy Senators with worthy Scipion
 Poetis olde . þi triumphes reheryng 4470
 Þi laureat knyghtes moste statly in ^{^peire^} ridyng
 Þin aureat glorie þi nobles to illumine
 Þus by longe processe brough vnto ruine
 ¶Wher is now Cesar þat toke possession
 ffyrste of þe Empire þe triumphes vsurpyng
 Or wher is Lucan þat makith mencion
 Of all his conquest by cerius wrytyng
 Octauian most solempnelie reignyng
 Wher is becom þeir lordeship or þeir ~~reigne~~ ^{^lyne^}
 Processe of yeris haue brought it to ruine 4480
 ¶Wher is þe pales of roial mansion

With a stature clere of golde shynyng
 By Romulus wrought *and* set in þat dongon
 Wher is þi temple of *crystal* bright shynyng
 Made half of golde most richeli monstring
 Þe heuenlie spheres by compas wrought *and* lyne
 Processe of ~~yeres~~ ^{longe} processe haue brought to ruine
 ¶ Wher is Tullius chefe lanterne of þi town
 In Rethoric all oþer surmountyng
 Morall Senec or prudent saide Caton 4490
 In comyn profete all way preferryng
 Or rightful Traiane moste iuste ⁱⁿ his demyng
 Which on no partie liste not to decline
 But longe processe hath brought ^{all} to ruine
 ¶ Wher is þe temple of þi proteccion
 Made by virgil moste curius of beldyng
 Þe image erecte for euery region
 Whan any londe was founde rebellyng
 Towarde þat partie a smal bell herd ryngyng
 To þat province þe image did incline 4500
 Which by longe processe was brought ^{vn}to ruine
 ¶ Wher is also þe grete extorcion
 Of Counsellors and prefectes oppressyng
 Þe dictatours þe fals collusion
 Of decembir þe froward deceyvvyng
 And of Tribunus þe fraudulent werkyng
 Of all ichon þe odius ravine
 Hath by processe þe brought vnto ruine
 ¶ Wher is become þi dominacion
 Þe grete tributes þi tresors enrichyng 4510
 Þe worlde all hole in þi subieccion
 Thy swerde of vengeaunce all peple manacyng

[44r, col. b]

Euer gredie to encrece þi getyng
 Noþing by grace whis þat is diuine
 Which hath þe brought by processe to ruine
 ¶ In þi moste highest exaltacion
 Þi proude tiraunez provinces conq^eryng
 To godde contrarie by longe rebellion
 Goddes goddesse falslie obeyyng
 About þe sterrys þi surequedus clymyng 4520
 Til olde vengeaunce þi nobles did vntwyne
 With new compleynt to shew þi ruine
 ¶ Lay doun þi pride and þi presumpcion
 Þi pompos boste þi lordeshippes encresyng
 Confesse þin outrage and lay þi boste adoun
 Of fals goddes pleynlie diffyyng
 Lyfte vp þin hert vnto þat heuenli kynge

Which with his blode þi sorowes for to fyne
 Hath made þi raansom to saue þe from ruine
 ¶ffrom olde Saturne drawe þin affeccion 4530
 His golden worlde fulli despysyng
 ^And from Jubiter make a dig^e^ssion
 His sylueryn tyme hertlie despys[ing]^
 Resorte agayn with wyl and hole menyng
 To hym þat is lorde of þe ordres nyne
 Which mekelie died to saue þe fro ruine
 ¶Pof Mars be myghty in his asse ascension
 By influence victorius disposyng
 And bright Phebus yevith consolacion
 To worldlie princis þeir noblesse avauncyng 4540
 fforsake þeir rites and þi fals offryng
 And to þat lorde bow adown þi chyne
 Which shed his blode to saue þe fro ruine
 ¶Vengid Mercurie chefe lorde and patrone
 Of eloquence and of fayre spekyng
 fforsake his seruice in þin opinion
 And serue þe lorde þat governith al þing
 Þe sterred hevyn þe speres eke mevyng
 Which for þi sake was crownyd with a spyne
 His herte eke percid to saue þe from ruine 4550
 ¶Caste vp Venus þe fals derision
 His fyry bronde hyr flateries rennyng
 Of Diana þe transunctacion
 Now bright now pale now clere now drapyng
 Of blynd Cupido þe fraudulent mokkyng
 Of Iuno Bachus Proserpina Lucyne
 ffor now but criste may saue þe fro ruine
 ¶Voide of Circes þe besty all poyson
 Of Cirenes þe furius enchauntyng
 Lete not Medusa do þe no treson 4560
 And fro Gorgones turne þi lokyng
 And let Sindereser haue þe in k kepyng
 Pat cryste Ihesu may be þi medicine
 Agayn such raskall and saue þe fro ruine
 ¶Of all fals Idols make abiuracion
 To Simulacres do no worshipping
 Make þi resorte to cristes passion
 Which may by mercy redresse þin erryng
 And by his grace repaire þi fallyng
 So þou obey his vertuus discipline 4570
 Trust þat he shall restore þi ruine
 ¶His mercy is surmountyng of foyson
 Euer encresith with amenusyng
 Euer at þe full iche tyme and iche ceson
 And neuer wavith by non eclipsyng

Whan men liste make devoutlie þeir [reknyng]
To lene þeir synne *and* com to his doctrine
He redy is to kepe þem from ruine
¶O Rome Rome al olde abusioun
Of cerimonies falsli disvsyng 4580

[44v, col. a]

Lay þem aside and in conclusion
Crie godde *mercy* þi trespassis repentyng
Truste he wyll not refuse þin askyng
The to receyve to labour in his vine
Eternallie to saue þe fro ruine
¶O noble *princis* of high discrecion
Sith in þis worlde þer is non abydyng
Peysith conscience betwen wyll and reson
While ye haue leyser of hert imagenyng
Ye bere nought þ from hens but youre *deseruyng* 4590
Let þis conceit ay in youre þought myne
By example of Rome hough all goth to ruine [end of Book II]

[94r, col. b8]

De casu Sixti filii pompeii . Pirati nequissimi

FOlowyng þe ordre Bochas of his book **Book VI.3501**
With penne in hande castyng vp his ie
Beforn hym cam þale pale of chere and loke
Amyghty prince son vnto pompeii
Callid Sixtus which as bookes sey
Delityd hym with a gret navey
Like a pirate to a robbe on þe see
¶To his fadre contrarie in such case
ffor euery pirate of custum he did hate
Vpon þe see whos vsage allwey was 3510
Agayn þem proudelie to debate
Pursuyd þem boþ erlie and eke late
Wher þis Sixtus to his grete reprefe
Was on þe see a robber and a þefe
¶Þe slaundre of hym began to sprede ferre
Reportid was to many a ferre cuntre
With ¶ Triumvir þis Sixtus gan a werre
Which is an office and a dignite
By þe Romanes committid vnto .iij
Notable estates chosyn for cheualrie 3520
Þe empire all hole to govern and to guye
¶Þe first of þem namyd Lepidus
And þe secund callid Octavian
þe þrid in noumbre was namyd Antonius

Agayn which .iij. Sixtus þis proude man
 Of surquedie a new werre began
 Afforn by Iulius for his ~~rebell~~ rebellion
 Bannysshid for euer oute of Rome toun
 ¶Triumvir of politic *gouernaunce*
 Well avysyd afforn in þeir resons 3530
 Tretyng for pees by notable purviaunce
 With proude Sixtus vndre condicions
 Write and inacte in þeir *conuencions*
 But anon *after* liste no while tarie
 He to his *promisse* was froward and contrarie
 ¶ffor his convicte *contrarius falsnesse*
 And on þe se for his robberie
 Bochas of hym write no longe *processe*
 Hauyng disdeigne his name to magnifie
 ffor he to vertu liste noþing applie 3540
 Þe different cause . which is in þe estate
 Betwen knyghthode and lyfe of a pirate
 ¶With fugityves þeves and robbers
 And men exilid oute of Rome toun
 Bannyshid peple fals conspiratours
 With *oper* convicte of morþer and treson
 He toke all such vndre protection
 And on Moena a þef of his ~~in~~ certeyn
 Of xl shippes he made hym a Capteyn
 ¶Þe sayde Moena vnwarlie þo began 3550
 ffolow þe nature of his condicion
 Allied hymself with Octavian
 Agayn his lorde by ful fals treson
 With all his nave and shippis he cam down
 Sparid not ~~of~~ to mete of verrey pride
 With Menecrates þat was on ~~S~~ Sixtus syd[e]
 ¶But als sone as þe batel began
 And þe parties togyddre shuld goon
 All þe vesells of Octavian
 With sodon tempest were drownyd eury[ichon] 3560
 Besyde a Castell beldid with lyme [*and ston*]
 Callid Nauletun wher yit to grete [*repreef*]
 Sixtus fled and was brought to [*myscheef*]
 ¶Went into Grece to make hym st[ronge ageyn]
 To holde a bataile with Anton[ius]
 Take in his *commyng* b[y strengthe of a capteyn]

[94v, col. a]

Longyng to Antonie callid ffurnius
 Whilom newew to Cesar Iulius
 And or duke Sixtus myght ferþer wende
 He slayn was and made þer his ende 3570

¶ Of Triumvir in þe Empire as I tolde
Per was a Captein callid lapidus
 Which by his office like as he was olde
 Ryght bysy was þe booke rehersith þus
 To reconsile þe proude Antonius
 To þe grace of grete Octavian
 Iche þing forgete wherof þe werre began
 ¶ And to conclude shortlie who list se
 ffortune awhile was to hym gracious
 Þe Empire all hoole governd by þeis .iij.
 Lordship of Affrik hadde lepidus
 By þe which he wex proude and contrarius
 To hym assignyd vndre Commissions
 ffully þe noumbre of xx. legions
 ¶ Wherof in hert he caught such a pride
 Causyng by *processe* his destructioun
 Surquedi a while was his guyde
 ffrom his estate tyll he was fall down
 Namelie whan he of fals *presumpcion*
 Toke vpon hym of malice to werrey
 Þe saide Octavian and gan hym disobey
 ¶ Whan Octavian his malice did see
 Þat he gan wex sodenlie contrarie
 He threw hym down from his dignite
 Caste hym in exile liste no lengar tarie
 Lo hough fortune sodenlie gan varie
 To make hym þat hadde *gouernaunce*
 Of all Affrik to com to myschaunce
 ¶ Anoper prince Cesar lucius
 Exilid was from Rome þe cite
 By his vncler þe saide Antonius
 Of wylfulnessse and hasty cruelte
 ffor in þat tyme as men may rede and se
 Contryvid causes wer founde vp of malice
 To exile *princis* notable holde and wyse
 ¶ Som for cause þei helde of Cesar
 Oper for Pompei þat helde on þat partie
 Summe for þeir goode afforn or þei wer ware
 Summe for suspicion and summe for envie
 Summe for þei coup not flatter nor lie
 Summe for vertues which was grete rouþ
 Because þei wer so stable in þeir trouþ
 ¶ In þis trouble dredeful and odius
 As is rehersid in ordre ye may rede
 Þe noble knight paulus lucius
 Exilid was of malice and of hatred
 ffolowyng vpon þe grete horrible dede
 Þe pitevus deþ and þe hateful case

3580

3590

3600

3610

Of grete Antonie and Cleopatras
 ¶The Tragedie of þeis tweyn 3620
 ffor me as nowe shal be set asyde
 Because Chauser þe poete of Briten
 Seying þeir hertes couþe not diuide
 In his booke þe legende of Cupide
 [Re]membryng þer as oon þei did indure
 [So were] þei buryyd in oon sepulture
 ¶¶W A thyng onys saide by labour of Chauser
 [W]ere presumpcion me to take agayn
 [Who]s mak yng was so notable and entiere
 [Right] compendius and notable in certeine 3630
 [Wh]ich to reherse þe labour were but veyn
 [Boch]as remembryng hough Cleopatras
 [Caused A]ntonie þat he destroyd was
 ¶¶Hir aua]rice was so importable
 [He supri]syd with hir grete fayrnesse
 [ffolwyng þeir] lustes foule and abhominable
 [She desiryng to] haue ben empresse
 [And he alas of fro]ward wyfulnessse
 [To plesen hire vnhapp]ylie began

[94v, col. b]

To werrey þe grete Octavian 3640
 ¶ffroward ambicion set his hert afyre
 To clyme vp to þe imperiall se
 To haue possession of þe hole Empire
 Toke vpon hym yf it wolde haue be
 To reyne allon in Rome þe cite
 Cleopatras to fostre in hir pride
 Title of Octavian for to set asyde
 ¶With multitude of many legions
 As I haue tolde agayn Octavian
 To hym acrochid of diuerse regions 3650
 Grete multitude of many a manlie man
 ffyrst on þe se to Werrey he began
 Wher he was fyrst maugre all his myght
 To his confusion vnwarlie put to flight
 ¶Despeirid fled home to his cuntre
 Knowyng non helpe nor no recure
 But to his increre of his aduersite
 Whan þat he sawe his woful aventure
 Agayn Octavian he myght nat indure
 With a sharpe sworde his daunger to diuerte 3660
 Hymselfe he rose vnwarlie to þe herte
 ¶Of whos deþ þe quene Cleopatras
 Toke a sorowe verray importable
 Because þer was no recure in þe case

Pos of his wo she wolde be partable
Whos fatal ende pitevus and lamentable
Slough eke hirsselfe loue so didde hir raue
Aftyr þei boþ buryyd in oon grave [end of Book VI]

¶Pis storie endid . laste of þe vj^{te}. ðe booke

Book VII.1

Bochas wery þought for þe best
Of grete travaile purposid in his looke
ffel in a slombre leynyng on a chest
ffully in purpose to haue take his reste

But even as he shuld his rest haue take
Cam a grete prees and made hym to awake

¶ffyrst of þat feleship cam þe son and eyre
Of Antoni with bloode besprent all his wede

Callid eke Antonie fall in grete dispeire

10

Because Octavian bare to hym hatred
Whos swerd he fled quakyng in his drede
To an olde temple socoure for to haue
Trustyng from deþ þe place shuld hym saue

¶In þat temple Cesar was deified

Of whom by Romanes set vp a grete image

But whan he sawe þat he was espied

He ranne to Iulius high vpon þe stage

Gan hym to embrace in his pitevus rage

He rent away by soden violence

20

Vnwarlie slayn þer geynyd no difference

¶Next in ordre cam Cesarius

Of whom þer fell a wondur pitevus case

Whilom beget of Cesar Iulius

Vpon þe yong fayre quene Cleopatras

Slayn in his youþ . þus worþi Iohn Bochas

As Octavian did hymselfe assigne

ffor agayn Romanes shuld not maligne

¶ffolowyng in ordre Iulia began

Hir grevus pleynt to Bochas specifie

30

Whilom doughter to grete Octavian

With wepyng ieen began to yell and crie

Which be hir fadre ^{to} punish hir lecherie

~~Ex~~ Exilid was oute of hir cuntre

ffor lak of socoure died in pouerte

¶Hir son Agrippa yong and tendre of age

Born of high bloode Bochas doþ expresse

Cam next in ordre pale of his visage

Which spent his tyme in slombre *and* idlennesse

ffrowarde to vertu and for his wrecchidnesse

40

Octavian which was grete routh

Suffrid hym die for myschefe of his slouþ

¶After Agrippa cam forþ anon right

Cassius of parme a famous grete cuntre

Which in Italie was holde manlie knight

[95r, col. a]

With Marcus Antonius wel cherisshid *and* sicure
Abode in his courte and *per*withhall parde

Gretelie allowyd fyrst for his cheualrie

And for his notable and famus poise

¶ An *per*withhall . he had in existence 50

A right grete name and stode in grete fauour

ffor his knyghthode and for his high prudence

After accused vnto *pe* Emperouur

Octavian for a ~~coniuuration~~ *coniuratour*

He shuld haue be of froward fals intent

To Iulius deþ fullie of assent

¶ ffor *pe* which be biddying of Octavian

Take he was beyng but yong of age

And as myn auctour wel remembre can

Broute befor Iulius high vpon a stage 60

Per offrid vp vnto his image

By roiall *þ* deþ *pe* story tellith þus

ffor *pe* fals morþre of Cesar Iulius

¶ After *pe* deþ of *pe* sayd Cassius

Anoþer cam of Rome *pe* cite

Which as I rede callid was Galbus

Of a pretourer hauyng *pe* dignite

And for suspicion slayn eke was he

His ieen fyrst oute of his hede were rente

ffor Iulius deþe þan into exile sent 70

¶ Toward his exile by Brigantes he was slaynn

And after þat within a little while

Of his labour nouþer gladde nor fayn

Bochas began to directe his style

To grete herodes breuelie to compile

His grevus fall and holy *pe* maner

To set in ordre . here next as ye shall here

¶ Remembryng fyrst in Iurie he was king

Antipater his fadre who so lyste to se

In Arabia mighty reignyng 80

Ouer *pe* province callid Idume

Pis same herodes *ga* warden of Galile

Ordeynd was fyrst for his high prudence

And for his notable knyghtlie excellence

¶ ffamus in manhode famus of his kynne

ffamus also by procreacion

I rede also he hadde wyvys .ix.

Among all as made is mencion

To his plesaunce and his opinion

Pe maister of stories rehersid *per* was oon 90

Mariaunnes fayerst of euerychon
 ¶By whom ~~had~~ he hadde worþi sonnes tweyn
 Alexandre and Aristobolus
 But for his sister did at hym disdeigne
 Callid Saloma þe storie tellith þus
 Ve vnto hir wex suspicius
 Because she was accused of envie
 By Saloma touching avoutrie
 ¶Agayn hir of rancoure sodenlie
 He gan to hert grevuslie disdeigne 100
 With rigorus swerde he slough hir furiuslie
 But as þe storie doþ vs acertein
 He for hir deþ felt afterward grete peyn
 Euer whan it cam to his remembraunce
 Hir parte . hir chere . hir womanlie plesaunce
 ¶Lo what it is a prince to be hasty
 To euery tale of rancour to assent
 And counceles procede wylfullie
 To execucion of froward fals intent
 ffor herodes so sore did hym repent 110
 ffor he forþought fel into many
 Of hertyli sorowe and melancolie
 ¶Rest hadde he non nouþer day nor nyght
 Troublid with furie þat he wex frentyk
 With dremys vexed and many h ^an^ vncouþ sight
 Oh chere nor coloure to no man he was lyke
 And euery moneth onys luntik
 A grete while he hadde þis woful lyfe
 ffor soroes onlie he hadde slaynn his wyfe
 ¶And as þe storie well reherse can 120

[95r, col. b]

In þe Capitolie amyddis Rome þe cite
 By Antonie and by Octavian
 He crownyd was and made king of Iude
 By þe Senate made þeron a decre
 And registrid þat he and his kynred
 Shuld in þat lande linealli procede
 ¶In Rome was made þe confirmacion
 To þis herodes bookes specificie
 Beyng a foren þe translacion
 Was made of Iuda and Iurie 130
 Sceptre crown with all þe regallie
 By hym vsurpid as ye haue herde befor
 Vpon þe I tyme whan criste Ihesu was born
 ¶Pis same herodes by procuracion
 Of Antoni didde also occupie
 By Augustus plene commission

Þe grete estate callid Tretrachie
 In .ij. kyngdams with all þe Regallie
 Of Traconitides . Iturie eke also
 By þe Romanes made lorde of boþ .ij. 140
 ¶ Þe maister of histories rehersith of hym þus
 ffor commendacion in especiall
 In Ascalon he beldyd a statelie house
 Of right grete cost a pales ful roiall
 Was non so riche for to rekyn all
 After which myn auctour doþ so wright
 He callid was herode ~~Ascalon~~ Ascalonite
 ¶ Þis same herodes cruel of nature
 Of chere and porte passyng ambicius
 Ay to be vengid did his bysy cure 150
 On all þat were to hym contrarius
 His wyvis broþer Aristobolus
 In Ierusalem chefe bysshop as I rede
 ffalslie he slough of malice and hatred
 ¶ Vniustlie reignd born hevy þurgh all his ealuie 155
 Anoper Bysshop in Ierusalem 157
 Callid hircanius myn auctour list not lie
 Þis same herodes in his ~~mal~~ melancolie
 Slough hym vnwarlie by rancour ful vengeable 160
 Syttyng at dynere at his own table
 ¶ Þer was no man of corage more cruell
 Nor more desyrus to be magnified
 To make his name also perpetuell
 iiij. statelie Cites he hath edified
 Of which þe names ben here specified
 Cesarea Sebasten cites souereigne
 Antipadra Cipre þat oper tweyn
 ¶ He hadde also a fals condicion
 To truste non þat was of his kynred 170
 His sonnes tweyn had in suspicion
 Þeir purpos was to sle hym of hatred
 Whan he were dede hopyng to succede
 And causles as fadre moste vnkynde
 Made þem be slayn in storie þus I fynde
 ¶ In all his werkyng he was founde double
 A grete tiraune holde þurgh his realme
 Neuer þing so grete did hym trouble
 As whan iij. kynges cam to Ierusalem
 Ihesu to seke þat was born in Bethleem 180
 Boldlie affermyng cause of þeir commyng
 Was to wrship þat blyssid yong kyng
 ¶ Þe which þing whan he did aduertise
 Prophecies remembrid and wrytynges
 Wh Within hymselfe a mene he can devis[e]

ffyrst to destroie þeis holy famus kynges
 Namelie whan he knew of þeir offrynges
 Imagenyng gan suppose blyve
 Þe child was born þat shuld hym deprive
 ¶ Newly descendid fro dauid doun by lyne 190
 Caste almoste herodes in a rage
 Of cursid hert gan frowardlie maligne
 Like a tiraune of venemus outrage
 Slough all þe children within ij. yere a[ge]
 Aboute Bethleem a ful large spa[ce]
 He spared non for fauour nor for gra[ce]
 ¶ On of his childre beyng at [norcerye]

[95v, col. a]

As þe storie puttith in remembraunce
 Of aventure or þei coupe in espie
 His knyghtes slough I trow it was vengeance 200
 ffor he ne þought neuer to do repentaunce
 And so he muste þat wex agayn criste woode
 Which for his sake shedde Innocentes bloode
 ¶ Þe noumbre of childen þat were slayn indede
 Aboute Bethleem and in þoo parties
 C. xl. iiij. m^{ll}. as I reede
 ij. yere of age sought oute by espies
 Of herodes and for þe prophecies
 Of cristes byrth mencion did make
 Þei were ichon slayn for his sake 210
 ¶ ffro þat day forþ as made is mencion
 He fell in many vncouþ maladie
 His flesh gan turne to corrupcion
 ffret with wermys vpon ich partie
 Which hym assaylid by grete turmentrie
 His legges swellid tornyd blake *and* stene
 Wher vengeance werkijþ adu all medecine
 ¶ Of his seknesse þe stynke was so horrible
 To wayte on hym no man myght abyde
 Vnto hymselfe his careyn wex odible 220
 So sore troublid he was on iche syde
 Lechis for hym did abape provide
 But all for nought in such myschefe he stode
 Of grevus constreint he sodenlie wex woode
 ¶ In tokyn wherof was wery of his lyfe
 So importable was his mortall paynn
 To pare an appil he askyd a sharp knyfe
 His malady did hym so constreyne
 ffully in purpos to cut his hert in tweyn
 Þe knyfe he raught leyser whan he founde 230
 On stode besyde and bakward drew his hond

¶ffor peyn vnneth his wynde he myght drawe
Gafe all his frendes in commaundment
By a decre and of a furius lawe
Pat all þe worþi of parties adiacent
Which þat were fayn or glad in þeir intent
Of his dep . he voide of all pite
Pe same day þei shuld slayn be

¶Pis cursid wrech þis odius caytief
I reede of non stode ferþer oute of grace 240
In sorow and myschef endid hath his lyfe
Ich man was gladde whan he shuld passe
And for his storie doþ þis booke difface
With wofol chaunces of hym whan I write
Perfor of hym I caste no more to indite

\\De casu Herodis Regis//

Of herodes þe vnware cursid fall
The lyfe vngracius of hym and his knyred
Euer vengeable in his estate royall
His wyfe his chylde slough of olde hatred 250
Innocentes he made in Bethleem for to blede
Reignyng in Iuda born of a foren line
The fyrst tiraune ye may þe bible reede
Which agayn criste gan frowardlie maligne

¶His swerd of rigoure cruel and mortall
Ay redy whet to do vengeaunce indede
Hasty fumus . with furies infernall
Of wylful malice innocent bloode to shede
Did excecucion also in womanhede
Slough his allies which was a cursid signe 260
Was þe fyrst cause he stode in drede
Which agayn criste gan frowardlie maligne

¶He wolde þat non were to hym egall
Pat day alyve in Israel to succede
Pe byrth of criste dred in especiall
Cause fro Iesse his lyne gan floure and seede
He but a foren cam in by fraude and mede
Withoute title . to þat estate vndigne
[Pe] fyrste also who liste take hede
Which agayn criste gan frowardlie maligne

¶[Noble] princis þat govern all 270
[This] large worlde boþ in length and breede
[Whan ye sit] highest in youre roiall stall

[95v, col. b]

Do not þe peple oppresse ne ouerleede
Vpon herodes remembre as ye rede
In what myschefe þat tiraune did fyne
To shew þat noon shall in his purpose speede

Which agayn criste doþ frowardlie maligne

De casu Archelai Regis

Compendiuslie as ye haue herd þe fall
Of herodes remembrid by Bochas
Hough by his testament set in especiall 280
To succede was Herod Antipas
In haste exilid of hym þis was þe case
By Octavian to vien as I rede
Archelaus orderid to succeed

¶Sonn of herodes callid þe secunde
Which in effecte toke possessioun
Of Ierusalem reignyd as it is founde
Of whom myn auctor for shorte conclusion
Makith in his booke but small mencion
Hym and his broþer set sodenlie asyde 290
Of þem .ij. list no lengar abide

¶Saue þat he write howe forsayde Antipas
\\At vien a myghty gret cite//
In exile son after slayn was
Archelaus succedyng in Iude
With Herodias þe story who liste se
By Agrippa to Tiberi accusyd Tiberi accusid
Of certein crimes coup not be excusid

¶A certen tyme commaundid to prisoun
Of þe Emperour coup neuer gete grace 300
Bannyshid hym from his region
Into spayn for a certen space
And his worship breuelie to deface
ffortune causid to his final repreve
He died þer in pouerte and myschefe

¶Pe fatall ende rehersid of þoo tweynn
In what distresse þat þei didde fyne
Myn auctor after gan his penne ordeyn
To write þe case by many a woful lyne 310
Vpon þe stryfe betwen Messalyne .
And oþer tweyn standyng by his syde
Befor Bochas hough þei didde chyde

¶Before Bochas þei cam all þre to pleyn
Messalyne wyfe vnto Claudius
Agayn whome þer were oþer tweyn
Calligula and Tiberius
In whos tyme was slayn crist ihesu
Touchyng þe bato þat was among þeis .iiij.
Suyd þe processe her folowyng ye shal se

**De casu Messaline vxoris Claudij . Et Caligule
et Tiberus .**

This emperesse namyd messaline 320
 As I haue tolde was wyfe to Claudius
 Successoure as bookes determyne
 To Calligula callid Gaius
 And as I fynd þat Tiberius
 With Calligula boþe woode for tene
 Stood affore Bochas and messaline betwene
 ¶Metyng all þre with furius looke and chere
 Gaius Calligula callid by his name
 Withoute reuerence or eny maner shame 330
 With an exordie to diffame 331
 Gan fyrst reherce anon as ye shal here 329
 Bochas present folly gan abrayde 332
 To Messalina and even þus he sayde
 ¶Pu sclaudrid woman noysyd in lechery
 Purgh all þe worlde as folke þi name atwite
 And reportid for þin avoutre
 What doste þu here in þi mornyng habit
 I trow þu comyst of purpose to visit
 In þis place þe vnhappy women fyve
 Touchyng disclaundrie þat euer were alyve 340
 ¶Pe fyrst of þem callid Amylia
 And lepida was callid þe secunde
 Lyuia plaucia and þe fyfte Elya
 Diffamyd ichon indede as it was founde
 In token wherof þe lecheri to confounde [End of quire]

[96r, col. a]

Of Emilia in avoutre take
 Was by þe law of hys lorde forsake
 ¶By þe whilom was know þat Drusus
 Stanglid was and mordrid by poysoun
 Lik to Claudia daughter of Claudius 350
 Which by hir lorde þe boke makith mencioun
 Was þrowen ^oute^ vnto hir confusioun
 ffor hir defautes founde in avoutrie
 Sclaundrid foreuer þer was no remedie
 ¶Pu coudest ~~not~~ whilom make þi lorde to slepe
 With certen drynke to caste hym in a rage
 By which he was made his bedde to kepe
 To gete leyser in þi flouryng age
 ffor to mysuse of fals lust þi corage
 A myghtis tyme toke vpon a wede 360
 And as a bordell didist amys indede
 ¶Pin appetit I was veri ai vnstauncheable
 It is a shame to write it or expresse
 Þi hateful lyfe was so abhominable
 Tiberie and I . can bere herof witesse

And with þat worde anon she gan hir dresse
 Whan she had herde all þeir fel language
 Gaue þem þis answere with a sadde visage
 ¶ Certis *quod* she I couþe neuer kepe
 To saue myselfe a woful creature 370
 I haue grete cause to compleyne and to wepe
 My sclaudorus lyfe which I may not recure
 But I suppose I hadde it of nature
 To be such on for be dayes olde
 An astronomer so my fadre tolde
 ¶ At my birth takyng þe ascendent
 Tolde longe affore of my mys gouernaunce
 Þe sonne þe mone toward þe orient
 Were in þe signe þat berith þe balaunce 380
 And saide also for mor assuraunce
 Þe same signe had be descripcion
 Þe fote in virgine armes in þe scorpion
 ¶ In myddis of þe hevyn was venus exaltate
 With mars comynd þe booke makyþ mencion
 And iubiter was also infortunate
 To my said disposicioun
 Thin þe ffysh helde þoo his mansion
 Þus by þe lordeship pleynlie of venus
 I was disposid for to be lecherus
 ¶ In hir excuse þe saide messaline 390
 Began to allegge hir constellacioun
 But prudent clerke pleynlie determyne
 Of þe heuynlie course þe disposicioun
 Is obeisaunt and subiecte to reson
 Þat euery man which wel governyd is .
 Is not constreynynd of fors to do amysse
 ¶ Nor byndeth no man of necessite
 Vicius luste frowardlie to sue
 A vertuus man standith at his liberte
 ffals inclinacions of prudence to remew 400
 Euery man by grace may eschewe
 All þing to vertu þat is contrarie founde
 ffor þer is no synne but it be voluntarie
 ¶ Yit for all þis þe sayd messaline
 In hir excuse wolde not be in pees
 Þe heuyn *quod* she as poetes determine
 Was born vp whilom by myghty hercules
 Yit couþ he neuer of nature haue reles
 ffor all his knyghthode and chevalrie
 To ouercome þe vice of lecherie 410
 ¶ But þow Calligula and þow Tiberius
 What euer ye seen ye take þerof non hede
 ffor þow calligula callid eke Gaius

Piselfe defylid with lecherie indede
To rebuke oþer þu shuldist stond in drede
But þi rebuke in party for to quite
Who is defylid non oþer shuld ~~aw~~ atwyte

[96r, col. b]

¶ By famus trumpettes þi sclaudris oute blowe
Purgh all þe worlde reportid shamfully
Ði thre sistres fleshli þow dost þem knowe 420
Wax rede for shame and for þi parti
ffor þe vice of hateful lechery

Duryng þi lyfe put me no more in blame
Which art þiselfe defoulid in þe same
¶ It sittyth not in no maner wyse
A thefe for þeft to sit in iugement
A leccherus man a lecchour to chastyse
Nor he þat haue all his lyfe spent
In waste and riot forfeid and mysspent 430
To be a iuge ouþer to redresse

Nor lepres lechis to cure men of seknesse
¶ I wolde haue suffrid and take pacience
Yf of Affrik þe chast Scipion
Hadde me rebukyd by me grete offence
I wolde haue suffrid his yerde of iust resoun
Or yf þe famus prudent olde Catoun
Had agayn me in such case made abrayde
I wolde haue suffrid whateuer he hadde sayde

¶ Or yf lucrece for my correccion
Hadde sayd to me for vertuus doctrine 440
All my surfetes in myddes of Rome townn
I wolde haue bowed my bak and my chyne
To haue obeyyd vnto hir discipline
Shame to a crepil to stand þat hath no myght
To rebuke oþer for þei go not vpright

¶ Agayns þe also I may replie
Many anoþer fals conspiracion
Touchyng matiers of Nigromancie
And many anoþer contryvid fals poyson 450
ffounde in .ij. bokes Bochas makith mencion

Oon callid pugio most Serpenticus
And þe secund namyd Gladius
¶ Able all þis worlde to venome and encloy
Agayn .iiij. states dwellyng in Rome townn
Peir names writen of þem þu cast destroy
Which to remembre is grete abusion
A chest also fulfillid of poyson
Aftyr þi deþ caste in þe see I rede
By which an .C. m^{ll} fysshes were dede

¶ Vpon þis matier it is tedious to abyde 460
 Namelie for princis . princesses born of high estate
 It sittyth not gentil bloode for to chyde
 By furius rancour to stande at debate
 And for þeis matiers ben infortunate
 I wyll passe ouer and no more of þem write
 Saue of þeir ende compendiuslie to endite
 ¶ To þe Tiberis I haue somewhat to seyn
 Known and reportid by many a creature
 Hough in Champaine folke hadde of þe disdeigne 470
 ffor þi most hateful lecherus ordre
 In þat vice which is agayn nature
 Which to accomplish voide of all happe *and* grace
 Þin abydyng was in suspicius place
 ¶ To such fals lustes duryng all þi lyfe
 Liste not forbere in þi latter age
 Þu vsyst many riche restauratyfe
 In such vnthryft to encrece þi corage
 Of ribaudie þu fell in such dotage
 Hough maiste þu þan rebuke me for shame
 In such case art blottyd for diffame 480
 ¶ I didde amysse but it was in my y[outhe]
 Horrible þinges which Gaius here h[ath] told]
 But þin outrages by report is yit co[upe]
 Þu didist þem vse boþ yong and olde
 And for to afforce youre vices ma[n]yfolde]
 Þu and Calligula in all such rib[audie]

[96v, col. a]

Did grettest forfeite in forward slogardie
 ¶ Also Tiberie þow beyng emperoure
 Cruel causles and most malicius
 Didist morþer in Rome þe famus oratour 490
 Callid in his tyme prudent Asinius
 Which þe empire Romanes told þus
 Was light and lanterne founde at all assayes
 Of rethoric callid in his dayes
 ¶ Þu were eke cause þat verri Nonomus
 King of Parthois þurgh þi cruelte
 Exilid was þu were þe covetous
 To haue possession of his tresour parde
 Dyed in myschefe and in pouerte
 Be shamefaste any wyght to accuse 500
 Which in such case þiselfe canst not excuse
 ¶ To Agrippyn þu didst ful grete outrage
 As Romane stories wel reherce can
 Whan she for socoure to þe grete image
 Ran to be sauid of Octavian

In myddis of þe temple in a place callid þan
 Which halpe hir not þat she liste þidir wende
 But out by force . for hungur made an ende
 ¶ Pin own broþer callid Germanicus
 Which in his tyme was so good a knyght 510
 Þi broþer also callid Drusus
 Bop were þesy poysynd *and* slayn agayn right
 By fals conspiryng of þin own myght
 To excuse þe morþer þi sowen at þe lest
 Were cladde in blak at þeir funerall fest
 ¶ I haue no cunnyng spech nor language
 To reherce nor mak æ mencion
 Specialli of þi grete outrage
 And sacrilege þu didist in Rome town
 By violence whan þu drowe down 520
 Þe image of Ianus and after in all haste
 Into Tibre madest hym to be caste
 ¶ And þu Calligula among þi vicis all
 Of surquedie and fals presumpcioun
 Woldist þat men a godde þe shuld call
 Betwen Pollux and Castor to haue þi mansion
 ffor which þu arte now þrow down
 Which helde þiselfe among þe goddis .vij.
 Egall with Iubiter for to sit in heuynn
 ¶ Answer to me here beyng in presence 530
 Which of þeis .iiij. Mars Ianus Mynerve
 Or Mercurie godde of eloquence
 Hath rent þe doun as þu didist deserve
 ffro Iubiter in æ myschefe for to sterue
 Pat þu hereafter wheþir þu laugh or froun
 Shalt haue no fauour more with hym to roun .
 ¶ With þeis defautes and many anoþer
 Affore rehersed in hyndryng of þi name
 Hough þu ordeynste fə fyrste to sle þi broþer
 With men of armys wich was ^to^ þe grete shame 540
 To Ptolome þu þu didist also þe same
 Son and eir to kyng Iubaton
 And many a senatour þu slough in Rome townn
 ¶ Þu shettist vp in myddes Rom þe cite
 All þe Garners which neuer aforne were seyn
 Wherby infamyed was þe comynte
 Pite to here . þis is plat and playn
 Of necessite compleynynd in certeynn
 [Sha]me to reherce or to put in scripture
 [Ete] þeir membris a þing agayn nature 550
 ¶ [Iubiter] nor Iuno þe goddes
 [Gafe] no such counsel I suppose vnto þe
 [But] it was Venus to flater þine hyghnes

[And] furius Mars by froward cruelte
[To] sle senatours grettest of þat cite
[Piselfe soon] after where of þe town was fayn
[By þi seruan]tes mordrid were and slaynn

[96v, col. b]

¶ And for to abide þin outrage and þi pride
Which þu hast vsid all þi lyfe
Lyft vp þin hede loke on þi lefte syde 560
Þu fynder vp of mordre and of stryfe
Slough þu not Cesonia þi wyfe
Þi doughter after þat callid was Drusell
Of cursid intent þi malice to fulfill

¶ I haue mervell hough eny of yow tweyn
Þu Calligula or þu Tiberius
Be not ashamyd anyþing to sayn
Agayn me with visage despitus
Me for to twite þat I was lecherus
Of a smal mote ye can abrayde me 570
But in þeir ie a beme ye can not se

¶ Wher haue þeir soules take þus herbergage
Þat be contrarie with me for to stryve
I trow þat Caron hadde made þeir passage
Vp at stronde in helle for to aryve
Wher ye abide þus I descryve
Wher dredeful Stix callid þe infernal floode
Of custum rennyth with furius wawes wode

¶ Rademantus on of þe Iuges tweynn
With kyng Monos haue yeve a iugement 580
Perpetuelli ye shal abide in peynn
And Eacus hath ordeynd youre turnement
In fflageton þe floode most violent
Ye shall be drownyd and an end mak
Euer for to abide emong þe streyms blak

¶ I may yow call of Emperours þe refuse
Ye shulde be shamefast to shew out your visage
Verrei astonyd dredeful and confuse
To haue to me so vncuteys language
Þus Massalyne dauntid þeir corage 590
With hir feminine crabbyd eloquence
Pei durst no lengar abide in þeir presence

**De Casu Neronis imperatoris Rome
qui destruxit Senecam magistrum suum**

This hateful storie with many a woful lyne
Of Calligula and Tiberius
Touchyng þe stryfe between þem and Messalyne
Shameful rebukes froward and odius
By þem rehersed with chere most furius

As ye haue herde here endith þeir chydyng
 Nero þe tiraune comyth next vnto þe ryng
 ¶ On most cursid in comparison 600
 Þat euer was of high or low degre
 Most disnaturall of condicioun
 By grete outrages of cursid cruelte
 Þat euer reignyd in Rome þe cite
 His fadre callid bookes determine
 Domicius . his modre Agrippine
 ¶ Þis Agrippina by hir subtilite
 And blynd fortune beyng fauorable
 Þat set vp tiraunes of froward volunte
 By þeir demerites þof þei be not able 610
 Of estate imperiall famus and notable
 What þing more dredeful who can undrestand
 Pan cruel tiraunes with blodie swerd in hond
 ¶ When þis Nero of age was .xij. yere
 He was ordeynd in especiall
 After he hadde lernyd his Gramer
 And þe .vij. artes callid liberall
 Vnto a maister in all vertu morall
 Callid morall Senec which did all his peyn
 ffrom all vicis his þought to restreyne 620
 ¶ He kepte hym euer þis Senec as I rede
 Maugre his fatall disposicion
 By a constreynt and a maner drede
 ffrom all outrage and dissolucioun

[97r, col. a]

Conceyvid well his inclinacion
 To be vicius of his nature
 Which to restreyne he did his bysy cure
 ¶ At xxj wynter of his age
 Croniclars rehersid of hym þus
 Hough he þat tyme toke in mariage 630
 Octauiia . doughter of Claudius
 All þis while beyng vertuus
 While Senec hadde hym vndre discipline
 His modre in law callid Messaline
 ¶ Þe saide Senec make hym to desyre
 To pursu cunnyng by diligent labour
 At entryng fyrst of his empire
 I mene whan he was fyrst crownyd emperour
 Of all þe senate hadde grete fauour
 And by reporte as clerkes of hym write 640
 In prose and metre he coup right wel endite
 ¶ In Iohn Bochas as it is made mynde
 He did excelle gretelie in poetrie

Made in þo dayes also I fynde
 A booke notable of straunge poetrie
 Like as myn auctor doþ specifie
 Þe title þerof callid luste
 Agayne a pretour Clodius polle
 ¶ Excellid in musik and in Armonie
 Crownyd with laurell for þe best harpour 650
 Þat was þat tyme . and he did edifie
 In Rome a pales *with* many a riche toure
 Which in beldyng cost grete tresoure
 Þe circuite beyng .iij. m^{ll}. paas
 And Transitorie callid þat pales was
 ¶ ffor þis cause as put is in memorie
 The said pales *afterward* was brent
 Þerfor it was callid transitorie
 But *after* þat Nero in his intent
 Lete belde an house by grete avisment 660
 To recompence þat oþer þat was olde
 And callid it þe riche house of golde
 ¶ In all þis worlde was non to it liche
 Whereuer men did ride or gon
 Tables of Iverie fret with perre riche
 Pillers of cristall garnysshid *with* many a stone
 Saphires Rubies and Topazion
 Cristolites amerolldes grene
 With plate of golde tylyd þat shone ful shene
 ¶ To bodilie lustes and delectacion 670
 Þis said Nero set all his desyres
 Gardens condites for recreacion
 He did orden to indure many yeres
 With nettes of golde fysshid in his ryvers
 His garmentes of golde and ynde stonys
 And neuer he wolde haue þem but onys
 ¶ In his begynnyng þe stori doþ devise
 Lorde and Emperoure in Rome þe cite
 To senatours he gaue ful grete fraunchise
 Grauntid comyns many a grete liberte 680
 But in his most imperiall dignite
 Of froward wyll left all goode pollicie
 And all at ones gaue hym to ribaudie
 ¶ Of Grece and Egipte with diuerse Iogulers
 And among villanes his sel dispartyng
 Left þe presence of olde senatours
 And among Ribaudes he wold harpe *and* syng
 Made comedies dishonestlie sowndyng
 At bordell did hymselfe avaunce
 With comyn women opynlie to daunce 690
 ¶ Thus by *processe* to all vertu contrarie

By grete excesse he fell in gloteny
And after þat liste no lengar tarie
As euery vice doþ to oþer þe doþ applie
Surfete and riote brought in lecherie

[97r, col. b]

And ground of all as chefe porteresse
To exile *vertu* was froward idlenesse
¶ Aboute þe Cite callid hostience
Besyde Tibre and oþer fresh ryvers
Did ordein by excessyve expense 700

Tentes for ~~Re~~ Riot Cokys and Taverners
And all þe nyght revell aboute þe fyrys
Ladies com in þat were affor well namyd
By such fals riot was afterward diffamyd
¶ Þe same Nero by fals abusion
It is reportid by þe storie who list to se
By violence from þeir Region
Such as hadde avowed chastite
~~Ande~~ And were professid to virginite 710

In þe temple of vesta þe goddessse
Of froward lustes he did þem oppresse
¶ Among which Rubria was oon
Maugre hir wyll she durst not deny
ffrom þe temple byldid of lyme and stone
Sacrid to Vesta myn auctor list not lye
He rent hir oute to vse his lecherie
Notwipstandyng he was religius
Made hir to abyde at þe bordell howse

¶ By my wrytyng men shal neuer rede
Pe matier is so foule and outragius 720
To be rehersed and þe ~~æ~~ horrible dede
Which Nero vsid whilom on sporous
And on anoþer callid Ompharus
Boþe male children as bokes tell can
Þem to transfforme to liknes of a man

¶ Som bokes of hym determine
Like a ribaude horrible and detestable
Didde ~~mysue~~ mysuse his modre Agrippyne
And lik a tiraune cruel and vengeable
Which to remembre it is abhominable 730
He made hir wombe be corvyn on a day
To þe se þe place .ix. moneths wher he lay

¶ Of disnaturall hateful cruelte
To godde nor *vertu* hauyng no rewarde
And of þe vice of prodigalite
He was accusid in knyghthode a coward
And to all *vertu* contrarie and frowarde

Of whos woodnesse goode heede whan I toke
 I was ashamyd to set hym in þis booke
 ¶ He hatid all þat were *vertuus* 740
 And to þem hadde speciali envie
 His breþern his wyfe þis tiraune despitous
 He falslie slough in his melancolie
 His maister Senec auctours specificie
 Euer whan he sawe hym haue a maner drede
 In an hoothe baþ to deþ he made hym bleed
 ¶ Cristes feyth he gan fyrst werrey
 Of Emperoures in his froward intent
 Petre and paule in Rome he made die
 Vpon a day þeir legend doþ assent 750
 Halfe þe cite of Rome I fynde he brent
 And senatours well nigh euerychoun
 Pis Nero slough sparid almost neuer oonn 753
 ¶ Made his mules be shadde with syluer shone 761
 Of surquedie whan he shuld ryde
 Þe cite brent Romanes after sone
 Pursuyd hym on euery syde
 And from a subarbe wher he did abyde
 Between Salaria and Numentana ri[ght]
 Þer stonde a path wheþer he toke his flight 767
 ¶ To polliphagus a woode man most sav[age] 754
 Which þat fedde hym most with flesh of m[an]
 Nero toke men olde and yong of age
 To fynde hym vitaile in stretes wher [can]
 Cursyd at his ende cursid whan [he gan]
 Whan he did offre innocentes bloode
 To be devourid of hym þat ran [so woode] 760
 ¶ Be a depe maris whan Nero took [his flyght] 768
 Whan he sawe he myght not as[tert]
 He was pusuyd by a Roman [knyght] 770

[97v, col. a]

To fynde socoure he myght not diuerte
 Rofe hymselfe anon to þe hert
 With a sharp daggar a cursid ende loo
 Of þe fals tiraune þat callid was Nero
 ¶ Of þis Nero to write a lenvoie
 Nor of his dedis to make mencion
 ffor all concludith of morþer and on tresoun 778
 To rede þe processe no prince shuld haue ioy 777
 On avoutre excesse and poysoun
 R̄ Riot gloteny lecherie and vengeaunce 780
 Slaughter of hymselfe endid with myschaunce 781
 ¶ Of hym I caste now to write no more 789
 And what I sayd . I saide but in reprefe 790

Of þe vices þat he wrought of yore
Duryng his Empire concludyng for a þefe
[Al tirau]ne shal end *with* myschefe
Record of Nero which for mysgovernaunce
As ye haue herd endid with myschaunce

¶ After þis Nero cam Eleazarus

A yewe of byrth . prince of Robberie
An extorcionere cruel and dispitous
ffor his outrages doun in þat partie
To redresse his hateful tiraunie

800

A myghty pretour sent fro Rome doun
Callid phelix into þat Region

¶ Be force of phelix take he was and bronde
Maugre his myght in R to Rome sent
Stronglie fettrid with myghti cheynys rounde
Suffrid in prison many grete turnement
At laste þis was his iugement
Per to abyde because he was a þefe
ffor euer more endid in myschefe

**De casu Galbe hispane . et quonam defama-
batur de tribus vicijs pessimis.**

¶ Before Bochas next cam Galba doun

810

Which in Spayn did many a knyghtlie dede
After þe deþ rehersid of Neron
He stode in hope þis Galba as I reede
In þe Empire iustlie to succede
Parcel for knyghthode he hath hym foule born
As for grete mariage which he had befor

¶ I fynde in Bochas rehersid in sentence
He was disclaundrid of hateful vices thre
He was cruel contrarie to clemence
Streit in kepyng agayn liberalite

820

Vengeable in herte agayn mercy and pite
A þing not sittyng to cheualrie
Of custum yeve to slouþ and slogardie

¶ To occupie þe Empire he began
Among Romanes toke possession
Cleymyng a title by on licynyan
Þat was his sonne by adopcioun
But after for his *presumpcion*

Oon callid Ettho a ful manlie knyght
Smote of his hede wheþer it were wronge or right

830

¶ Þis said Galba myn auctor writyth þus
ffrom his empire vnwarlie pullith doun
Hadde an ennemie callid Patrabalus
Þe heede of Galba toke in possession
ffylld it with golde made an oblacion
[At þe] sepulcre of Nero þerwithall

[To] all þe goddys and ~~gæt~~ goddesses infernall
 ¶[And] after þat offryng was ful do
 [As ye] haue herde to Iohn Bochas þan
 [To make] his compleynt in ordre cam piso 840
 [Affor sur]namyd iustlie lycynyane
 [Son a]doptive to tell as I began
 [Of said] Galba cleymyng to succede
 [Slayn] anon after by Ettho as I rede
 ¶[Pan was] þe Empire partid into thre
 [Ettho toke Rome] vn his partie
 [And vitellius to regne] in þe cuntre .

[97v, col. b]

Ouer þe boundis of all Germanie
 And Vaspasian reigned in Surrie
 But fyrst þis Ettho surnamyd Siluius 850
 Came to compleyne cruel and despitous
 ¶Of all þe Empire surenamyd Siluius
 By slaughter ravine and extorcion
 By morþer deþ and outrageous
 With myghty hand toke þeir possessioun
 And þer began a grete diuisioun
 Which was occasion of grete sorow and wo
 Betwene Vitellus and þis sayd Ettho
 ¶It is rehercid þat in Germanie
 In sondrie placis þei hadde batails þre 860
 In þe which Ettho in his party
 Venquisshid þe felde and made his foon to fle
 But þurgh fortunes pleynlie þis case
 Maugre his myght discomfitid þus he was

¶Before Bedededrie a myghty stronge cite
 Of gGermani was þis discomfiture
 After which of froward cruelte
 Þe sayd Ettho seyng his aventure
 Whith wo surprisid myght not indure 870
 Of his constreynt þe importable peyne
 Toke a sharpe swerde and rofe his herte in tweyn

¶Vitellus havyng þe victorie
 With his power as made is mencion
 Of surquedie and fals veyn glorie
 Cam with his oste into Rome town
 But Bochas þer makith a descripcion
 Rehersyng shortlie his byrthe and eke his lyne
 And hough þat he of bloode was Saturyne
 ¶Þis is to seyn Saturnius kyng of Crete 880
 Chasid by Iubiter oute his region
 And Ianus hadde in Itaile take his seete

Vpon a mounte callid Ianiclu
 Wher now of Rome þ is beldid þe large townn
 Ianus receyvng of liberalite
 Whan Saturne fled into his cite
 ¶ Beforn þe *commyn*g of Saturne þis is no faile
 Rude and boystus and bestiall of reson
 Was all þe peple abydyng in Itaile
 Londe was none sowe nor turnyd vp so down 890
 Nor marchaundyse vsyd in no town
 Tyll Saturne taught þe *maner* of lyvyng
 Of tilthe and labour to Ianus þat was kyng
 ¶ Afforn whas *commyn*g afforn as I yow tolde
 Crafte was non vsyd by no creature
 Nor no ~~bed~~ beldyng of howses newe ne olde
 But lyvid as bestes þe lyvelode to recure
 Like as þey were lernyd of nature
 Pei coupe þat dayes make no cloþe nor shape
 Pe ffrosty weddres þe gredy colde to escape 900
 ¶ Pei were not besy by costefull apparaile
 Of sundrie metes and confeccions
 Of diuerse drynke and many fold vitaile
 To be curius to þeire refeccions
~~Ma~~ Marketes were noon in cites nor in townes
 To man with *oper nouþer* bought nor solde
 Tyll Saturne cam and þem þe *maner* tolde
 ¶ And whan he hadde taught þem þe manere
 And set anþ ordre of þeir *gouernaunce*
 Pe simple peple as bokes doþ vs lere 910
 Like as to ~~godde~~ godde dede þeir attendaunce
 With certen rites to do þe *obseruances*
 Worshipid hym and after dedde hym call
 Saturne most myghty of þeir goddes all 914
 ¶ Pe fyrst knyght born of þat linage 922
 Because he was manlie and right famus
 Hadde inarmyd prowys and grete corage

[98r, col. a]

He callid was vitellus publius
 And of hym vitellus lucius
 ffadre to hym myn auctor doþ expresse
 Of whom þat I haue begunne þis processe
De casu Vitelli Viciosissimi Viri
 Divers stories remembre and pleynlie tell
 Duryng his youþ and stood at liberte 930
 Hough þis forsaide þat callid was vitell
 Was þe moste vicius þat euer myght be
 Yeve to ribaudie and all dishoneste
 Because of which chaungid was his name

Callid Spyn*tour* a name of grete diffame
 ¶ I fynd þat he was an ~~hassæ~~ hazadour
 In all his werke passyng riotus
 ffor his surfetes grete with þe emperour
 Pat whilom was callid Claudius
 And for his maners and dedis s outragius 940
 ffor his grete waste and prodigalite
 Of grete dispence he fell in pouerte
 ¶ Among his riotes s~~uf~~ surfetes moo þan on
 Which he did in cuntres here and þere
 I fynd þat he for nede solde a stone
 Which his modre whilom bare at his ere
 ffor be olde tyme was vsyd who liste lere
 Women þat were þat tyme of high degre
 Bare at þeir eris stonys and perre
 ¶ And by þe sellyng of þat riche stone 950
 ffor which þat he . recevyid grete tresoure
 By subtile workyng and sleightes mo þan on
 He gate hym frendis and was made Emperour
 And þerwithall he did eke his labour
 To receyve anoþer dignite
 To be chefe Bysshop of Rome þe Cite
 ¶ And ⁱⁿ shorte tyme þis vitellus
 Of þe Empire toke on hym all þe estate
 Þe swerd receyvid of Cesar Iulius
 Vsid a garnement þat was purpurate 960
 Demyd of hymself he was most fortunate
 Notwithstandyng þe tyme more boldlie at lest
 Of Aliensoys holdyn was þe fest
 ¶ Aliensoys was a solempnite
 Among Romanes kepte by dayes old
 In frensh myn auctor recordeth þus parde
 And in þat tyme of custum no man shuld
 Nor be statute bounde was nor holde
 To do no maner occupacion
 That touchid vertu or religion 970
 ¶ Duryng þis fest he shuld haue his askyng
 By custum vsid in þat cite
 And Vitellus as Emperour and kyng
 Askyd þat tyme anoþer dignite
 To be chefe bisshop and haue auctorite
 Of þat estate with power hoole and pleyn
 No man so hardy to replie þeragayn
 ¶ ffrom all vertu Vitellus did varie
 Set at nought all wysdam and science
 Pought vnto hym it was not necessarie 980
 Cunnyng knyghthod manhode no providence
 Gafe hym oonlie to slouþ and negligence

To glotony folowyng hiduus desirys
 To wache al nyght with drynkes and soppers
 ¶ Beyng a Bysshop of þeir paynym lawe
 Like Roman rites doyng þe *seruyse*
 Before þe goddis he wolde hymself *withdrawe*
 And caste asyd *Censere* and sacrifice
 And call a boy in ful vngoodelie wyse
 A kychyn boy beforn þe high altere 990
 And hym *commaundid* to brynge hym his *dyner*
 ¶ Beyng arayed in his pontificall
 ffor þe *maner* voide of deuocion
 Like a ribaude or like a woode mynstrell

[98r, col. b]

Euer drunkelew and oute of all ceson
 Gorge vpon gorge þis excessyve gloton
 Moste idropit ~~drynk~~ drank of agayn luste
 Þe more he dranke þe more was apurst
 ¶ Þis was a bisshop sacrid of Sathan 1000
 And an Emperour crownyd with myschaunce
 More like in porte a best þan a man
 Vsyd all his power in slaughter and in vengeaunce
 To shed bloode was set all his plesaunce
 Takynge non hede nouþer of wronge nor right
 And þus he wex hateful to euery wyght
 ¶ His soudieours forsoke hym nygh ichon
 In all parties by hym þer þei were sent
 Þurgh all þe cuntres of þe Septemtrioun
 And in all Surre toward þe orient
 Of on accord and all of oon assent 1010
 Ichon forsoke hym with hym aboode no man
 And becam *seruauntes* to Vaspasian
 ¶ Vitellus saw it wolde be non oþer
 And he for feblenesse drunknesse and outrage
 And saw þe powere gan fayly of his broþer
 Whan he hadde sent and signyd to þe viage
 Agayn Vaspasian to holde his passage
 But all for nought bakward went his partie
 Stode dispeyrid of euery remedie
 ¶ Þus Vitellus vnhappy to þe weries 1020
 Like afforn drunkyn . an vnhappy stronge gloton
 Whos ofte afforn raught vp þe sterrys
 Now all his pride in myschefe is com down
 Ffayn to accord to his conuencion
 Ffor litle treson for which men shuld hym assigne
 To Vaspasian þe Empeir to f resigne .
 ¶ Þis was his promisse . but helde it nought
 What he saide his worde was neuer stable

Certen flaterers chaungid hadde his þought
 And *certen* comyns þat euer be chaungeable 1030
 Gaue hym counsell . sayd hymselfe was able
 To govern þe estate imperiall
 And non so able to rekyn all
 ¶ Ffirst of Almayn he send oute soudieours
 And of presumption a new werre began
 Pought þat he was among oþer werreours
 Able for to fight agayn vaspasian
 And of aventure it befell so þan
 In þeis werres it wolde be non oþer
 Slayn was vaspasianus broþer 1040
 ¶ Þis froward man callid Vitellus
 Vngracius founde euer in his intent .
 Smote of þe hede of þe saide ffabius
 Broþer of vaspasian and it to Rome set
 And after þat þe Capitolie Brent
 But suyng on within a litle space
 Among þe Romanes he lost boþ hap *and grace*
 ¶ Of his riote ~~wat h~~ what shuld I more entret
 Ffor excepte riote of hym noþing I rede
 His cook his pastler folk þat were most mete 1050
 To *serue* his lust and appetites to fede
 Fforsoke hym nought but went with hym in[dede]
 Towarde Campaine right as eny lyne
 Vp to an hill callid Auentyne
 ¶ Standyng in hope but þat was in veyn
 Of Vaspasian þe fauour to recure
 Euen to Rome returnyd is agayn
 Þe pales entrid and þer hymself to assu[re]
 Hauyng with hym non oþer creature
 Þe gates shit which was to hym grete sh[ame] 1060
 Taken at þe laste . forsok his own name
 ¶ Halfe nakyd he was and halfe dele [iclad]
 All alon like as he was founde
 So in þe Cite afforn þe peple lede
 Boþ his handis behynd hi[m wer bounde]

[98v, col. a]

With myghty cheynys and with ropis rounde
 Like a woode man of looke and of visage
 The peple to hym hauyng for his language
 ¶ O þu olde lecherus foule gloton
 A verrey coward . to all vertu contrarie 1070
 Cruel vengeable of þi condicion
 To euery goode man cruel aduersarie
 To all cursid benyngne and debonaire
 Roote of all surfetes hauyng a delite

To sue and folowe þe lecherus appetit
 ¶ With such rebukes *and* castyng of ordure
 With dunge and clay was clottid his visage
 In þe *presence* of many a creature
 With cordes drawe he was by grete outrage
 Vnto a place callid in þeir language 1080
 Per mooste chefe rakkys or galows of þe town
 Wher is of custum doon execucioun
 ¶ Som remembre he slayn was in haste
 With sharpe swordes dismembrid on þe grounde
 His careine *after* into Tibre caste
 With a large hooke of yrne sharp and rounde
 No more reuerensid þan is a stynkyng hounde
 Remembring here myn auctor seyth also
 Of þeis vitellus Galba and Ottho
 ¶ Affermyng þus as þeir partie 1090
 Pei be namyd among þe Emperours
 Ffor a tyme þe state did occupie
 And fyrst þis Galba by record of auctours
 Dyyd at myschefe voide of all socours
 .Viiij. monyths reignyd as lorde and syre
 And *after* þat caste oute of his empire .
 ¶ Þe þrid moneþ as made is menciou
 Ottho died proude and ambicius
 And as I fynde þe dominnacion
 Laste viij. moneths of vitellus 1100
 And for þei were proude ribaudes and lecherus
 Cruel . vengeable . and born of cursid lyne
 In wrecchidnesse ichon þei did fyne
Hic scribit contra vicium Gule .
 Here Iohn Bochas seyng þe grete offence
 Of þeis forsaid froward companie
 Toke his penne of intier diligence
 And in his studie gan hymself applie
 To dampne þe vice of hateful glotonye
 Ffor whych synne recorde of Adam
 All oure myschevis and sorowes cam 1110
 ¶ By þe corage of disobeysaunce
 Oure saide fadre beyng in paradise
 Betwene hym and *vertu* rose a grete distaunce
 Clerlie conceyvid he þat was so wyse
 Aboue creatures by reson bare þe prise
 Tyl of foly wronge gafe assent
 To be governd be a fals serpent
 ¶ His innate *vertues* did hym anon forsake
 Ffor his assentyng and dede in hast returne
 Agayn to hevyn whan þe infernal snake 1120
 In stede of *vertu* didde with man sojourne

Ffor which we haue grete matier for to morn
 Sith þat we be deformyd in certein
 By vicius lyvyng of vertu made bareyn
 ¶ And þus cam in þe dominacion
 Of vicis all and helde a grete bataile
 Þe returne sent fro þe infernall dongioun
 Vs woful wrecchis in erth for to assaile
 Stretchyng þeir power and proudelie gan preuaile
 [Purgh] all þe worlde and possession toke 1130
 [Ffor] oure demerites whan vertu vs forsoke
 ¶ [[Theis] saide vertues comprisid in þe noumbre
 Of .j. rekeynd prudence attemperaunce
 [Of] vicius lyfe to adraw vs fro þe slombre
 [Rightue]snesse to haue holde þe balaunce
 And [for]titude of þeir alliaunce
 [Whan] þei forsake mankynd for to \gouverne/ guyde
 [Than of all] vertu was eclipsid þe lanterne

[98v, col. b]

¶ Pus þurgh derknesse vicis were made bolde
 Þe multitude almost innumerable 1140
 Amonges all rekenyd of new or olde
 Þer be . iiij . perelus and reprovab
 Slouþ and lecherie most abhominable
 Fals Auarice by a gredie desyre
 With glotony chefe kyndler of þeir fyre
 ¶ Nature in soþ with litle is content
 And as myn auctor abidith here awhile
 And to remembre was somewhat diligent
 To write whan Saturne reignyd in þe Ile
 Callid Crete þe þrophetesse Sibille 1150
 In hir tyme by grete auctorite
 Þe worlde diuidid prudentlie in þre
 ¶ Þe worlde whan Saturn was fyrst kyng
 Reignyd in Crete in his roiall estate
 Noe Abraham by vertues lyvyng
 Causid erþlie folke to be most fortunate
 Þe worlde þoo dayes callid aureate
 Ffor sobrenesse and attemperaunce
 Hadde in þat worlde holy þe gouernaunce 1159
 ¶ Youþ was bridild vndre discipline 1167
 Vertuus studie flourid in myddyl age
 Drede helde þe yerde of nature and doctrine
 Riot restreynynd from surquedus outrage
 Hateful detraccion repressid his language
 Couþ was charite because attemperaunce
 Hadde in þat worlde holy þe gouernaunce 1173
 ¶ Þer was þat tyme no wrong nor violence 1160

Envie exilid from euery creature
 Dysolucion and drunkyn insolence
 Rybaudie and I all such fals ordure
 Ffrowarde surfetes contrarie to nature
 Bannysshid were because attemperaunce
 Hadde in þat worlde holy þe governaunce
 ¶Ffortitude stoode in his myght 1168
 Defendid widous and cherisshid chastite 1176
 Drede holde þe yerde of nature and doctrine
 Gyrdid with his sworde of trouþe and equite
 Helde vp þe churche of *spirituall* dignite
 Punisshid heretikes because attemperaunce
 Had in þat world holy þe governaunce 1180
 ¶Rightuesnesse chastysid all maner robbers
 By egall balaunce of execucion
 Ffraude fals mede put bakward fro youris
 True *promisse* holden . made no dilacion
 Fforsweryng shamyd durste entre in no town
 Nor lesyngmongers because attemperaunce
 Hadde in þat world holy þe governaunce 1187
 ¶Pe tru merchaund by mesure bought and solde 1195
 Deceit was non in þe artificere
 Makyng no balkes . þe plough was truly holde
 Abak stood idlenesse ferre from þe laborers
 Discrecion Mershall at *diner* and *at soper*
 Content with mesure because attemperaunce 1200
 Hadde in þat worlde holy þe governaunce 1201
 ¶Dis golden worlde longe while did indure 1209
 Was non alay in þat metall sene 1210
 Tyl Saturne cessed by recorde of scripture
 Iubiter reignyd put oute his fadre clene
 Chaungid obrizon in to syluer shene
 All vp so down because attemperaunce
 Was set asyd and loste his governaunce
 ¶Of Martis Mynerall þe metal is so stronge
 Inflexible and not malliable
 By sturdynesse to do þe peple wronge
 With rigorus sworde furius and vengeable
 Be mercyful golde phebus not plicable 1220
 To haue compassioun bycause attemperaunce
 Was set asyde and lost hir governaunce

[99r, col. a]

¶Leede of philosophres is callid golde leprus
 Tyme of Iubiter crasshyng dull of sown
 Ffals and fugytyfe is mercurius
 Be mone is mutable of hir condicion
 Be golden worlde is turnyd vp so doun

In iche estate sith attemperaunce
 Was set aside and lost for governaunce
 ¶ By Cibils exposicion 1230
 Take of þis metall þe moralite
 Þe w golden world was governd by resoun
 Þe worlde of I yrne . was furius cruelte
 Þe mone is mutable . full of duplicite
 Like to þe worlde because attemperaunce
 Was set aside and lost for governaunce
 ¶ Venus of louers Emperesse and quene
 Of vicius lustes ladie and maistresse
 Hir metall Copre . þat wyl ternysh grene
 A changeable coloure contrarie to sadnesse 1240
 A notale figure of wordlie britilnesse
 Like gerish Venus because attemperaunce
 Was set aside and lost hir governaunce
 ¶ Myn auctor Bochas . gan pitevuslie compleyn
 Of his ~~dis~~ disordinance and comberus glotony
 Of vitellus and his felowes tweynn
 All .pre. defoulid with horrible lecherie
 Diffamyd by sclaudre noysyd be þis lecherie
 Contrarius enuius ichon to attemperaunce
 Bannyshid fro þeir courte myght haue no *gouvernaunce* 1250
 ¶ Oute of þeir courte bannyshid was prudence 1258
 Ffortitudo hadde non intresse
 Agayn vicius lyvyng to make resistence 1260
 Cried woves hede was *vertuus* sobrenesse
 Trouþ durst not medddle abak stode rightuesnesse
 Put oute of howsolde was attemperaunce
 With then .ijj. Emperours couþ haue no *gouvernaunce* 1264
 ¶ Of glotony and riotus excesse 1251
 Wathe and rebell and drynkyng all þe nyght
 Commeth vncouþ feuours *and* many gret excesse
 Membris podagre make men þei go not right
 Gowtes mormalls horrible to þe sight
 Many infirmities because attemperaunce
 Was not of counsel toward þeir *gouvernaunce*
 ¶ Sonne of þe prophete callid Zacharie 1258
 Þe patriarche holie man seint Iohann 1266
 Victorius champion of gredie glotony
 Lyvid in deserte deyntes had he non
 Ete mele . syluer lay on þe \colde/ stone
 Locustas gaddrid his coke was temperaunce 1270
 And of his howseholde had all þe governaunce
 ¶ Of Camel here was made his elþis cloping
 Record of þe gospell þat can þe trouþ tell
 Honysoklis his moderat fedying
 Among wylde bestes whan he dwell

To staunch his þurst drank *water* of þe well
 Þis þe blessid baptist rote of *attemperaunce*
 Hadde of his howsholde holy þe *gouvernaunce*
 ¶ Of his diete . Catur was scarste
 His costful foode was *vertuus* abstinence 1280
 Rotes of desert his delicate plente
 His riche *pymentes* yporcas of dispence
 Hyng not in costris nor botels in þe spence
 Not excessyve because *attemperaunce*
 Hadde of his howsholde holy þe *gouvernaunce*
 ¶ Þus Baptist *Iohann* by his moderate foode
 Þe chefe triumphe of *¶* abstinence haþ begun
 Þis patriarche rekenyd oon of þe goode
 Content with litle all *suffisaunce* haþ won
 As *diogenes* in his litle tome . 1290

[99r, col b.]

Helde hym apayed because *attemperaunce*
 Hadde of his housholde all þe *gouvernaunce*
 ¶ His time to hym was receipt and howsholde
 And yf I shuld boste of his cellere
 Þer were no cuppis of *siluer* nor of golde
 His ~~eosteful~~ costeful vintage cam fro þe ryvere
 Wel tymyd mesure was for his mouþ butler
 And his tastour was *attemperaunce*
 Which of his housholde hadde all þe *gouvernaunce* 1299
 ¶ Of *superfluite* of slouþ and of slepe 1307
 Þis *diogenes* stode *euer* amonge in drede
 Of worldlie *fauour* he toke no *maner* kepe
 Straw was his liter . and simple russet wede 1310
 Turnyd his tune agayn þe wynde indede
 Betwen hoot and colde þat *attemperaunce*
 In *somer* and wynter hadde hole þe *gouvernaunce*
 ¶ Noble princes of *prudence* takith heede .
 This litle chapitle breuelie to *comprehende*
 The golden worlde is turnyd into lede
 Prayeth to godde his grace down to sende
 Of his high *mercy* þat it may sone amende
 And þat þe ~~is~~ ~~princes~~ þis *princesse* callid *attemperaunce*
 May of þeire housholdes haue þe *gouvernaunce* 1320
 ¶ Cheflie for loue . parcel eke for drede
 In þeir estate ye moost sheward
 Ffor þeir increce and þeir most *gracius* spede
 To his *preceptes* doþ diligentlie attende
 Of olde Emperours redith þe legend
 While þei were rulid by *attemperaunce*
 In longe *prosperite* stode þeir *gouvernaunce*
 ¶ Of ~~wol~~ wordlie kyngdames Rome is callid heede

Whos roiall boundes ferþest oute extende
In marciall actes boþe in length and brede 1330
Rempublica by prowes to defende
No foreyn enmy hardy to offende
Peir high noblesse while ~~apþ~~ attemperaunce
With hir .iij. Sistres hadde þe governaunce .

De casu Iudeorum et de obsidione . et euersione Ciuitates

The storie endith of vitellus // **Ierusalem per titum et**

Of his .ij. ferys Galba and Ottho // **Vaspasianum**

Hough his careyn horrible and hidous
Drownyd in Tibre was þæs passid to and fro
After þe story complisshid was and do
Cam grete noumbre to Bochas as I rede 1340
Ichon descendid of Iacobus high kynrede

¶ In tokyn of compleint and of hevynesse
Like folke dismayde cladde in mornyng wede
Ffor þe constreint with terys quakyng in þeir drede 1344

Knowyng no recure in so streite a nede 1346

Resemblyng folke by tokyns ful mortall
Þat were toward þe festes ~~fan~~ funerall

¶ Peir ouþlie cheris pitovuslie to beholde
As þei gan approche þe presence 1350

Of Iohn Bochas to tell þeir sorowes olde
Peir woundes bledyng by marciall violence
Oppressid with hung[er] . þurst . and soden pestil[ence]
By foren sworde þeir lyvis manasshyng
Vpon þe deþ bestes abydyng

¶ Þat wer inclosid narrow in a folde
Dispeirid . socoure for to recure
To passe þeir boundes for drede þei were [nat bold]
Within infamed baren of all pasture
Dis woful story remembrith by scripture 1360

Hough þat of Iacob þe generacion
Was vengeablie brought to dest[ruccion] .

¶ Þis patriarch whilom callid Israel
Moste renounyd among all nac[iouns]
And most famus þe bible can well [tell]
Peir lyne oute rekenyd þurgh[out al regions]
By goddes behest toke þeir [possessions]
Maugre þe Egipciens and p[haraoes pride]

[99v, col. a]

Whan duk moyses by godde was made guyde
¶ With drie feete þei passid þe reede se 1370
Conveid by moyses and also by Aaron
Þe law was writen þe bible who list se
Vpon Sina in tables of harde stone
And þurgh desert as þei did goon

With aungels mete callid manna as I rede
 xl. wyntyre þere he didde þem feede
 ¶ After moyses ledde be Iosue
 Into þe lande of promission
 Þe .xij. linages þere parde
 He lete make a distribucion 1380
 And to iche lyne he gave his porcioun
 By promisse made afforn to Abraham
 To Isaach and Iacob whan þei þidir cam
 ¶ By patriarkes prophetes þat were sadde
 Maugre þeir ennemies and þeir mortall foon
 By myghty dukes and Iuges þei were ladde
 Gate all þe Regions wher þei didde goon
 Tyll at last of pride þei ichon
 Like oþer nacions wolde haue a kyng
 Saul was chosyn . godde grauntid þeir askyng 1390
 ¶ Þus by patriarchis and þeir allies
 Ffrom Abraham þe Geneologie
 Tolde by prophetes and by þeir prophecies
 Conveid to dauid which in his regallie
 Holde of Iewys all hole þe monarchie
 Of whos kynred by processe þus it stode
 Was cryst Ihesu born of þat roiall bloode
 ¶ Sent from his fadre as poetes determyne
 Toke flesh and bloode for our saluacion
 By þe holy gost born of a pure virgin 1400
 Hadde among Iewys grete tribulacioun
 Vndre herodes suffrid passion
 And as þe gospels trulie doþ descryve
 Þe þirde day rose from deþ to lyve
 ¶ Þis blyssid lorde . þis lorde of most vertu
 Ende of Decembre born at Bethleem
 And by þe Aungel namyd was Ihesu
 Shewyd to .iiij. kynges by a sterres beme
 Þis same Iesus in Ierusalem
 By conspiracion of Iewys þurgh envie 1410
 By pilate dampnyd to die in Caluarie
 ¶ Þus vnto Ihesu Iewys were vnkynde
 Ffor which þei were destroyed nygh ichon
 Criste prophecied þe gospels makith mynde
 Hough of þeir . cite þer shuld not leue a stone
 Vpon anoþer for þeir mortall fone
 Shuld þem besege he tolde þem so certein
 And make Ierusalem with þe soile all playnn
 ¶ With wepyng ieen cristie tolde þem so befornn
 Of þeir ruyne and destrucioun 1420
 Synne was cause sothlie þat þei were lornn
 Ffor þei ne knew to þeir confusioun

Tyme of þeir notable visitatioun
 Whan criste cam doun born here in erþ low
 Ffor þeir saluacion þei list hym not to knowe
 ¶xxx^{ti} yere full Cronicles write
 And somewhat more after his passioun
 Amonge þe Iewys pleyntie to indite
 Within þemselfe fell a diuisioun
 [Mor]þerers rose vp within þeir owne town 1430
 [So gr]et a noumbre with many an homicide
 [Pat in] þeir cite durst no man wele abide
 ¶[[Peir] presidentes reinyng in Iude
 [Sey]ng þis horrible foule rebellioun
 And of morþeres þe mortall cruelte
 Pat longe indurid in þat Regioun
 [Which] for to appese Romanes sent doun
 [Vespasian] with many a manlie knyght
 Which into [Gallile] toke his wey right

[99v, col. b]

¶And to chastise þe morþerers and þe robbers 1440
 Brent þeire cuntre as he roode vp and doun
 And so continuyd with his soudieours
 Tyll vnto þe tyme þe cuntres environ
 Of Ierusalem entrid by þe town
 With þeir oblacions in many sundrie wyse
 As Pasch requirid to do þeir sacrifice
 ¶Before þe dayes was Ierusalem
 Hadde in gret woshyp of all nacions
 Callid princesse of euery oþer Realme
 Whos fame strecchid þurghout all regions 1450
 Peir tresoure grete and þeir possessions
 Double wallid of beldyng most notable
 Dredyng noon ennemie for it was improuable
 ¶Among Romanes many a manlie man
 Willyng echon of oon affeccioun
 Purgh þe knyghthode of vaspasian
 Ichon to laboure to þe destruccion
 Of Ierusalem for grete diuision
 Among þemselfe was begune in þe Cite
 By certen Capteyns were in noumbre þre 1460
 ¶Simon Iohn and Eleazarus
 Horrible tiraunes oppressyng þe poraile
 Of gouernaunce froward and outragius
 Ffalslie diuidid iche oþer didde assaile
 Among þemselfe hadde many a strong battaile
 Werre was withoute and werre was within
 Pus of vengeaunce myschefe did begynne
 ¶Vaspasian not beyng reccles

Ffor his party like a prudent knyght
 Be notable menes excetid þem to pees 1470
 But all for nought blyndid þeir own sight
 To chese þe best þei couþ not e seȝ aright
 And in þis while þis notable werreour
 Vaspasian was chosyn emperoure .
 ¶ By Alexandre to Rome he was sent
 Receyvid þere þe Emperiall dignite
 His son Titus he made is chefe Captein
 His procuratoure to govern in Iude
 Besette environ Ierusalem þe cite
 With men of armes segid it so aboute 1480
 Pat myght entre ne issn oute
 ¶ Stoppid þeir condites and þeir watyrs clere
 Enfamied þem for lak of vitaile
 A certen woman þus seith þe croniclere
 Rostid hir chylde whan vitaile did fayle
 She hadde of store non oþer apparaile
 Þeron on by leyser hirselve she did feede
 Which in a woman was to horrible a dede
 ¶ Peir myghty wallys with gunnys wer cast doun
 ij. stronge towres take of þeir cite 1490
 Resistyng gan fayle in þe townn
 Þei stoode of hungor in such perplexite
 Titus of knyghthoode and magnanimite
 Þurghoute þis toure callid Antonian
 Is entrid in like a knyghtlie man
 ¶ Þe peple in stretes lay for hungor dede
 To by ne sell no lyuelode in þe townn
 Þer was no socoure noþer in drynk ne brede
 In peyne of deþ born noþer vp ne doun
 Vomyt of oon was þe refeccioun 1500
 Vnto anoþer þer was such scarste
 Who redith Iosophus þe trouþ h̄e he may se
 ¶ Brent was þe temple made fyrst of Salamoun
 Which hadde indurid þus write þe Croniclere
 Þat was so roiall belde of rich stone
 Ffully a þousand an .CC. yere
 Romanes entrid maugre þeir portere
 With spere and polleax and sword sharp whet
 Like woode lions slough whom þat þei met
 ¶ Peir riche gates coverd with plates of golde 1510
 Were brent and moltenn withoute exceptioun
 Þe siluer images þat forgid were of olde
 The violent fyre made þem renne doun

[100r, col. a]

Noble Titus hadde no compassioun

His Merciall dukes sparid noþing *certeyn*
 Liste of *presumpcioun* þei list rebell agayn
 ¶xl C. m^{ll} were þer slayn
 By sword by hungre . by fyre and pestilence
 Stynk of Careyn þat in stretes layn
 Causid of deþ most soden violence 1520
 And Titus gaue among þem þis sentence
 I mene of þem þat did alyve dwell
 Ffor a peny men shul xxx^{ti}. selle
 ¶So as Iudas solde Iudas for xxx^{ti} pense
 Titus agayn þought of equite
 Of marchaundise to make recompense
 xxx^{ti} Iewys founde in þe cite
 Ffor a peny and for no more parde
 Þei to be solde for þeir grete outrage
 Euer among Saracens to lyve in *seruage* 1530
 ¶Of þe temple a preste þat was ful olde
 ij. stateli lanterns þat were bright and shene
 Tables . basyns . phials of bright golde
 He presentid and þus he did mene
 Þat þeir tresours shuld well be sene
 Of þe temple and shed to Titus
 In tokyn it was whilom so glorius
 ¶To shewe eke þer he did his bysy cure
 Sylke Cinamone and frankincense *withall*
 Ffor sacrifice þe purpurate vesture 1540
 With Thimyam þe riche pectorall
 Which ordeinde were in especiall
 Ffor þe solompne place of þe places all
 Sancta *sanctorum* and so men did it call
 ¶Of þe cite a prince callid Iohann
 To Titus cam and shewyd his *presence*
 Pale for hungre þer cam also Simon
 Broute by a duke þat callid was Terence
 Cladde in purpull cladde by violence
 Receyvid of Titus whan þis noble toun 1550
 Castellis townys and walles wer smyt doun
 ¶Into a Callid Macedon
 Eleazarus hadde take his flight
 Besegid of Scilla or he þe Castell wanne
 Þis Eleazarus like a furius knyght
 Within þe castel þe selfe same nyght
 Sterid euery man fadre chyld and broþer
 With sharpe swordes ich man to sle oþer
 ¶Þus was þe cite most famus of beldyng
 Þat whilom was of þis worlde chef toun 1560
 Wher melchisedek reignyð k preste *and* kyng
 By dayes olde as made is mencion

Restorid by dauid beldide new of Salamuon
 Princesse of *provinces* was neuer such ano^{per}
 Now it is abiecte and refuse of all o^{per}
 ¶ Vnto þe Iewys . criste Ihesu gave respite
 Ffully xxx yere or he toke vengeaunce
 In token þe lorde hap ioy and grete delite
 Whan þat synners dispose þem to penaunce
 By contricion and hertlie repentaunce 1570
 Dis blessid lorde þis lorde most merciabile
 Lengest abidith or he liste be vengeable
 ¶ He was to þem graciuss and benigne
 Boode þat þei shuld to hym conuerte sone
 Shewyd vnto þem many an vncouþ signe
 Duryng xij. dayes eclipsid was þe mone
 Þe peple astonyd knew not what was to don
 But indurat in þeir froward intent
 Like ffolk abasshid wyst not what it ment
 ¶ Affor þe sege or Titus began þe werre 1580
 Ouer þe cite wherof þei wex afferde
 Þer apperid a Comete and a sterre
 Þe sterre was shapid like a sharp sworde

[100r, col.b]

Touchyng þe Comete þer was neuer herde
 Of such ano^{per} so fyry bright and clere
 Which endurid þe space of all a yere
 ¶ Þeir festiuall day halowyd in Aprill
 Þeir prestes bysy to make oblacion
 So grete a light þe temple did fill
 Þat all þe peple stondyng environ 1590
 Þought it so bright in þeir inspeccion
 Passyng þe sonne as it did seme
 But what it ment no man couþ deme
 ¶ As þe prestes did þeir bysy cure
 To offre a calfe anon or þei toke heede
 Þe same calfe a^y a thyng agayn nature
 Broute forth a lambe þe same tyme I rede
 An ouþlie þing to kenne which toke þem in grete drede
 A contrarie pronosticacioun
 Shewyd vnto þem of þeir conuersion 1600
 ¶ With o^{per} tokyns froward and contrarie
 Þe same tyme were shewyd euer among
 Þe brasyn dores of þe frowarde sanctuarie
 With yren barres shit þat were moste stronge
 Broode of entaile rounde and wondre longe
 Þat myght not moeve with xxx mennes myght
 Opynd by þemselve twyes on a nyght
 ¶ Þer were sen also charis in þe eyre

Men of armes with bright swerdes clere
 Of plate and mayle armure was so fayre 1610
 Bright as phebus wher þei did appere
 And as þe story also doþ vs lere
 With þeir sheltrons and þeir apparaile
 A profer mad Ierusalem to assaile
 ¶ To þe Iewys it did signifie
 A pronostik of þeir destruccioun
 Prestes to þe temple as þei did þem hie
 Vpon a nyght to do oblacioun
 In myddes of þe temple was herde a dredeful sowne
 Of which noyse þis was þe ferful ende 1620
 Ryse vp ichon and lete vs hens wende
 ¶ And fully iiij. yere or þat þe sege began
 On Ananias yonge and tendre of age
 Of his birth son of a rude man
 By disposicion dull of his corage
 Like as he hadde fallen in a rage
 Ranne in þe cite by a maner frenesy
 Sparid not with opyn mouþ to crye
 ¶ Vnto þis noyse was made non obstacle
 But obstinate euer in his intent 1630
 Day of þe feste holdyn in þe tabernacle
 A voice *quod* he oute of þe orient
 Voice fro þe souþ . fro þe north and þe eke þe occident
 Voice fro þe iiij. wyndes þat blewe so brode and wyde
 Voice agayn Ierusalem crieth oute on ~~Ierusalem~~ euery syde
 ¶ Voice agayn þe temple agayn þe peple also
 Voice agayn husbandes voice agayn þeir wyves
 Wo to ierusalem with a treble woo
 Of hungre þurst and lesyng of lyves
 Of sworde and fyre and many soddn stryves 1640
 Þis was þe wrecchid lamentacioun
 Which Ananias cried þurghoute þe townn
 ¶ Bette he was for þis affray ful oft
 Whippid scourgid endlong and vpright
 All were it so he felt full vnsofte
 Was by betyng made feynt and feble of m[yght]
 He stynt not to crie so boþ day and nyght
 A pronostik shwyng to þe cite
 Hough þat right sone it shuld destroyed [be]
 ¶ By rehersaile also of Carnetence 1650
 With þat cite for sunne it stooode so þo
 Þat yf Romanes by marciall violence
 Hadde comyn and don þem all þis [wo]
 Þe erþ shuld haue opynd and vndo
 Devourid þe peple voide of all [refuge]
 Or drownyd þe toun by som so[den] deluge

¶Breuelie to passe þis vengauce [most terrible]
Don vpon Iewys for þei [transgressioun]
Ffor þeir demerites þe [punishyng most horrible]

[100v, col. a]

Of Ierusalem final subuersion 1660
Of þe Temple tabernacle and toun
In Iosephus who list se all þe dede
De bello Iudaico he may þe sureples rede

Dialogus inter ffranciscum petrarchum and Bochacium

BOchas here makith an exclamacion **Book VIII.1**

Agayn þe Iewys grete vnkyndnesse
Bought by Romanes þeir cite and þeir toun
Like as þe storie did here beforne expresse
Þei dispartkyld to lyve in wrecchidnesse
By goddis hande punisshid for þeir outrage
For euer lyve in tribute and seruage
¶ffolowyng myn auctor I caste for to touche
So as I can rehersyng þe manere
Hough Iohn Bochas liggyng on his couche 10
Spake to hym selfe and says as ye shall here
Whi art þu now so dull of looke and chere
Like a man þi face berith witnessse
Þat hym disposith to lyve in idlenesse

¶*Certes quod* Iohan I take right goode kepe
Of mych travaile þat þe outrage
Hath be longe slombre caste me in a slepe
My lyfe is feble crokyd and feynt for age
Caste in a drede for dulnesse of corage
ffor to presume vpon me to take 20
Of þe .viij. booke an ende for to make

¶Þu wenyst *peraventure* in þin opinion
By þis laboure to gete þe a name
ffor to reherce þe soden fallyng down
And by sum new processe for to ataine
Of *princessis* sitting high in þe house of fame
In diuerse þe bookes wher þow maist þem fynde
Perpetuelly to put þi name in mynde

¶Þi dayes shorte putt þem grete drede
Of such a labour to take þe passage 30
Þe more feble þe slower is þi spede
Þe sight derkyd and þu arte fall in age
Among remembryng þink on þis language
What man be buried low in þe erth downn
Saued of goode lyvyng farewele all *guerdonn*

¶Worldlie goodes shal passe and þat right sone
Tresoure cunnyng · and all shal out of mynde
ffrenship chaungith as doþ þe cloudy mone

At a streite nede fewe frendes men do fynde
 But a goode name whan it is left behynde 40
 Passith all richesse yf it be well deseruyd
 And all golde in coffre lokkyd and conservyd
 ¶Of þi laboure · þe same shall wex derke
 Beware Bochas and herof take goode heede
 Slouþe spake to me and badde me leve werk
 ffor a small rewarde þu shalt haue for þi mede
 And by example þu maiste oþer rede
 Þis is þe language I hadde þerof rouþe
 Betwen Iohan Bochas and þis ladie slouþe
 ¶Bochas astonyd gan doun his heede inclyne 50
 Vpon a pelow lay hangyng in a traunce
 Stode in grete doute coupe not determine
 Like a man hangyng a balance
 To what partie he shuld his penne avaunce
 To procede as he vndretake
 Or leve þe laboure of his .viij. booke
 ¶Betwen tweyn þus abydyng a while
 What was to do in doute he gan flete
 [Halfe] within and halfe on þe stile
 [Co]uþe not disseerne what was to hym mete · 60
 [Ti]ll ffrauncys petrarche þe laureat poete
 [Crow]nyd with laurell grace was his guyde
 [Cam] and set hym doun by his beddes syde
 [And] as Bochas oute of his slombre abrayde
 [And gan] adaw sumwhat of his chere
 [And sauh] petrarche lowlie to hym he sayde
 [Wolkome m]jaistor crownyd with laurell
 [Which han I]taile like a sonne clere ·

[100v, col. b]

With poetrie pleynlie to descryve
 Most souerenlie illumynd by hir lyve 70
 ¶I haue desyrid as it is well coupe
 Of right full hert by humble attendaunce
 To do yow worship for my tendre youthe
 And so shall euer voide of øf all variaunce
 Duryng my lyfe for truly in substaunce
 Ye haue ben lanterne light and direction
 Ay to support myn occupacion
 ¶As in wrytyng bokes to compile
 Chefe example to my grete avauntage
 To reforme þe rudenesse of my style 80
 With laureate colours of youre fresh laungua[ge]
 But now fordullyd by impotence of age
 Of decrepitus merkyd with many a signe
 My labour vp of wrytyng I ~~resigne~~ resigne

¶ I caste not forth ferþer to procede
 Stond at abay fordryven of werynesse
 Quod ffrauncis petrark lese not þus þi mede
 Yefe men no cause to reporte nor expresse
 In þi laste age þu haste founde a maistresse
 Which hath þe bridild in sothe and þat is routhe 90
 And holde þi reyne. and she is callid slouþe
 ¶ And evident tokyn of froward sluggardrie
 Vpon þi bedde þi lymmes so to dresse
 Ryse vp for shame for I can wel espie
 ffolke þat can grone and fele no seknesse
 Þeir chambreleyn is callid idlennesse
 Which leyth þi pelowes at even and at morowe
 Voide hir fro þe and lete hir go with sorowe
 ¶ To all vertu most froward and contrarie 100
 Is idlennesse here in þis present lyfe
 Which hath draw away fro þi librarie
 Wyl þe not suffre to be contemplatyfe
 ffor hir condicion is for to holde stryfe
 With euery vertuus occupacion
 Which men shuld voide of wysdam and reson
 ¶ In þis matier what shuld I lengar tarie
 Leve þi slombre and vp þin ien dresse
 Þe booke I made of lyfe solitarie
 Remembre þeron þe which in sikyrnesse
 Techith þe wey of vertuus bysynesse 110
 By and by who liste rede euery lyne
 Of comtemplacion morall and diuine
 ¶ As I sayd erste yit lyfte vp þi looke
 fforsake þi bedde ryse vp man for shame
 Woldist þow rest now of þi .vijth. booke
 And leve þe .viiith. in soth þu arte to blame
 Precede forth and gete þi selfe a name
 And with a thyng do þi selfe confort
 As þu deservist men after shal reporte
 ¶ Make a comparison betwen derknesse and light 120
 Betwen idlennesse and occupatioun
 Betwen fayre dayes and þe clowdy nyght
 Betwen a coward prowes and high renoun
 Betwen vertuus spech and detraccion
 And to attend all vices to repressse
 Contrarie to slouþ is vertuus bysynes
 ¶ Vertuus bysynes O Bochas take goode hede
 Rulith all þinges of olde antiquite
 Make men to lyve after þei be dede
 Remembre þe noble of many a grete cite 130
 And no were writers all were gon parde
 Wherefore Bochas sith þu arte nere þe londe

Suffre not þi ship to stumble on no sonde
 ¶I mene as þis þe ship of þi trauaile
 Which hath passid · þe see of bookes vij.
 Cast oute ankir not tyll þu haue goode ryvaile
 Lete no tempest of þundre reyne. nor leven
 ¶ Nor no wyndes of þe cloudy hevyn
 Nor no fals ianglyng of diuerse þat wol blyue
 Deprave þi laboure *and* let þi ship to aryve 140
 ¶Haste on þi wey · lete he[v]yns crosse þi sayle
 ffall an no sonde of wylfyl negligence
 Lete goode wyll be chefe of þi counsaile
 To guy þe roþir set entiere diligence ·

[101r, col. a]

Of vitaile fayle and wyne to þi dispence
 Yit at þe laste þink for þi socoure
 Som roiall prince shall quyte þi laboure
 ¶Þink by wrytyng auctors did þeir peyne
 To yeve princes þeir commendacions 150
 To Remus Romulus callid foundours tweyne
 Of Rome town e and of .ij. Scipions
 Þei wrote þe knyghthode prudence of .ij. Catons
 Of Iulius pompey and hanyball eke also
 By example of whom loke þat ye so do
 ¶Of prophetis þei wrote þe profecies
 And þe nobles of olde moyses
 Of poetes þe laureate poyses
 The force of Sampson þe strength of hercules
 Of ij. Grekes pirrus and achilles 160
 By þer wrytyng bokes sey þe same
 Into þis day endureth yit þe name
 ¶And he þat can and cesith for to write
 Noble examples of oure predecessours
 Of Envie men woll hym atwite
 Pat he in gardens lete perish þe holsom flours
 In sondrie case þat myght do grete socours
 Laboure for oþer and spare not þi travaile
 ffor vertuus laboure agaynn slouþe man most availe
 ¶A þing remembrid of antiquite 170
 Is whan þer is set a fayre ~~in~~ image
 Of a prince of high or low degre
 Or of a persone a prince of his visage
 Gladdith his frend quykyth his corage
 And semblablie by example men may fynde
 Þinges forgotyn by wrytyng g com to mynde
 ¶And for to make oure names perdurable
 And oure merites to put in memorie
 Vicis to eschewe in vertu to be stable

Pat laboure may of slouþe haue þe victorie
To cleyne a see in þe heuenlie consistorie 180
Despite of idlennesse and forþeryng of vertu
ffyne of oure laboure be yeve eþ to criste Ihesu

¶Whan petrarke hadde rehersed þis lessun
In rebukyng of vicius idlennesse
Bochas sirpprisid and mevid of reson
Roose from his couche began his penne dresse
Wyll ouercame þe impotent feblennesse
Of crokyd age þat Bochas vndretoke
ffor to accomplissh vp þe .viij. boke

¶I folowyd after fordullid with rudnesse 190
More þan .iiij^{xx}. yeres set my date
Lust of youþe passid is freshnesse
Colours of rethoric to helpe me translate
Were fadid away I was born in lidgate
Where bachus licoure doþe ful scarselie flete
My drie soule for to drie and wete.

¶Pow pallid age hath fordullid me
Tremblyng ioyntes lete my honde to write.
And fro me take all þe subtilite
Of curius mak yng in english to endite 200
Yit in þis laboure truly me to aquyte
I shall procede as it is to ði me due
In þeis .ij. bokes Bochas for to sue ·

[¶] **De casu Domiciani Imperatoris Rome**
BRoper of Titus son of Vaspasian
Cam next in ordre as writyth myn auctour
Be proud and ambicius callid domician
And was in Rome crownyd emperoure
An extorcionere and a fall fals pillore
Proudlie commaundid in his estate vp stallid
Of all þe worlde he shuld a godde be callid 210
[¶]Purgh high of it is eke tolde
Nouþer of tymbre corven nor of stone
Set vp images of silu[er] and of golde

[101r, col. b]

In token þer was no godde but he allon
Into pathmos he exilid seint Iohan
Agayn cristen þe secund next Neron
Pat began fyrst þe persecucion
[¶]Þis same tiranne reignyng in his estate
To all þe cite was odius passyng odius
Best and most worþi he slough of þe Senate 220
And vnto all þat were vertuus
Mortall ennemie and most malicius
And for slaughter of Senatours in þe town

Askyd þe triumphe as made is mencioun
 [¶]Made among Iewys by ful grete outrage
 Who as he hadde grettest suspicioun
 To sle all þoo þat were of þe lynage
 Of dauid kynred or of kyng Salomon
 Lest he were put oute of dominacion
 Among Iewys þis was his menyng 230
 Slough all þoo þat were bore to be kynges
 [¶]In myddis of þe pales as godde wold of right
 Punysshid a tiranne and quitte hym his mede
 Þis Domician was slayn vpon a nyght
 His careyn after vnburyyd as I rede
 And Comodus doþ after hym succede
 Which was all yeven to fleshlie appetite
 To leve all vertu and folow his fals delite
 [¶]Theatre paleys of custum he did vse 240
 As was þe custum þere and þe vsage
 His lyfe in vicis he falsly did abuse
 In lecherus lustes dispent his yong age
 To þe Romanes did ful grete damage
 ffor of þe Senate þat were moste vertuus
 Were falsly slayn by þis Comodus
 [¶]In his tyme he stroke a þundredynte
 And fyry ~~liht~~ lightnyng þat com doun fro hevyn
 Þe comyn librarie was of þe cite brent
 With roiall bookes of all craftes .vij.
 Bokes of poetes mo þan I can neuen 250
 And Camodus brenelie to determine
 Was slayn and strangled by his concubine
 [¶]Helemis Pertinax cam next on þe ryng
 Ordeynd after Emperoure of þat townn
 Olde and vnweldy slayn in his begynnyng
 After whome þe bookes makith mencioun
 Be no title of successioun
 But an Intrusour' on callid Iulian
 Þe estate vsurpyng to reigne þer begann
 [¶]But of þe noble lynage Affricane 260
 Born in Tripolis a myghty grete cite
 On Seuerus þat was a knyghtlie man
 Gaddred of Romanes a wondre grete meny
 Boþ made strong Iulian met he
 At Pownt Mely a cite of Itaile
 And þere was Iulian slayn in bataile
 [¶]Seuerus after entrid þe empire
 And toke on hym þe dominacioun
 Vpon cristen of malice set afyre
 Began agayn þem a persecucioun 270
 Of tirannie and fals ambicioun

And oon of Egipte callid porcenius
 Agayn Seuerus began to werke þus
 ¶Gaddred peple Seuerus to assaile
 In purpos fully and þeron did his peyn
 ffyrst with hym to haue a grete bataile
 Nexte of þe Empire þe crown to atteyn
 But ye shall here what few of þeis tw[eyn]
 Of porcennis fel þe discomfiture
 And Seuerus þe empire doþ recure 280
 ¶In his purpos or he myght avayle
 With oon Albinus þat was a manly knyght
 He hadde Gaule a ful grete bataile
 fful grete bloode shodde in þat mor[tal fight]
 Albinus slayn of verrey force a[nd myghte]

[101v, col. a]

Seuerus after entrid into Be Bitaine
 Caught seknes and died of þe peyne
 ¶After Seuerus cam Antonio
 Of whom þe froward disposicion
 To all auctours of hym determine 290
 His bysynes and occupacion
 Set hoole in flesslie occupacionn
 So fals a luste his corage did assaile
 Among Parthos slayn in bataile

¶Macrinus after before Bochas cam down
 Whylome a perfecte in Rome þe Cite
 Of þe pretoure and by Inuacion
 Cam to þe Emperiall famus dignite
 Occupied a yere sat in his roiall see
 Tyl fortune liste hym to disgrade 300
 Amonge his knyghtes slayn at Archelade

¶Next cam Aurelius surnamyd Antonio
 A grete ribaud and passyng lecherus
 Yit was he Bisshop as auctours determyne
 In þe temple of Aliogobolus
 And in his tyme was oon Sabellius
 A fals heretic of whom begun þe namys
 Of a secte callid Sabellianes

¶Pis said Aurelius agayns all nature
 Of fals *presumpcioun* in bookes as it is tolde 310
 Wolde pourge his wombe by nature
 But in vesels þat were made of golde
 And in despite whan he is wex olde
 Slayne of his knyghtes and not after longe
 His careyn was þrowen in a foule gonge

¶After þis forsaid proude Antonie
 In to þe Empire by iuste eleccion

Of Senatours as bookes determine
 Cam Aurelius and for his high renoune
 Surename Alexandre as made is mencion 320
 ffaught with persiens like a manly knyght
 And þer kyng exerses he put vnto flight
 ¶ This Aurelius þis poude knyghtlie man
 Whan he sat iuge in þe consistorie
 Per sat oon with hym callid ~~virpian~~ vlpian
 A grete Ciuilien notable of memorie
 Of whom it is to his increce of glorie
 Reportid þus by grete auctorite
 Of þe digestes made bookes .iiij.
 ¶ fful pitevuslie þis Emperoure lost his lyfe 330
 Casuelli as made is mencion
 Among his knyghtes by a soden stryfe
 Wher he was slayn in þat dissencion
 After whos ende for short conclusion
 Before Bochas þe booke well tell can
 Cam Maxininus and with hym Gordian
 ¶ Maxininus þe cronicle dop expresse
 Chosyn of his knyghtes and of his soudieours
 ffor his victorius martiall high prowesse
 Doon of Almayne among emperours 340
 Set vp in Rome maugre þe Senatours
 After strong enmie as myn auctor seith
 With all his power vnto cristes feyth
 ¶ He was enmie his lyfe who list to seen
 To cristin clerkes of grete auctorite
 And specialli to olde Origene
 But in his moste furius cruelte
 In Aquilia a myghti stronge cuntre
 Of a prefecte callid puppien he was slayn 350
 Of whos deþ cristen men were ~~slayn~~ fayn
 ¶ Next by þe Senate chose was Gordian
 ffyrst agayn parthos he gan hym werrey
 Of Ianus temple whan þe werre began
 He made þe gates be opynd with þe key
 Which was a tokyn as olde bookes sey
 Þo gates opynd to folkes nygh and ferre
 Þat with hyr foon þe Romanes wolde haue werre
 ¶ With parthois fyrst þis sayd Gordian
 [T]o holde werre fast he gan hym spede
 [An]d vpon þem allwey þe felde he wan 360
 [After] he spedde hym into perce and mede
 [Alwey] victorius in batail as I rede

[101v, col. b]

Vpon Eufrates slayn as I fynde

Be fals treson þe cronicle makith mynde
 ¶ Next in ordre cam philip by his name
 His son eke philip cam with hym also
 Myn auctor Bochas rehersith eke þe same
 Þe fadre þe son baptizid boþ two
 Ryght sadde and wyse in what þei hadde to do
 And were þe fyrst cristen of ichon 370
 Emperours rekenyd for þer befor was non
 ¶ By pontius þe martir as I rede
 In Maa a famus grete cite
 Þei were baptizid and after þat in dede
 Slayn in bataile for þei liste not fle
 Beforn þeir deþ boþe of assent *parde*
 Þeir tresours hoole þat were imperiall
 To cristes chirch I fynde þei gafe it all
 ¶ The byssshop Sextus toke possession 380
Vertuuslie assignyd it to laurence
 Perfor to make distribucion
 To pore folke in þeir indigence
 ffor which dede by cruell violence
 The tiranne Decius again þem toke a stryfe
 Made ooulie laurence by brennyng lese his lyfe
 ¶ Þis same Decius cursid and cruell
 Causid þe slaughter of þeis philippes tweyn
 And for þem was fals subtill and fell
 By sleight and falshede he did his bysy peyn
 To þe empire by force for to atteine 390
 The .vijth. tiranne by persecucion
 Which agayn cristen men toke fyrst occasion
 ¶ Myn auctour write in tyme of þis Decius
 Þe holy heremite example of ~~perfeccion~~ *perfitenesse*
 Be dayes olde callid Antonius
 Lyved in desert ferre out in wildyrinesse
 As an heremite despysyng all richesse
 Lyvid by frute and rootes as men tell
 And of *perfeccion* drank water of þe well
 ¶ Vpon Decius for his cursidnesse 400
 Agayn cristen which gawe so hard sentence
 Purgh Rome and Itaile myn auctor berith witnessse
 In euery cite was so grete pestilence
 Pat by þe soden dedly violence
 Þe hertes of men dependyng in a traunce
 To saue þeir lyvis couþe make no chevisaunce
 ¶ Of þis matier write no more I can
 To þis Emperoure I woll resorte agayn
 Speke of Gallus and I of Volusiane
 Pat besy were þeir labour was in ~~w~~ veyn 410
 Þeir tyme but shorte as sum bokes seynn

ffor Martine write an olde croniclere
 In þe Empire þei reignyd but .ij. yere
 ¶Boþ were slayn by þe procuryng
 And by þe purchesse of oon Emilian
 A Roman knyght which by sleighty werkyng
 To occupie þe empire þo began
 By tirannie þe lordeship þer he wan
 Whos lordeship for lak of happe and grace
 No lengar last þan .iji. monyths space · 420

¶This litle Capitle as befor is seene
 Rehersid hath and tolde in wordes pleyn
 Of Emperours almost full xiiij.
 And of all were goode noon but tweyn
 Which to reherce I haue do my peyn
 And to procede ferþer as I can
 I muste now write of oon valeriane

De casu valerionis Militis

His son an he callid Gallion
 To all cristen men bare envie grete
 Slough all þoo þeir legend men may se 430
 Pat seruyd criste in trouþe and equite
 Whos persecucioun and hateful cruelte
 Abatid was I can well reherce

By oon Sapor þat was kyng of perce
 ¶By force of armys Sapor þis myghty kyng
 Began in Asya and with his ost cam down
 Be Titre Eufrates and knyghtlie so rydyng

[102r, col. a]

Toward þe parties of ~~Septemtron~~ Septemtrion
 To ~~Caus~~ Caucasus not ferre from Babilon
 And all Surrie he proudlie did assaile 440
 An Capadoce ek he wan by bataile

¶Whom for to mete cam doun Valerian
 Mesopotany with many legions
 Þe werre was stronge but þis knyghtlie man
 Þis hardy Sapor with his champions 445

~~Þis Valerian so streitlie brought to wrake~~ 450

~~Like a prisoner bound to þis seruage~~ 451

~~By obeysaunce þat founde were no lakke~~ 452

Þe felde hath wonne with all þe region 446

Affore rehersyd and þurgh perce he ladde
 Valerian bounde with cheynys rounde and sadde

¶He was by Sapor maugre his visage
 Þis valerian so streitlie brought to t wrake 450

Like a prisoner bounde to þis servage

By obeysaunce þat founde were no lake

To knele on foure and to profyr his bak

^Vnto Sapor whan hym liste to ride
 Perby to mount for all his grete pride
 ¶Pis was þe office of Valerian
 By *seruytute* duryng many yere
 Wher for he was callyd of many a man^
 Þe assendyng stok into þe sadill nere
 Which is in french callid a mountwere 460
 Pis was to bow doun his corps
 Whan þat kyng Sapor shuld lepe vpon his hors
 ¶Pis was þe guerdon and fauour of fortune
 Hir olde maner to princes and to kynges
 Hir double custom vsyd in ~~e-comyn~~ *commune*
 By soden chaunge of all worldly þinges
 After triumphes and þeir vprysynges
 What foloweth after hir whele tell can
 I take recorde of valerian
 ¶Pis lady fortune þe blynde fell goddessse 470
 To valerian shewith hirselle vnstable
 Taught hym a lesson of hir doublenesse
 To kyng Sapor she was faorable
 But yit he was to cruel and vengable
 With his feete devoid of all fauour
 To soile þe bakke of an Emperoure
 ¶Of olde it hath be songe and cryed lowde
 Record of Cirus and many oþer mo
 Kynges of perce of custom haue be proude 480
 And after punysshid and chastysid eke also
 Princes of mercy shuld take hede herto
 After victorie in þeir estate notablie
 To þeir prisoners for to be merciablie
 ¶Myn auctour Bochas in his booke wel tell can
 Rebuke tirannes þat were by dayes olde
 Turnyth his style and spekith to valerian
 Wher be þe rubies and saphires set in golde
 Þe riche perle and rynges manyfolde
 Þat þu were wont to were vpon þin hondes
 Now as a wrecch art bounde in foren bondes 490
 ¶Wher þu were want of furius cruelte
 Cladde in purpull within Rome town
 To criste contrarie in þin Emperial se
 Yave dome on martyrs to suffre passion
 Now liggist þu bounde fetrid in prison
 To kyng Sapor constreynynd to incline
 Whan he liste ride bowe boþ nek and chyne
 ¶Pus art þu fall fro þin emperiall ~~stall~~ stage
 Þink on fortune and haue hir in þi memorie
 She hath þe caste in þraldam and seruage 500
 And eclipsid all þin olde glorie

Wher þu sat whilom in þe consistorie
 As a grete emperour and a myghti iuge
 Lyest bounde in cheynys and knowest no refuge
 ¶ It is full ferre fall oute of þi mynde
 Þe knyghtlie dede of worþi publius
 Of Rome a capton ordeynd as I fynde
 To fight agayn Aristomachus
 Kyng of Asie of fortune it fell þus
 Whan þe Romanes did þe felde forsake 510
 This publius among his foon was take
 ¶ Þis noble prince stonyng in dredeful case
 His lyfe his worship dependyng betwen tweyn
 In his hand holdyng a sturdy mace
 Smot out on of his ieen tweyn
 Of hym þat ledde hym þat oper for þe peyn
 Þat he felt and þe grete smert

[102r, col. b]

Toke a dagger and rofe publius to þe hert
 ¶ Which lovith more his worship þan his lyfe
 Chese rap̄er to die þan to lyve in *seruage* 520
 Þis conceit hadde in his ymaginatyfe
 And considrid sith he was in age
 To saue his honoure it was more avauntage
 So to be slayn his worship to conserue
 Þan like a beste in prison for to sterve

¶ ffortunes Capitle of hym it was not redde
 Of which valerius makith mencion
 After whos conceit no man in *vertu* sadde
 Shuld not long languyssh in prison
 But rap̄er chese like his opinion 530
 Of manlie force and knyghtlie excellence
 Þe dep̄ indire of long abstinence

¶ As whilom did þe princesse Agrippyne
 Whan she in prison lay fettrid and bounde
 Of hir fre choyse she felt so grete pyne
 Of hungre þurst in storie it is founde
 Þat she lay pale and gruffe vpon þe grounde
 Maugre Tiberie and lete hir goste so wende
 Oute of hir body þis was hir fatall ende

¶ Þu stode ferre of f̄ all such fantasie 540
 I speke to þe o þu valerian
 Þi cruell hert of fals melancolie
 Made whilom to die many a cristen man
 And martir · sith cristes feith began
 Which for mankynde sterved on þe roode
 Þei for to aquyte hym · liste to shede their bloode
 ¶ Agayn to his lawe þu were impacient

And importune by *persecucion*
 Pow didist not faouere and suffre in þin intent
 Pat Egipcians did þeir oblacion 550
 Peir *sacrificis* vp so down
 Vnto Isis of froward wyfulnessse
 Pat was of Egypte callid chefe goddessse
 ¶ffauorable þu were in þi desyre
 To suffre Iewes þeir Sabbat ̅ to obserue
 And Chaldeis to i worship þe fyre
 And folke of Crete Saturne for to serue
 And cristen men þu madist falslie sterve
 Of whos Iawe for þu didist not reche
 Þu didst in prison in myschefe as a wrecche 560
De casu Gallieni filij Valerionis
 NExte in order to Bochas þo cam down
 Son of Valerian on callid Gallien
 But for þe grete and horrible effusion
 Of crysten bloode þat men myght seen
 Shedde by valerian godde wolde it shulde ben
 Shewyd opynlie to Romanes by vengeaunce
 Of many a cuntre sodeyn disobeysaunce
 ¶Pei of Almanie þe Alpies did passe
 Vnto Ravenne a cite of Itaylie
 Gothis also proude of chere and face 570
 Hadde ag agayn Grekes many a grete bataile
 And þei of hungrie armyd in plate and mayle
 With þem of denmark furius and cruell
 Agayn þe Romanes wex of assent rebell
 ¶To whos damage in þis mene while
 Among Romanes it is befall þus
 Wofull werrys which callid be Ciuile
 Began in þe Cite cruel and despitous
 ffyrst whan þei met was slayn Gemius
 Which fyrst toke on hym in bokes as I rede 580
 Of high corage to were purpill wede
 ¶Oon postumius a myghty stronge Romane
 Kepte all Gaule vndre subieccioun
 To þeir availe vnwarlie after slaynn
 Among his knyghtes for all his high renoun
 By a soden vncouþ dissencion
 Nexte victorine havyng þe governaunce
 Of all Gaule was after slayn in ffraunce
 ¶But Gallien of whome I spake before
 Sonne and eyre vnto Valerian 590

[102v, col. a]

His dominacioun of purpos he hap lornn
 In Republica whan he began

Like a contrarius and a froward mann
 Wex lecherus and vicius of lyvyng
 At myschefe slayn. þis was his endyng
 ¶Next t Gallien cam on Quintillius
 A man remembrid of grete attemperaunce
 Broþer of byrth to grete Claudius
 Wyse and discrete in all his gouernaunce
 Who may of fortune eschew þe chaunce 600
 To write his ende shortlie in a clause
 Of women mordrid I can sey þe cause
 ¶Of Denmark born next cam Aurelian
 A worþi knyght his ennemies to assaile
 Agayn Gothis a grete werre he beganne
 Gate victorie in many stronge grete bataile
 Whos noble conquest gretelie did availe
 To comyn profite for all his werk *parde*
 Was to increce þ Rome þe cite
 ¶He recurid all Septemtrion. 610
 And westward hadde many grete victorie
 Among oþer I fynde he was oon
 Axid þe triumphe to be þ put in memorie
 But þer was a þing eclipsid all þe glorie
 Which haþe þe light of his knyghthode withdrawe
 ffor he was ennemie to criste and to his lawe
 ¶Of whome Bochas lyste no more now write
 But in his booke goþ forth as he began
 Of on remembryng þat callid was Tacite
 Which was successoure to Aurelian 620
 And after hym succedith fflorian
 Of which tweyn no remembraunce I fynde
 Þat is notable to be put in mynde
 ¶Probus after reigned ful .vij. yere
 And .iiij. monyths which þurgh his high renoun
 Agayn Saturnus with a knyghtlie chere
 And brought hym prouddie to subieccion
 Notwithstandyng þat he in Rome toun
 Toke vpon hym of wylful tiranne
 Holy þe empire he for to rule and guy 630
 ¶Beside þe Cite callid Agrippyne
 Þis said probus agayn many a proude Romane
 A bataile had liste not declyne
 Met proculus a myghty stronge Capteine
 With on Bonosus and boþe þer were slayn
 And all þeir meny of *verrey* force and myght
 Slayn in þe felde þe remanent put to flight
 ¶After þis bataile and þis discomfiture
 Probus was longid in Smyryn a grete cite
 And þere vnwarly of soden aventure 640

Slayn in a toure þat callid was ferre
 But a small ceson laste his prosperite
 Such is fortune late no man in hir truste
 All worldly þinges she chaungith as she liste
 ¶ Beforn Bochas Clarus next cam doun
 With his .ij. sonnes Nevmerian and caryne
 And as I fynde he was born in Narbon
 And descendid of a noble lyne
 But whan þat she moste clerly did schryne
 In his Empire he gate Cites tweynn 650
 Chose and þe Olifaunt in parthos with ^grete^ peyne
 ¶ Besyde Tigre a famus swyft ryver
 He pight his tentes and cast hym þer to abyde
 A soden lightnyng his face cam so nere
 Smit all to poudre for all his grete pride
 And Numerian þat stode by his syde
 Had a mark þat was sent from heuynn
 Lost boþ his ieen with þe fyry leuyn
 ¶ [Hi]s oþer son Carinus a good knyghtlie
 [I]n Dalmacia hadde all þe gouernaunce 660

[102v, col. b]

And for þat he governd not aright
 He was cast doun and lost all his puissaunce
 Vicius lyfe comyth allwey to myschaunce
 Sepcuis Chose Dalmacia for to guy
 Among his knyghtes mordrid of envie

[104v, col. a16]

**De casu Constantini magni . filij Sancte
 Elene Colcesterie nate .**

¶ Of þis matier stynt I wyl a while
 And folow myn own straunge opinion
 ffro Constancius turne away my style
 And to his fadre make a digression
 Because Bochas makith but short mencion
 Of Constantyne which by record of clerkes
 Was so notable founde in all his workes
 ¶ Þis mygthi prince was born in Britaine
 So as þe Brute playnlie doþ vs lere
 His holy modre callid was Elen
 He in his dayes most knyghtlie and intiere 1180
 Of marcial actes he knew all þe manere
 Chosyn Emperoure for his high noblesse
 ffel to lepre as cronicles doþ expresse
 ¶ His sore so grevus þat no medicine

Book VIII.1170

Myght availe his seknes to recure
He counseld to make a grete pistine
With innocent blode of chyldren þat were pure
Make hym clene of þat he did endure
Thurgh all Itaile children anon were sought
And to þeir pales by þeir modres brought 1190

¶It was grete rouþ to beholde and se
Of tendre modres to se þe sobbyng
By furius constreynt of þeir aduersite
Peir cloþis rent . bedewyd with wepyng
Be straunge noyse of þer hidous cryng
Ascendid vp þat þeir pitevus clamoure
Cam to þe eris of þe emperoure

¶Of which noyse þe emperoure was agrisid
Whan þat he knew ground and occasioun
Of þis matier afforn tolde and devisid 1200

Þis noble prince gan haue compassioun
And for to stynt þe lamentacioun
Of all þe wommen þer beyng in presence
Of merciful pite hath chaungid his sentence

¶Þis gloruis þis gracios emperoure
Is clombe of mercy so high vpon þe steyre
Sparid nouþer his vitaile nor his tresour
Nor his langour þat did hym so appayre
With ful glad chere made þem to repaire
Where þei cam sory to Rome þe cite 1210
Pei home returnyd gladde to þeir cuntre

¶[Roy]all compassion did in his hert myne
[Ches] to be seke raþer þan blode to shede
[His] brest illumynd be grace which is diuine
[Whi]ch from þe heuyn did vpon hym sprede
[He wol]de not suffre innocentes bleede
[Prefer]ryng pite and mercy more þan right
[He was] visitid vpon þe next nyght

¶[Petre and] paule to hym did appere 1220
[Sent fro þe lord] as heuenli messangers
[Bad Constantine been] of right goode chere

[104v, col. b]

ffor he þat sit aboue þe nyne speris
The lorde of lordis . lorde of lengest yeris
Wyl þat þu wit . þu haue it well in mynde
In mount Serapte þu shalt þi leche fynde
¶Godde of his grace list þe to visit
To shede blode because þat þu dost spare
He hath vs sent þi labour for to quyte
Tydynges broute of helth and þi welfare
Pope Siluester to þe shall declare 1230

As we haue tolde be right full assuryd
 Of þi seknesse hough þow shalt be recurid
 ¶To mount Serapti in all hast þat þu sende
 Suffre Siluester com to þi presence
 Sought and founde breuelie to make an ende 1235
 Did his deuer as Siluester haþ devisid 1237
 Be grace made hole whan he was baptysid 1239
 Receyvid *after* with du reuerence 1236

¶His flessch his synews made sodenlie white 1240
 Be thries wasshyng in þe fresh piscine
 Of holy Baptyme well of most delite
 Where þe holy gost did hym illumine
 Enformyd *after* by techyng and doctrine
 Of Siluester like as myn auctour seyth
 Of all articles þat longith to oure feyth
 ¶Þe font was made of porphirie stone
 Which was *after* by coste of Constantine
 With a rounde bye þat did aboute goan
 Of gold and perle and stonys þat were fyne 1250
 In myddes of þe fonte right vp as a lyne
 Vpon a piler of golde a lampe bright
 Full of fyne bawme þat brent all þe nyght
 ¶A lambe of golde he did also provide
 Set on his font vpon a small pilere
 Which like a condite vpon euery syde
 Shedde oute water as eny cristall clere
 ♀ On whos right syde an image most entiere
 Was richelie forgid of oure Saveour
 All of pure golde þat coste grete tresoure 1260
 ¶And of þis lambe vpon þat oþer syde
 An image set sette longe to indure
 Of baptist John with *lettres* to abide
 Graven curiuslie and þis was þe scripture
 Ecce agnus dei þat s did for man indure
 On goode friday offrid vp his bloode
 To saue mankynde sterve vpon þe rode
 ¶He lete also make a grete censere
 All of golde fret with perlis fyne
 Which by nyght as phebus in his spere 1270
 Thurgh all þe chirch most freshlie did shyne
 Ther wer .xl. stonys Iacynctyne
 App Apollos temple myn auctour write þe same
 Was halowed newe in Seint petres name
 ¶Þe Romane temples þat were beldid of olde
 He hath fordon with all þeir mawmentrie
 Þeir false goddis of siluer and of golde
 He hath tobroke ~~vpon~~ vpon iche partie

Pis goodlie prince of gostlie policie
 Sette of new statutes of grete vertu 1280
 To be obseruyd in þe name of Ihesu
 ¶ Þe fyrst lawe as I reherce can
 In ordre set with ful grete reuerence
 Þat criste Ihesu was sothfast godde and man
 Lorde of lordes . lorde of most excellence
 Which hath þis day of his benevolence
 Curid my lepre as ye haue herde devisid

[105r, col. a]

By blessyd Siluester whan I was baptisid
 ¶ This gracios lorde my souereigne lorde Ihesu
 ffrom hens forth . for short conclusion 1290
 In wyll þat he as lorde of most vertu
 Of feithful hert and hole affeccion
 Be worshippid in euery regioun
 No man so hardy my biddyng to disdeigne
 Lest he incurre of deþ þe grevous peyne
 ¶ ffolowyng þe day callid þe secund
 Pis constantyne orderid a decre
 Þat who þat euer in town were founde
 Or elswer aboute in þe cuntre 1299
 Þat blasphemyd þe name of cryste Ihesu 1301
 Whateuer he were of high or lowe degre 1300
 Be dome shuld haue of deþ a playn issue 1302
 ¶ Þe þrid day in euery mannes sight
 By a decre confermyd and made stronge
 To any cristyn who þat did vnright
 By oppression or collaterall wronge
 It shuld not be tryed taried ouer longe
 Who were convicte or gylty shal not chese
 Be lawe orderid halfe his goode to lese
 ¶ Þe iiijth day among Romanes all 1310
 Pis priuelege pronouncid in þe town
 Yeve to þe pope sittyng in petre stall
 A souereigne hede in euery region
 To haue þe rule and iurisdiccion
 Of prestes all allon in all þing
 Of temperall lordes like as hath þe kyng
 ¶ To þe chirch he grauntid grete fraunchise
 The v.th day and special liberte
 Yf a felon in any maner wyse
 To fynde socoure þidre did fle 1320
 Within þe boundes fro daunger go fre
 To be assuryd and haue þe ful refuge
 ffrom execucion of eny temperall iuge
 ¶ No man presume within no cite

Pe .vij.th day ^he gaue^ ~~his law eke he did make~~ his sentence
No man so hardy of high ne lowe degre
To belde no chirch but he haue licence
Of þe Bysshop beyng in presence
Pis is to say þat he in his estate
By þe pope afforn be approbate 1330

¶Pe .vij.th day þis law eke he did make
Of all possessions with þat be roiall
Pe .x.th parte eerlie shal be take
Be iuges handes in parti and in all
Which tresoure þei delyuer shall
As þe statute doþ pleynlie specifie
Hoole and intiere chyrchis to edifie
¶Pe .viii.th day mekelie he did hym quyte
With grete reuerence and humble affeccion
Whan he did of all his cloþis white 1340

And cam hymselfe on pilgrimage dounn
Before seint petre of grete deuocion
Notwithstondyng his roiall excellence
Made his confession in opyn audience
¶His crown tok of knelyng þus he sayde
With wepyng ieen and voice most lamentable
And for sobbyng as he myght abrayde
O blyssid ihesu . o lorde most merciable
Lete my teris to þe be acceptable
Receyve my prayer my request not refuse 1350

As man moste synful I may me not excuse
¶I occupied þe estate of þe emperoure
Of þi martirs I shed þe holy blode
Sparid no Sanctes in my cruell erreure
Pe to pursue fell furius and woode
Now blessid Ihesu most *gracius and* most goode
Peysid and considrid myn importable offence

[105r, col. b]

I am not worþi to com in þi presence
¶Nor for to entre into þis holy place
Vpon þis grounde vnable for to dwell 1360

To opyn myn ieen or to lyft vp my face
But of þi mercy so þu me not repell
As man most synfull I com vnto þi well
Ði well of grace and *mercyful* pite
ffor to be wasshid of myn iniquite
¶This example in opyn he hath shewyd
His estate imperiall of meknes layd asyde
His purpul garnement with teris al bedewyd
Swerd nor sceptre nor hors vpon to ride
Per was non seyn ne baners splayd wide 1370

Of marciall triumphes þer was no tokyn founde
 But cryyng mercy þe emperoure lay flat to þe grounde 1372
 ¶Pis ioy was like a fest funerall 1380
 In full of custom þat doon þeir bysy cure
 To bryng a corps which of custom shall
 Haue all his rites of his sepulture
 And in þis tyme of soden aventure
 To lyfe agayn restorid be his bonys
 Causyng his frendis to laugh and wepe at onys
 ¶Sembleable dependyng atwene tweynn
 Þe peple wepte and þerwith reioysyng
 To se þer emperoure so pitevuslie compleynn
 ffor his trespas mercy requiryng 1390
 Of ioy and sorow a gracious medlyng
 Þat day was seen gladnes mengyd with mone
 With wepyng laughtre and all in o persone
 ¶After all þis & he diggyd vp hisselve
 Stonys .xij. wher he lay knelyng
 Put þem in Cofyns xij.
 On þe .xij. Apostles devoutlie remembryng
 Compassid in grounde large for beldyng
 Besid his pales caste þeron wyrch
 In cristes name to set þervpon a chrch 1400
 ¶Þe place of olde callid lataranence
 Beldid and edified in þe apostles name
 Constantine bare all þe dispense
 Orderid lawe myn auctor seyth þe same
 If eny pore nakyd halte or lame
 Receyve wolde þe feyth of criste Ihesu
 He shulde be statute be take to his issu
 ¶In his promisse yf he were found tru
 Þat he were not by feynyng no fayter
 He shuld fyrst be spoiled and cladde newe 1410
 By þe costage of þe emperoure
 xx. shylynges receyve to his socoure
 Of which receit noþing was withdrawe
 By statute kepte and hold as for a lawe .
 ¶It were to longe to put in memorie
 His high prowes and his notable dedes
 And to reherce euery grete victorie
 Which þat he hadde with ostes þat he & ledis
 And to remembre all his gracious spedis
 Þe surplusage who liste comprehende 1420
 Lete hym of Siluester rede þe legende
 ¶And among oþer touchyng his vision
 Which þat he hadde in Cronicles men may [lere]
 Whan þat he slepte in his roial dongeone
 Hough criste to hym graciouslie did appere

Shewyd hym a crosse and saide as I ye [shall heere]
 Be not afferd vpon þi foon to fall
 ffor in þis signe þu shall þem ouerco[me alle]
 ¶By which vision he was made gladd [and light]
 Þurgh goddes grace and heuynlie [influence] 1430
 ffyrst in his baner þat shone so [clere and bright]
 Þe Crosse was bete shefe [token of his diffence]
 Slough þe tiranne þat [callid was Maxence]
 After whos dep þur[gh his high renoun]

[105v, col. a]

Of all þe empire he toke possessioun
 ¶In which estate he maintenyd trouþ and right
 Vpon all pore hauyng compassion
 Duryng þis tyme holdyn best knyght
 Þat on wher was in any Region 1440
 Of cristes feyth þe emperiall champioun
 Þurgh his noble knyghtlie magnificence
 To all cristen protector and defence
 ¶After his name which neuer shall appall
 Channgid in Grece of Bisante
 Constanitine he did after call
 And on a stede of brasse as men may se
 Manasshyng of Turkes þe cuntre
 And set sat armyd a grete swerd in his hande
 Them to chastyse þat rebelld in þat londe
 ¶Reioice Reioice þe folkes þat born be in Britein 1450
 Callid operwyse Brutus Albionn
 Þat hadde a prince so notable souereigne
 Broute forth and fostrid in þeir region
 Þat whilom hadde þe dominacion
 As chefe monarch prince and president
 Ouer all þe worlde from þe est to þe occident .
 ¶In tyme of his dep þat moneth of þe yere
 Phebus not seyn withdrew his fervent hete
 And longe afforn large brode and clere
 Toward Affrik showyd a grete comynte 1460
 Allwey incresyng drowe towarde þe cite
 Of Nichomedie shone erlie and eke late
 Wherin his pales he passid into fate .

[109v, col. b5]

De casu Arthuris Regis Anglie ·

¶Was ever prince myght hymselfe assure
 Of fortune þe faouere to restreyn
 Like his desyre hir grace to recure
 To abide stablie and stand at acertein

Book VIII.2661

Among all rekyn Arthure of Breteine
 Which in his tyme was holde of euery wyght
 Þe wysest prince and þe best knyght
 ¶ To ~~Bochas~~ whom Bochas began his stile dresse
 In þis Chapitle to remembre blyve
 His grete conquest and his high noblesse 2670
 With singler dedis þat he wrought his lyve
 And fyrst begynnyth breue to descryve
 Þe site of Bretein and of þat cuntre
 Which is inclosid with a large see
 ¶ Set ferre westwarde as ye shall vndrestand
 Hauyng in Spayn set in þe opposit
 Of a small angle callid Ingland
 ffraunce aboute hym ~~des~~ discernyng þus his site
 With many a ryver plesaunt of delite
 Hote bapis and wellys þer be founde 2680
 Diuerse miners of metall full habounde
 ¶ Aboute which renneth þe occean
 Ryght plentevus of all maner vitaile
 Þe name of which as Brutus fyrst began
 London hath shippis by þe see to saile
 Bachus at wynchestre gretelie doþ availe
 Worcestre with frutes haboundith at þe full
 Herford with bestes and Cotyswold with woll
 ¶ Bape hote bapes holsum for medecine
 York myghty tymbre for grete avauntage 2690
 Cornewell miners in to myne
 Salesbury bestes full sauage
 Whete mylk and hony plente for euery age
 Kent and Canterbury haþe grete commodite
 Of sundrie ffysshis þer takyn in þe see
 ¶ Bochas rehersith þer is ek in briteyne
 ffounde of gete ful precius stone
 Blak of coloure and vertuus in certeyne
 ffor seknes many mo þan oon
 Poudre of which wyll destroy anon 2700
 Yf it be drunk þoh it be ~~sieure~~ secrete
 Of maydynhode þe broken chastite
 ¶ Þer be of perlis founde in muskyll shellis
 And þei be best þat haue most whitenesse
 And as þe book also of Brutus tell
 Hough King Arthure to speke of worþinesse
 Passid all kynges in Marciall prowes
 Touchyng his lyne and his riall kynred
 Who þat liste se in Brutus he may rede
 ¶ His fadre callid Vter pendragon 2710
 A manlie knyght and famus of corage
 Of fals envie mordrid by payson

His son Arthur but yong and tendre of age
 By full assent of all his baronage
 By succession anon right
 Callid of Europe þe most famus knyght
 ¶Curteyse large . and manlie of dispense
 Mirroure callid of liberalite
 Hardy strong and of grete providence
 And of his knyghtlie ~~magnificence~~ magnaniminte 2720
 He drove Saxons oute of þeir his cuntre
 Conquerd by prowes of his myghty hande
 Archadois . denmark and also holland
 ¶Ireland Norway Gaule ~~seeth~~ Scotland *and* ffraunce
 As Martes sonne to þe werris mete
 Wrought by consaile and by þe ordinaunce
 Of prudent Melyne callid his *prophete*
 And as I fynde he lete make a ~~site~~ sete
 Among his Bretons most famus and notable
 Þurgh all þe worlde callid þe rounde table 2730
 //Most worþi knyghtes preved of þeir hande

[110r, col. a]

Chosyn oute by Arthur þis ordre hap begune
 Þeir famus nobles þurgh euery cristen londe
 Shone by reporte as doþ þe mydday sonne
 To þe pales of fame þe renoun is vp ronne
 Statutes set by vertuus ordinaunce
 Vndre profession of Merciall governaunce
 ¶Þe fyrste statute in þe registre founde
 ffor which þei shuld not declyne of right
 By ful assurance of oþe and custom bounde 2740
 Ay to be armyd in plates forgid bright
 Excepte a space to reste hym on þe nyght
 Seke aventurs and þeire tyme spende
 Righthful querell to susteine and defende
 ¶Þe febler parti yf he hadde of right
 To þeir power manlie to supporte
 If þat þei were requirid of eny wight
 ffolk disconsolate to breng vp and confort
 At all tymes men may of hym reporte
 No maner wyse þei to do violence 2750
 And agayn tiraunes make knyghtlie resistance
 ¶Þat widowes maydyns suffre no damage
 By fals oppression of hateful cruelte
 Restore chyldren to þeir true heritage
 Wrongfully exilid folke to þer cuntre
 And for holy chirch liberte
 Redy euer to make þemself stronge
 Raþer to die þan to suffre wrong

¶ffor comyn profit as chosyn champions
 Pro Republica defendyng þeir cuntre 2760
 Shew ay þemself hardy as leons
 Honoure to increce chaste dishoneste
 Releve all þem þat suffre aduersite
 Religijs folke haue þem ^in^ reuerence
 Pilgrymes receyve þat faile of þeir dispence
 ¶Callid in armys .vij. dedis of mercie
 Buried soudieours þat failid sepulture
 ffolk in prison deliver þem gracioslie
 Such as be pore þeire raunsom to recure
 Woundid peple þat languyssh endure 2770
 Which pro Republica manlie spend þeir bloode
 Þe statute bonde to do such folkes goode
 ¶To be þemselfe neuer in aventure
 But matiers þat were iuste and true
 Afforn providid þat þei stode sure
 Þe grounde well knowe were it of olde or newe
 And after þat þe matier whan þei knewe
 To procede knyghtlie and not feyn
 As right requirid þeire querell to derayn
 ¶A clerke þer was to cronicle all þeir dedis 2780
 By pursuauntes made to hym reporte
 Of þeir explete and þeir good spede
 Redde and songe to folke gave grete conforte
 Þes famus knyghtes makyng þeir resorte
 At high festis euerych toke his sete
 Like þeir estate as was to þem mete
 ¶On was wyde þe-se callid þe see perilus
 As sang roiall doþ pleyndie determine
 Noon to entre but þemost vertuus
 Of godde providid to be a pure virgine 2790
 Born of descent to accomplish and fyne
 He allon as as chefe and souereigne
 All adventures of walez and Breteyn
 ¶Among all kyngis renoinyd and famus
 As bright sonne set among þe sterris
 So stode Arthurgh notable and glorius
 Like fresh phebus castyng his light aferris
 In pees like Argus most Marciall in þe werris
 As Ector hardy like vlixes trefable
 Callid among cristyn kyng most honerable 2800
 ¶His roiall courte he did so ordeigne
 Thurgh ich cuntre so ferre spredde out þe light
 Who þat euer þidder cam fro-ferre to pleynd

[110r, col. b]

Be wrong repressid or requirid of right

In his defence he shuld fynd a knyght
 To hym assignyd finalli to attende
 By marciall ~~donne~~ dome his querell to defende
 ¶ Yf it fell so þat eny straunge knyght
 Sought adventures and þidre cam fro ferre
 To don armys his request made of right 2810
 His chalenge seyn were it pees or werre
 Was acceptid and to þe courte cam nerre
 Like as he cam with many or allone
 Pei were delyuerd forsake was neuer oon
 ¶ Per was þe scole of marcial doctrine
 ffor yong knyghtes to lerne all þe guyse
 In tendre age to lerne full discipline
 On hors on fote by notable exercise
 Þing take in youþ doþ helpe in many wyse
 And idlenes in grene yeris goon 2820
 And of all vertues eclipseth þe clere sonne
 ¶ Widowes maydyns oppresid folk also
 Of extorte wronges wrought by tirannie
 In þat courte what nacion cam þer to
 Receyvid were þer list no man deny
 Of þer compleyntes and redie remedie
 Made no delay but forth anon right
 Þem to defende assignyd was a knyght
 ¶ Eke by þeir ordre þei bound were of troupe troupe
 By assurance and by oþe sworne 2830
 In þeir emprises and let for no slouþe
 Pleynlie to tell hough þey haue þem þem born
 Their adventures of þinges doon befor
 Right as it fell spare in no manere
 To tell ich þing vnto þeir registrere
 ¶ Thynges opynlie doon or þing þat was secret
 Of adventures as betwix tweyn
 Or eny querell to be of volunte
 Trulie reporte and platlie not to feyne
 Not conclid of worship nor of shame 2841
 Them to be sworn st þe statute did ordeyn 2840
 To be registrid reporte þe selue same
 ¶ And to conclud þe ~~statu~~ statutes have vs lerned
 Euery querell groundid on honeste
 In þat courte what knyght was requirid
 In þe defence of troupe and equite
 ffalshode excludid and duplicite
 Shall ay be redy to susteine þat parte
 His lyfe his bodie to put in eopardie
 ¶ Thus in Breteyne shone þe clere light 2850
 Of chevalrie ø and of high prowes
 Which þurgh þe worlde shedde his bemys bright

Welle of worship condite of all nobles
 Imperiall courte all wronges to repress
 Hede spryng of honoure of larges chefe cisterne
 Mirroure of manhode . of nobles þe lanterne
 ¶ Yif was þer neuer seen so bright a sonne
 The somersday in þe mydday spere
 So freshlie shyne but som skyes don
 Myght *percas* curten his bemys clere 2860
 Oft it failith whan fortune makith beste chere

And falslie smylith in hir double wede
 ffolk sey experte þan is she moste dredde
 ¶ Þis whan þe name of þis worþi kyng
 Was ferþest spredde by reporte of memorie
 In euery realme his nobles most shynyng
 All his emprisis concludyng with victorie
 Þis double goddes envied at his glorie
 And caste menes by som maner trayn
 To eclyse þe light of knyghthode in ~~Be~~ B[reteyne] 2870

¶ Þis while Arthur stode most honorable
 In his estate flouryng in lusty age
 Among his knyghtes of þe rounde tabl[e]
 Highest of princes of fortunes stage
 Þe Romanes sent to hym for tru[age]
 Gan make a cheyn froward and [outraious]
 Takyng þeir title of Cesar Ju[lius]

[110v, col. a]

¶ The same tyme þis myghti Kyng Arthur
 Conquerd hadde Gaule and also ffraunce
 Outrayed ffroll and like a conqueroure 2880
 Broute paris vndre obeysaunce
 Toke þem to grace and with his ordinaunce
 Gate all Aungey Angoris and Gascoigne
 Peitowe Naverne Berrey and Burgoigne

¶ Cessed not but did his bysy peyn
 Moste like a knyght helde forth his passage
 Gate all þe londe of peytres and towryn
 Þeir citees yolde . to hym þei did homage
 To be rebell þei found non avauntage
 Soiournyd in ffraunce as seyth þe croniclere 2890
 Helde possession þe space of .ix. yere .

¶ Helde a feste ful solempne at Parris
 All þe cuntres which ne gate in ffraunce
 Like a prince ful *provident* and wyse
 Which hadde of fredam full roiall suffisaunce
 Of all his conquest þe cuntreys in substauce
 ffor his princes and Barons so providid
 Like þeir desertes he hath þem diuidid

¶ To his Senescall þat callid was Caye
Aungey and Meyne he gave all þat partie 2900
To his butler was made no delay
Callid Bredware he gaue Normandie
To a Baron nygh cosyn of allie
A manlie knyght which callid was Barell
Gauē þe duchie of Burgoigne euery dele
¶ Þus he derpartid lorde shippes of þat londe
Wher he þought was most expedient
Somme he reseruyd in his own honde
Agayn to Breteyne returnyd of intente
Sent oute writtis helde a greete parlement 2910
After which he made a feste anon
In þ[e] cuntre callid Glowmorgoon
¶ At a grete cite callid Carlion
As ^{it} is remembrid by wrytyng
Cam many a prince *and* many a fresh baron
In noumbre I fynde þat þer were x. kynges
Redy to obey Arthur in all þinges
Present also it was well seen
Þer were of Erles rekynyd xiiij.
¶ All þe knyghtis of þe rounde table 2920
Þe feste of pentecost a feste principall
Many estates famus and honorable
Of princes Barons of þe bloode roiall
Were present þer and in especiall
All þo þat were by oþe of promisse bounde
Of broþerhode of þe table rounde
¶ And it fell so while þat þe kyng Arthure
As aperteynyd sat in his estate
Þer cam xij. sent down by grete labour
Of olde meny chose of þe Senate 2930
Sadde of þeir aporte demure and temperate
Richelie cladde of looke and of visage
Grey heryd semyd of right grete age
¶ ffyrste conynglie as þei þought it due
Cause of þeir commyng and pleyndie þat þei ment
ffyrst of assent þe kyng þei cam salue
Next after þat þei tolde whom þei sent
And þer lettres meklye þei present
Concludyng þus to speke in breue language
[Ho]ugh þe Romanes axe of hym truage 2940
¶ [Cust]omd of olde sith go many a day
[Wha]n þat Cesar conquerd fyrst Breteynn
[The ky]ng requiryng to make þem no delay
[Arthurgh] abode liste no þing to seynn
[But all] þe courte liste at þem disdeigne
[The proude] Barons of cruel hasty bloode

[Wolde hem ha]ue slayn even þer þei stode
¶[Nay *quod* Arthur to] all his officers

[110v, col. b]

Within our courte þei shall haue damage
Pei entrid ben and came as Messangers 2950
And men also gretelie fall in age
Lete make þem chere with a gladde visage
Toke his counsaile of suche as were most wyse
With þis answeze saide in curteis wyse
¶Youre *lettres* redde and pleynlie vndrestonde
Þe tenure hole rehercid in þis place
Touchyng þe charge which ye haue take on ha[nd]
To yeve an answeze rehersid in shorte space
Be worde and wrytyng ye gretelie me ~~in~~ ma[nace]
Hough ye purpose with many a strong batai[lle] 2960
Passe þe mounteyns me fellie for to assaile
¶It nedith not such conquest to allege
Agayn Breteyne of non olde truage
Of *commyng* doun þeir wey I shall abrigge
With goddes grace and shorte þeir passage
Make no delay but with my Baronage
Passe þe see withoute longe taryyng
To mete Romanes at þeir doun *commyng*
¶This was þe answer yove to þe messangers 2970
At þeir departyng bare with þem grete richesse
Þe kyng badde so vnto his officers
Agayne to Rome in haste þei cam þem dresse
Pleynlie reportyng þe plentevus largesse
Of wrthi Arthur considrid all þinges
Of cristyndome he passid all *oper* þinges
¶Arthure courte was þe sours and welle
Of marciall prowes to lucius þei tolde
And hough þat he all *oper* didde excelle
In chevalrie ~~wh~~ with whome were withold
Þe chosyn knyghtes boþ younge and olde 2980
In all Europe who can considre aright
Of all nobles þe torchis by þeir light
¶He caste hym not to pay no truage
Sayd of þe Romanes he helde no londe
Which for to defende he wyl make his passage
Of þeir claymes to breke atwo þe bonde
And knyghtlie preve with his his honde
Þee haue no title þei nor þeir cite
Agayn þe Brutus which *euer* haue stond free
¶With all þe kyngdoms subiecte to Rome toun 2990
Kynges princes aboue þe high mounteyns
With lucius þei be descendid daun

To mete Bretans vpon þe large pleynys
 Arthurs commyng gretelie t̅o̅ ^he^ disdeignys
 Because he hadde pleynly to descryve
 In multitude of peple suche fyve
 ¶ At Souþhamptoun Arthurgh toke þe se
 With all his knyghtes of þe round table
 Behynd he left to govern þe cuntre
 His Cosyn Modred vntrusty and vnstable 3000
 And at a prefe fals and deceyveable
 To whom Arthur of truste tok all þe lande
 The croun excepte which he kepte in his hande
 ¶ ffro Souþhampton Arthur gan to saile
 With all þe worþi lordes of Breteine
 At Barbeflu founde goode aryvaile
 He and his princes þier passage did ordeine
 Thurgh Normandie ffraunce and eke Burgoyne
 Vp to þe cite callid Augustence
 Where he fyrst founde of lucius þe presence 3010
 ¶ So large a felde nor such a multitude
 Of men of armys assemblid on a playn
 Vpon a day shortlie to conclude
 Togyddre assemblid before was neuer seyn
 Lucius hadde on his parte certein
 Estward þe worlde and all þe chevalrie
 Broute by þe mounteins doun toward Germani
 ¶ Peir wardes set in ich a grete bataile
 With þeir Captens to governe þem and guy
 Arthur ^þe^ of Bretans þe Romanes did assaile 3020
 ffound many Saz Sarsens vpon þat partie
 Þe Breten Gufride doþ pleynlie specifie

[111r, col. a]

As he of Arthur þe prowes descryve
 He slough þat day of Saracene . v̅ kyngis fyve
 ¶ The grete slaughter þe grete effusion of bloode
 Þat was þat day vpon eþer side
 [I]che agayn oþer so furius was and woode
 [L]ike for þe felde as fortune list provide
 Þat yf I shuld þer on longe tyme abide 3030
 [T]o write þe dep̅ þe slaughter and þe manere
 [T]ouchyng þe felde were tedious for to here
 ¶ But to conclude and leve þe sup̅pl̅usage surplusage
 [In] þat bataile dede was many a knyght
 [Th]e Cansul lucius slayn in þat rage
 Þe proude Romanes by force put to flight
 Of gentilnes Arthur anon right
 Lete þe bodie of lucius be caried
 Agayn to Rome it was no lengar taried

¶ The worþi princes and lordis þat were dede
 And manlie knyghtes abydyng with Arthur 3040
 Like a kyng solempnelie toke hede
 Þat þei were buried by diligent labour
 In þis while like a fals traytoure
 His Cosyn Modred did his bysy peynn
 To take from him þe kyngdam of Breteyn
 ¶ So as þe story pleyndly makith mynde
 Modred falslie to his avauntage
 Intretid þem þat were left behynde
 Vndre coloure of fraudulent language
 Gaued hym grete fredam *and gaued* ^didde^ hym grete homage 3050
 Þat þus by his fals conspiracion
 Broute all Breten in grete rebellion
 ¶ By fayre behestes and many frendlie signe
 Drough þe peple to hym in many sundrie wyse 3054
 Gaued þem libertes and grauntid þeir fraunchise 3056
 To make Britens þeir souereigne lorde despise
 And puruaunce he gan make blyue
 To kepe þe portes he shuld not aryue
 ¶ Whan kyng Arthur hadde knowlegyng 3060
 Of þis fals treson and all þe puruaunce
 Þat Modred made he like a manlie kyng
 Left Burgoigne and all þe lond of ffraunce
 Caste on Modred for to do vengeaunce
 Toke þe see with grete apparaile
 Caste at Sandewich to make his aryuaile
 ¶ Modred was redy with knyghtes a grete noumbre
 Made a stronge felde to mete hym on þe playn
 In purpose fully Arthur to incombren 3070
 At which aryuaile slayn was Gawayn
 Cosyn to Arthur a noble knyght certayn
 Eke Angaisel was slayn on þe stronde
 Kyng of Scottes or he com to londe
 ¶ Mauge Modred Arthur did aryue
 Þe grounde recurid like a manlie knyght
 ffor fere of whome anon after he blyue
 Þe saide Modred to hym to þe flight
 Toward london toke his wey right
 The gate shet and kepte was þe cite
 Agayn Modred he myght haue non entrie 3080
 ¶ In all haste to ~~Com~~ Cornewell he fledde fledde
 The swerde of Arthur he ~~durst~~ durst not abide
 Lest he shuld ~~lyue~~ leue his lyfe to wedde
 Yit for hymselfe þus he gan provide
 With multitude gadrid vpon his syde
 Put lyfe and deþ þat day in aventure
 Þat day to die or þe felde recure

¶ In fortune þer may be no certein
Vpon whos whele all britilnesse is founde
Modred þat day in þe felde was slayn
And noble Arthur to þe deþ was woundid
Be which þe felde of Bretons were *confoundid*
Of so grete slaughter and goode knyghtes lorn
Vpon a day men haue not seyn befor

[111r, col. b]

¶ Aftyr þe Bataile Arthur for a while
To staunch his hurtis and woundes to recure
Born in a litere cam into an Ile
Callid Aualon and þer of aventure
As sayd Gaufrid recordid by scripture
Hough kyng Arthur floure of Chevalrie
Ryght with hys knyghtes and lyvith in fantasie

¶ Pus of Britanne translatid was þe sune
Vp to þe rich sterry ~~dongeon~~ bright dongeon
Astronomiers well reherce kunne
Callid Arthuris constellacion
Wher he sit crownyd in þe heuynlie mansion
In myddes of þe þæt pales of stonys cristalline
Tolde among cristen peple fyrst of þe wrþi nyne

¶ Pis erreure yit abidith among br[e]tens
Which foundid is vpon þe *prophecie*
Of olde ~~me~~ Merlyne like þeir opinions
He as a kyng is crownyd in fayre
With sceptre and sworde and with his regallie
Shall resorte as lorde and souereigne
Oute of phaire and reigne in Breteine

¶ And repaire agayn þe rounde table
By *propheci* of Marlyn set þe date
Among princes kyng incomparable
His seete agayn to Carlion to translate
Pe parchas sistren span so his fate
His epitaphie recordith so certeyne
Here liggith kyng Arthur which shal reigne agayn

¶ Vnto Bochas I well agayn returne
Affore rehersed parcell of his prowis
Peron to abide . me liste no more soiorne
But to remembre þe grete vnkyndnesse
Pe conspiracion þe treson and þe falsnesse
Don to kyng Arthur by his Cosyn Modred
Make a lenvoy þat all men may it rede

[120v, col. a]

^De casu philippi la bele Regis ffrance^

¶Whan Bochas hadde writen of pacience
 And commendid þe vertu of suffraunce
 Philip la bele cam to his presence
 ffyrst of þat name crownyd kyng of ffrance
 Gan to compleyne his vnhappy chaunce
 And of fortune of custum þat can varie
 Which was to hym cruel aduersarie 2440
 ¶Woundid he was with a grevus sore
 Gan his compleynt to Bochas determine
 Hough he was slayn of a wylde bore
 In a foreste which callid is compigne
 Tolde hough he was disclaundrid all his lyve
 Ones in fflaundris wyth many a worþi knyght

[fol. 122r, col. a — N.B. fols. 122 and 121 are out of order in the MS]

Venquissid of fflemynges and fellie put to flight
 [¶]Procedyng ferþer gan touche of his linage
 [Ho]ugh in his tyme he hadde sonnes .iiij.
 [Le]wys . Philip . and Charlez yong of age 2450
 [The] iiijth Robert . a daughter also on hadde he
 [Ca]llid Isabell right excellent
 [Pe] sayd Robert þe storie is well coupe
 [W]hich þat died in his tendre youþe
 [¶]To þis storie who liste haue goode rewarde
 [The] circumstaunce wyslie to discern 2456
 [Car]narvan þe booke so doþ vs lerne 2458
 Pis yonger Philip weddyd in naverne
 Pe kynges daughter a statelie marriage 2460
 Callid Iane while she was tendre of age
 ¶Pe same Philip after crownyd king
 Of Narverne . his fadre of assent
 V. sonnes he hadde in his lyvyng
 Of which .v. as in ~~sentene~~ centement
 Iij. in noumbre be right pertinent
 To þe matier who so liste to looke
 And þe processe of þis same booke
 ¶Pe eldest son called was lowys 2470
 To whom his fadre gafe possession
 Of Naverne because þat he was wyse
 ffor to governe þat noble region
 Philip his broþer for his ^high^ renoun
 Was afterward by iuste inheretaunce
 And rightful title crownyd was king ^of^ ffrance
 ¶Pe þrid broþer was by title of right
 Made erle of Marche and namyd Charlez
 Eueryche of þem in þe peples sight
 Were famus holde and passing of grete prise
 And for þei were right manlie and rightwyse 2480

Philip and Charlez toke in tendre age
þe Erls daughter of Birgoigne in mariage
¶But as þe storie remembrith in certeine
To þeir nobles fortune hadde envie
And by a maner of malice and disdeigne
Brought in by process vpon þe partie
Of þeir two wyves froward avoutrie
Causyng þe deþ of all þoo princes iij.
Whan þei most flourid in þeir felicite.

¶After þeir iij. princis glorius 2490
Befor Bochas to shew his intent
A myghti duke notable and right famus
Cam to compleyn Charlez of Tarent
Which in his tyme into fflorence went
To make pees in his roiall estate
Between Guerfe and Gemelius stondyng in debate

¶Pis said Charlez born of þe bloode of fraunce
A manlie knight þe story doþ devise
By whos vnhappie froward fatall chaunce
In þe werres betwene fflorence and pyse 2500
On horsbak sittyng on knyghtlie wyse
Hurt wiþ an arowe fell low to þe grounde
Wherby he caught his laste fatall wounde

¶A man of armes beyng a soudeioure
Wyth þe pisanes wheþer it wer wrong ^or^ right
Of fals disdeigne þat day did his laboure
To trede on Charlez in þe peples sight
When he lay gruffe wherefore he was ^made^ kyng
By þeir Capten for a maner pride
Which governd þe Erbelynys side 2510

^**quomodo daunte poeta apparuit Bocacio** .^

And in his studie wiþ ful heuy chere
While Iohn Bochas abode still in his sete
To hym apperid and approche nere
Daunte of fflorence þe laureat poete
Wiþ his dites and Retorikes swete
Demure of loke fulfillid wiþ pacience

[122r, col. b]

With a visage notable of reuerence
¶Whan Bochas sawe hym vpon his fete he stode
And to mete hym he toke his pase ful right
Wiþ grete reuerence availid cappe and hoode 2520

And to hym saide wiþ humble chere and sight
O clerest sonne o verrey soþfaste light
Of oure cite which callid is florence
Laude vnto þe honour and reuerence

¶Pu haste illumynd Itaile and lumbardie

Wiþ laureat dities in þi flouryng dayes
Grounde and begynner of prudent policie
Among fflorentynes suffridest grete affrayes
As golde purid and previd at all assayes
In trouþ madiste mekelie þiselfe stronge 2530
ffor comyn *profit* to suffre peynn and wronge

¶ O noble poete touchyng þis matiere
Hough fflorentynes were to þe vnkynde
I wyll remembre and write wiþ goode chere
Þi pitevus exile and put here in mynde
Nay *quod* Daunte but here stand oon behynde
Duke of Athens turne toward hym þi stile
His vncouþe storie brefelie to compile

¶ And yf þu liste to do me þis plesaunce 2540
To descryve his knyghtlie excellence
I wyll þu put his lyfe in remembrance
Hough he oppressid by myghty violence
Þis famus cite callid fflorence
Be which storie ful pleynlie þu shalt se
Which were frendes and fone to þe cite

¶ And which were able for to be excusid
Yf þe trouþe be clerlie *perceyvid*
And which were worþi for to be rehersid
Be whom þe cite full falslie was deceyvid
Of *circumstances* notablie conceyvid 2550
To rekyn in ordre vpon euery side
Which shuld be chasid and which shuld abide

[Fall of Duke Gaultier of Florence]

¶ And whan Bochas knew all þe intencion
Of þe saide Daunte he caste hym anon right
To obey his maistre as it was reson
Toke his penne and as he caste his sight
A litle asyde he sawe no *maner* wyght
Save duke Galtere ~~brefelie to procede~~ of all þat longe day
ffor Daunte vnwarlie vanysshid was his way 2560

¶ Þis saide Galtere brefelie to procede
Like as it is put in remembraunce
Touchyng his lyne and his roial kynred
He was descendid of þe brode of ffraunce
By longe processe and knyghtlie purviaunce
His fadre fyrste by diligent laboure
Of Athenes was lorde and *governoure*

¶ Stode but a while in clere possession
Grekes to hym hadde ful grete envie
Caste of assent for to put hym down
And depryve hym of his famus duche 2570
To þer intent a leyser did espie
Toke hym at myschefe *and* quakyng in his [drede]
Of high despite in haste smot of his hed[e]

¶ Vpon whos deþ avengyd for to be
 Þe sayd Gaultere wiþ myghty apparail[e]
 Caste he wolde asege þat cite
 But of his purpose longe he did fayl[e]
 And in þis while with many stran[ge bataile]
 ij · myghty princes cam down of pys[e]
 Leyde a sege to luke in knyghtlie wy[se] 2580
 ¶ fflorentynes to luke were fauorab[le]
 And to delyuer þe sege fro þe toun
 Wiþ multitude almost innumerable
 Made ordinaunce and kny[ghtlie þei cam down]
 Which turnyd after to þeir d[estru]ccioun

[122v, col. a]

ffor it fell so of mortall aventure
 On fflorentynes fell þe discomfiture
 ¶ Þe noyse and fame of þis grete bataile
 Gan sprede ferre by reporte of language 2590
 In lumbardie and þurgh all lumbardie
 Amonge soudeieours lusty of corage
 And among oþer feynyng a pilgremage
 Þe said Gaultere by vnware violence
 Cam fro Naplis down into fflorence
 ¶ Þe fflorentynes helde fyrst a parlement
 ffor þe saluacion and garde of þe cite
 By grete prudence and grete avisment
 Of such as were highest of degre
 By oonn assent þei gave þe souereignete 2600
 Þem to governe hopyng to þeir increce
 Wiþ statutes made boþe for werre and pees
 ¶ Þe grete estates and rulers of þe townn
 Callid magnates þoo dayes in soþnesse
 To Gaulter gave þis dominacioun
 Of intent þe comyns to oppresse
 And merchauntes to spoile of þeir richesse
 Streyn men of crafte by froward violence
 Agayn þe libertes vsid in fflorence
 ¶ Þe peple allway in awayte liggyng 2610
 To be restorid vnto þeir liberte
 Gan gruge sore among þemselfe pleynyng
 ffor grete extorcions donn to þeir cite
 Þe grete also of moste auctorite
 Hadde lever to suffre Gaultere reigne
 Þan þeir exaccions to modifie or restreyne
 ¶ Þis saide Gaulter in ful subtile wyse
 By a fals maner of simulacion
 Envie in hert vnto þeir ffraunchise
 All þat he wrought for shorte conclusion

Was don oonlie to þeir destruccion 2620
 Wiþ a pretence feynyd of frendliede
 To his *promisse* ay contrarie was þe dede
 ¶ Clambe vp by *processe* to full hie estate
 By feynyd speche and subtil flaterie
 In his hert wex pompus and elate
 His wyrkyng outwarde no man couþ espie
 Litle or litle drough to his partie
 Pat to conclude shortelie for to sey
 All fflorence hys *lustes* did obey
 ¶ Gan subtilie þe ~~comyns~~ for to plesse þe comynte 2630
 ffor to accomplissh falslie his desyris
 Made *promisse* to increce þeir *libertes*
 To such as were froward of maners
 Made an oþe to destrue þeir officers
 But þei wolde of þeir fre volunte
 Graunte vnto þem larger liberte
 ¶ Gretter power and *dominacion*
 To increce his myght vpon euery syde
 Gan manace þe grettest of þe townn
 And day be day increce in his pride 2640
 ffelly began and felly did abide
 Þervpon kepte close in þeir entraile
 Þe fflorentynes gretelie gan mervaile
 ¶ In þis while was þer oon Reynere
 Of grete auctorite and of grete reuerence
 [A m]yghty *seruaunt* and a grete officere
 [To] whos byddyng obeyed all fflorence
 [Wh]ich wiþ Gaulter acordid in sentence
 [Wiþ] soudeieours hadd stuffid iche hostrie
 ffor to susten of Gauter þe partie 2650
 ¶ [And] traytourslie for to fortiefie
 [Þe i]ntent of Gaulter fell and ambicius
 To haue þe estate onlie by tirannie
 [As þeir] chefe lorde froward *and* surquedus
 To [reigne] in fflorence þe case was *perilus*
 Whan .ij. [tiran]nes ben boþ of on assent
 Wiþ [multitude to] accomplish þeir intent

[122v, col. b]

¶ Which þing considrid by þeir governours
 And magnates callid in þe Cite
 Whan þat þei founde among[e þem no] soco[urs] 2660
 To remedie þeir grete aduer[site]
 ffell to acorde of necessite
 Gave þeir assent wiþoute [variaunce]
 Pat Gaultere shuld haue all þe gov[ern]aunce
 ¶ And condescendid þei were t[o] þis [i]ssue

Pat Gaulter shuld in all his best wyse
 Vpon þe bodi be sworn of *criste ihesu* 2667
 Vsid of olde and for no covetyse 2669
 ffrom þeir *promisse* for lyfe nor deþ declý[ne] 2670
 As by conuencion liste to *determyne*
 ¶ Hervpon was blown a trumpet
 ffor to assemble þe estates of þe town
 A parlement holde Gaulter fyrst was set
 And to pronounce þe conuencion
 Wiþ euery parcell entitled by reson
 Like þeir acorde declaryng anon right
 Stode vp a vocate in þe peples sight
 ¶ Wiþ men of armes in stele armyd bright
 Vnto þeir pales chefe and principall 2680
 Þe seyde Gaulter conveid anon right
 Set in a sete most statelie and roiall
 And þe peple wiþ voice memoriall
 Gan crie lowde concludyng þis sentence
 Gaulter for euer was chefe lorde of fflorence
 ¶ So to *persever* duryng all his lyfe
 Toke in þe pales ful possessioun
 Þer durste non agayn hym make no stryfe
 Grauntid to hym þe *dominacioun*
 Of all þe Castellis aboute enviroun 2690
 Tuscane and Arech and Castell fflorentyne
 Wiþ all lordeshippes to mount appenyne ·
 ¶ As ye haue herd Gaulter þus began
 By his own furius diuinaile
 Seyd he was born to be lorde of Tuscane
 Wiþ a grete partie also of Itaile
 Tolde he was lorde conveide by a quaile
 Sayd ouermore were it right or wrong
 Þat was þe sentence of þe byrdes ~~son~~ songe
 ¶ Þe same byrde brought hym fyrste to fflorence 2700
 All þe wey afforn hym tok his flight
 Wiþ swet syngyng did hym reuerence
 High in þe eire of corage ~~and~~ gladde *and* light
 Wolde neuer parte oute of his sight
 Gave hym tokyns to sette his hert afyre
 Þat of fflorence he shulde be lorde *and* syre
 ¶ Þe same byrde he bare in his devysys
 ffull richelie enbroudid wyth perre
 Toke vpon hym many grete emprisis
 As chefe lorde of fflorence þe cite 2710
 Sat in iugement and governyd þe cuntre
 Drough to hym fflaterers *and* folke þat coup lie
 Baudes and rebaudes where he myght þem spie
 ¶ Of þat cite tok *mervelus* truages

Incrochyd to hym richesse of þe town
Of lecherie vsyd grete outragis
Of maydyns wyvys made non excepcion
Voide of mercy grace and remission
ffounde querels for to be vengeable
Pat to reherce it is abhominable · 2720
¶ Where he hatid *mercyles* he sleþ
Brake fraunchises and olde libertes
Þe peple pleynyd desyryng sore his deþe
Cried vengeaunce aboute in þeir cites
ffor tirannie don in þeir cuntres
Which was cause of grete dissencion
And of þeir citi almost subuersion

[121r col. a — *N.B.* fols. 122 and 121 are out of order in the MS]

¶ Pus þei were among þemselve diuidid
For þeir [soden] grevus oppressions
[Lak of foresight] þat þei were not provided 2730
[To see myscheuys] þat shuld falle in þe town
[This is verrey] soþe wher is diuision
[Be wytness of and record of scripture
[May no kyngdam] nor cite longe indure
¶ For which] þei gan compleyn on and all
[Boþe] þe grete and all þe comynte
[And] of accorde amonge þemselve þei fall
[To] reforme þe hurte of þeir cite
And fynalli þei condescendid be
By a *maner* fell *coniuracion* 2740
To procede to his destruccion
¶ Vpon aday þei armyd in stele bright
Magnates fyrst wyth comyns of þe townn
All wyth assent þei rose vp anon right
Gan to crie and made an hiduus sownn
Lete sle þis tiraune let vs put hym down
Leyde a sege by myghty violence
Afforn his palece wher he was in fflorence
¶ Such as were inclynyd to Gaulter
Amyddes þe pales þe storie doþ vs lerne 2750
To eschewe þe sege wyth full hevy chere
Ordeynd þemselve to fle away ful yerne
Oute of þe strength by a small posterne
Whan fflorentynes did þeir laboure
To vndremyn rounde aboute þe toure
¶ Of which þing whan Gaulter gan take hede
This message he sent vnto þe townn
Not of troupe but feynynglie for drede
Made *promisse* by fals *collusioun*
ffor to make full restitucioun 2760

Of þeir fredomys as þei liste devyse
Sent þem out Quillamyn dassyse
¶ Which to þe Cite was previd auter woo
Hadde afforne done þem grete damage
Wyth Guillamyne to þem he sent also
His sonne and eyre to stynt all þeir rage
Werse þan his fadre of wyll and of corage
Boþe at onys were hangyd anon right
Before þe pales in Gaulters sight

¶ Anoper also þat callid was herry
Which aforne hadde yeuen instruccion
Vnto Gaultere and was grete enmy
To sterne hym agayn þat noble townn
Be gynner and grownd of þeir diuision
Which beforn Gaulter his iugement to shewe
With sharpe swerdis he was all to hewe

¶ Þe execucion doon vpon þeis thre
In Tuscane borne þe rancoure did espie
Of florentynes to staunche þe cruelte
Agayn Gaulter and to his lyfe grete ese
He gladde ^{^to^} escape oute of his disese
ffledde away in full secrete wyse
Þat on restorid agayn to þeir ffraunchise

¶ Þus he loste by his insolence
All his powere and *dominacion*
Boþe of Tuscane and also of florence
And as myn auctor makyth mencion
ffro lumbardie he is descendid down
Drewe to kyng Iohn reignyng þo in ffrance
And of byrth full nygh alliaunce

¶ As I fynde he was of þat partie
Wyth kyng Iohn þis Gaulter lyk a knyght
Whan þat þe kyng with all his chevalrie
Was take hymselfe his lordes put to flight
Into Englund ledde *after* anon right
Þe said Gaultere ledde hym forþe anon
To his worship fledde like a cowarde

[fol. 121r, col. b]

¶ Mette in his flight wip diuerse soudieours
Of lumbardie abydyng with kyng Iohn
Which þat tyme as *Brigantes* and pillours
Toke þis Gaulter and ledde hym forþe anon
His force his corage his hert was agon
Of aventure a certen fflorentyne
Smote of his hede þis was his fatall fine

[^] **De casu philipi [Cathenoise]**[^]
BEsprent wip teris and a wofull noyse

Beforn Bochas quakyng in sorow *and* drede
 Nexte in ordre cam philip Cathenoise
 Pore of degre borne of lowe kynrede
 Which rose after to grete estate indede
 Began with grete sorowe a compleint ful mortall 2810
 Ceriuslie to telle þe woful fall
 ¶ Touchyng hir byrth derk was hir linage
 Of pore bedde . born on anoþer syde
 Bochas was loþ to spende grete language
 On hir historie longe þeron to abyde
 Purposyng hym noþing for to hyde
 Of þe substance to tell all þe grete
 And superfluite of þe remanent lete
 ¶ Which was rehersed to hym in his youþe
 Whan he was toward Robert of Cicile 2820
 Kyng of Ierusalem þe storie is not coupe
 Yit in his boke he liste it to compile
 And it reherse by full souereigne stile
 Like in þat courte as it was hym tolde
 By on Bulgare cladde in a slaven olde
 ¶ Þe saide Bulgar was a marynere
 Wyth whome also was a Calabrian
 Callid Constantine which ful many a yere
 Trauaild hadde and sundrie þinges seen
 In diuerse contres þer he hadde bene 2830
 Among oþer þinges seyn in þeir dayes olde
 Þis was a storie which þat Bulgar tolde
 ¶ Duke of Calabyr Robert be his name
 By his fadre Charles þe myghty kyng
 Hadde in commaundment þe storie seyth þe same
 Agayn ffrederik to make a stronge ridyng
 Which by force prouddie vsurpyng
 Toke vpon hym to be lorde of þat Ile
 Which callid was þe kyngdam of Cicile
 ¶ Dirpanne in soþe callid was þe toun 2840
 Where duke Robert his paulions pight
 Redy armyd þurgh his high renoun
 Agayn ffrederik for þe londe to fyght
 And wipstonde hym pleynlie yf he myght
 And so befall þe morow before prime
 Þe dukys wyfe of chyldyng abode hir tyme
 ¶ Violant men did þat ladie call
 In his hir tyme a famus grete duchesse
 Destitute of oþer women all
 Whan hir chylde was born in þat distresse 2850
 To gyfe it souke þe storie doþ expresse
 Saue for myschefe philipot was brought nere
 Of Cathenoise þe dukis chefe lauender

¶ By a fyssher which was hir husbonde
 A chylde she hadde lyvyng by þeir trauaile
 Which from þe se vnto þe courte by londe
 Day be day caryyd vitaile
 And in þis case because it myght auaile
 Philipot was brought in þis grete streyt[n]es] 2860
 To be norice vnto þe duchess

¶ Wher she was cherisshed after hir desy[re]s]
 Iche þing redy whan þat euer she sent 2862
 Into Naples I fynde þat she went 2864
 Tyll Antropea froward of intent 2865
~~With þe duchesse among oþer chaumb[er]ers]~~ 2863
 Made of þis chylde þer is no more to [sey] 2866
 Þe lyvys threde for to breke [in tweyne]

¶ Wiþ kyng charlez of whom I sp[ak to]forn]
 As myn auctor reme[mbr]ith in his book]

[121v col. a]

Was oon renounyd of Chaumpein borne 2870
 Which wiþ þe kyng was callid maistre coke
 And on a day his iourney he toke
 Toward þe see a pirate as I fynde
 Solde hym a chylde which was born in Inde

¶ Like Ethiopiens was his coloure
 ffor whome þis coke Raymond haþ devisid
 By his notable diligent laboure
 Made hym cristen and so he was baptisid
 Gave hym þe name and hath also practisid
 Hym to promote þat he vpon hym toke 2880
 By his doctrine to be maistre coke

¶ For he sone after toke þe ordre of knyght
 Þe Ethiopien wex a goode officere
 Gate such grace in þe kynges sight
 To be aboute hym more nere
 By processe he was made wardraper
 And þof he was blak of his visage
 To Cathenoyse was ioynynd in mariage

¶ Wex malapert and of presumpcion
 To be made knyght þe knyght he gan require 2890
 Which of fredom and grete affeccion
 Is condescendid to graunte his prayere
 But to declare playnlie þe manere
 In þis tyme violant þe duchesse
 Afforn remembred died of seknesse

¶ After whos dep þe boke doþ specifie
 Hough duke Robert of Naplis þe cite
 Weddyd a lady þat callid was Sansy
 To whom philipot as fell in hir degre

With diligence and grete humilite 2900
 To plesse hir hadde so ~~his~~ ^{^hir^} devere
Pat of hir counsel þer was non so nere
 ¶Euer redy at hir *commaundment*
 Wrought atiris plesaunt of delite
 Wiþ holsum watyrs þat were redolent
 To make hir skynne bi wasshyn swet *and wyte*
 Made confeccions to serue hir appetite
 By hir husband þe storie who liste se
 Þe same pilipot hadde children thre
 ¶She was cunnyng and of hir porte prudent 2910
 Chosyn by fauoure for to be maistresse
 Þe fayre Iane yong and innocent
 Which doughter was to þe grete duchesse
 Of Calabre and ferþer ^{^more^} to expresse
 Hir husbond þe Ethiopien wiþall
 Of Charlez howsolde was made senescall
 ¶O lorde *quod* Bochas speke of high disdeigne
 What meuyth þis fortune for to make chere
 Wiþ hir fauoure to reyse vp a foren
 Vpon hir whele wiþ bright feddyrs clere 2920
 But of custum it is ay hir maner
 ffayrest to appere with chere and countenaunce
 Whan she wyl brynge a man into myschaunce
 ¶For he þat was a boy þe laste day
 An Ethiopien borne and horrible of sight
 And afforntyme in þe kechyn lay
 Amonge pottes with a bawdy cote anyght
 Now of new haue take þe ordre of knyght
 With kyng Charlez now is he Senescall
 Such soden clymyng axith a sodon fall 2930
 ¶He and philipot his wyfe fro pouerte
 Ben inhaunsid and reysid to grete richesse
 [T]weyn of his sonnes statelie maried be
 [And] for fauour more þan worþinesse
 [Took] þe ordre of knyght in his most highnesse
 [Their fader] died whos feste funerall
 [Was] solempnized and holde full roiall
 [¶]Thus c]an fortune chaunge as þe mone
 [Her] faee bright face derkyd *with* a skye
 [His eldest] son died after sone 2940
 [The secounde left] vp his clergie
 [To be maad kni]ght gan hymselfe applie

[fol. 121v, col. b]

Stode of his fadre pleynlie [as I rede]
 In his office be fauoure to [succeede]
 ¶Þus by *processe* fœe fro philipot [anon riht]

Dep of hir husbond and hir [sonnes tweyne]
 ffortune in partie eclipsid hap [the light]
 Of hir welfare *and* gan at hir [disdeigne]
 Yit euen like as whan þat it [doth reigne]
 Phebus after sheweth more clernesse 2950
 So she fro trouble rose t[o] more noblesse
 ¶ I mene as þus rehersyng no *vertu*
 In hir *persone* þat men couþ espie
 But onlie þis be title of þis issu
 Whan Charlez doughter Iane on þat parti
 Was to þe kyng weddyd of hungrie
 Callid Andre a man of grete corage
 His saide wyfe but right tendre of age
 ¶ Þe same Iane not all wiþoute vice 2960
 As is rehersid sumwhat by myn auctour
 To philipot was whilom Norice
 As ye haue herde and by ful grete laboure
 Of þe saide Iane Robert made *gouvernoure*
 Son of philipot for a grete rewarde
 Made of Cicile and of þat londe stywarde
 ¶ Þis fauoure doon to philipot Cathenoise
 Causid in þat londe grete indignacion
 Whos doughteris weddyng causid eke grete noyse
 Married to Charlez þe grete Erle of Marchon
 Which gafe to folke grete occasion 2970
 To deme amysse aboute in iche cuntre
 Pat all þe lande was governd by þo thre
 ¶ By quene Iane and Philipot Cathenoise
 And þe saide Robert Stywarde of Cicile
 Son to philipot þis was þe comyn voice
 Þe quene and Robert by þeir subtile wyle
 Hadde of assent vsid longe while
 Þe hatefull synne of avoutrie
 Rose in Cicile and went up to hungrie
 ¶ For quene Iane began no *maner* þing 2980
 But Cathenoise assentid was þerto
 Þe execucion and fullie þe wyrkyng
 Brouht to conclusion by Robert all was do
 And in þis title rose a stryfe also
 A disclaunders and froward discorde
 Betwene þe quene and hym þat w[a]s hir lorde
 ¶ Harde to procede vpon suspicion
 Sclaundre is swyft lightlie take his flight
 ffor which men shuld esche[w]s þe occasion
 Of fame of noyse and euery *maner* wyght 2990
 By *providence* remembre in his foresight
 Whan þe reporte is þurgh þe londe ronne
 Harde is to stynte it whan it is begonne

¶ Wipstond principles occasions to declyne
 Liste vnwarlie þer folow grete damage
 To late commeth salue and medicine
 To festridd sorys whan þei be incurable
 And in case verrey resemblable
 To [e]schewe sclandre liste not for to spare
 May not faile to falle in þe snare 3000

¶ Pus for a tyme þe sclandre was kepte close
 Al be it so it didde a while abyde
 Anoper myschefe ful pitevuslie arose
 Which afterwarde spredde abrode ful wyde
 Avoutrie to mordre is a gyde
 Set at a prefe myn auctor doþ recorde
 Þe kynge Andre was stranglid *with* a corde

¶ Oute of his chambre reysid a grete hight
 By a coniectid fals conspiracion
 He was entretid brought doun by a sleih ^sleight^ 3010
 And after stranglid as made is mencion
 Whos deþ to punish by *commission*
 Hugh Erle of Auelyn be a patent large
 To be Iuge toke on hym þe charge

¶ Of þis mordre rose up a grete noyse
[end of manuscript – 2 or 3 leaves missing (613 lines)]

TEXTUAL NOTES (by book and line number, collated with Bergen)

Book I

- 176 Annotation at left margin (two dots with flourish on top); this mark is similar to those used elsewhere to indicate misordered lines, though nothing is out of order here
- 190-211 Right margin has several (early modern?) washed notes or pen trials, now illegible
- 247-248 Marginal note at left (partially lost due to trimming): [*?Not*]at I. *Lydgate famosos librorum*
- 255 For *of Retorik þe chefe welle*, Bergen prints *the cheeff welle off eloquence*
- 260-261 Marginal note at left (partially lost due to trimming): [*Fra*]ncisco petrarcha
- 274-275 Marginal note at left (partially lost due to trimming): [*Cha*]uncer
- 283 Marginal note at left (partially lost due to trimming): [*?De libr*]is Chauncer
- 295 For *this booke*, Bergen prints *thastlabre*
- 303 For *In englissh*, Bergen prints *Dante in Inglissh*
- 330-337 Line 331 is out of place, following line 336 (per Bergen); a bracket in the inner margin (red ink over brown, so seemingly scribal), indicates the proper position of the line
- 362 Faint letters (illegible) above this line, in top margin; perhaps dry-point or very faded brown-ink pen trail or letter practice

- 428-435 Annotation in right margin (partially lost due to trimming): *Hic habuit iste ... Lidgate in mandatis a ... ad transferendum librum ... linguam Anglicanam*
- 469-470 Annotation in right margin (partially lost due to trimming), apparently a guide for the rubric: *Explicit prologus · Incipit ... Tragedia de Ad[am] ...*
- 470 Line begins with large blue initial *W* (three lines in height)
- 530 Line was originally omitted but is copied in the left margin (by scribe) near line 528; a signes-de-renvoi marks the correct insertion point
- 562-567 Line 563 is out of place here; annotations in the inner margin indicate the error: a small signum (three dots with flourish at bottom) marks line 563 (at its current location, after 566) and the place where it should be (between 562 and 564)
- 563 For *no name*, Bergen prints *the name*
- 673 Light brown (scribal) slash mark indicates separation of *were* and *pei*, which are otherwise written continuously
- 782-791 Light brown-ink line in left margin (faded) highlights these lines
- 820-826 Line 821 is out of place, set after 825 (per Bergen); a bracket in the inner margin (red ink over brown, so seemingly scribal) indicates the proper position of the line
- 823 For *erthlie*, Begen prints *hertili*
- 833-834 Faint brown-ink bracket in the right margin (faded with mold damage) connects these lines
- 905-909 Line 906 is out of place, set after 908 (per Bergen); a bracket in the outer margin (red ink over brown, so seemingly scribal) indicates the proper position of the line
- 982 Otiose stroke above the *u* in *sycurnes*, similar to standard *-er* abbreviation
- 1001-1002 Cropped note in outer margin: *[Tra]gedia 2^a de Nembroth*, perhaps a guide for the rubric
- 1002 Line begins with large blue initial *M* (three lines in height)
- 1133 Strikethrough in red ink
- 1043 Lines 1044-1071 (per Bergen) not present in MS
- 1092 Lines 1093-1106 (per Bergen) not present in MS
- 1152-1154 Line 1153 (per Bergen) not present in MS, resulting in short stanza
- 1165 Slash between *selfe* and *moste* is scribal
- 1475 The name *Vixoses* is repeated in brown ink in outer margin
- 1484 In Bergen this line reads: *That the glory and the hih renoun*, and the next stanza (at line 1485) begins with *Ascryued were onto hys worthynesse*
- 1488-89 These lines in Bergen read: *Turne sholde to comoun auantage / Off al his peeple that euery maner age*
- 1492 The name *Thanaus* repeated in brown ink in outer margin
- 1506 The name *Zorastes* repeated in brown ink in outer margin
- 1510 Strikethrough in red ink
- 1515 The name *Ninus* repeated in brown ink in outer margin
- 1534 Strikethrough in red ink; *gan myghtyli p(re)uaile* written again in outer margin
- 1576 Strikethrough in red; *Pharao* written in brown ink in outer margin
- 1636 Bergen supplies *Semalioun*, but the name of kingdom is not present in this MS
- 1705 Bergen prints *Mercury* instead of *Thourye*
- 1754 First strikethrough in red ink; corrected word *indigence* repeated in brown ink in outer margin
- 1754-1756 Line 1755 (per Bergen) is not present in MS, resulting in short stanza

- 1808-1809 Nota bene mark and French notation *Lenvoie p(our) le femme* in outer margin, in hand different from main scribe's
- 1845 The name *Iubiter* appears in the outer left margin
- 1888-1930 Many lines are altered, repeated, or out of order here, such that the sense of the text and prosody is affected; consecutive labelling of line numbers through this section clarifies positions in MS as compared to Bergen
- 1893-1894 Lines 1893 and 1894 are reversed; a brown-ink bracket in the inner margin indicates the error
- 1893 For *humble of his toke* Bergen prints *Humble off his cheere took*
- 1902-1905 Line 1902 is out of place; a bracket in the inner margin (a red-ink line over a brown-ink line) indicates its proper position
- 1907-1918 These lines not present in MS, though part of line 1914 (*And in the temple of Delphos stille a-bod*, per Bergen) seems to be maintained
- 1923 The word *bulle* is written in the outer right margin, apparently in the hand of the main scribe
- 2011 For *hoole the regallie* Bergen prints *the regalie*
- 2018 For *his place* Bergen prints *hir paleis*
- 2045-2107 Lines 2045-2072 (4 stanzas) and lines 2073-2107 (5 stanzas) are reversed, so that the story of Athamas who thought his wife was a lion comes before the stanzas lamenting Cadmus' ill fortune
- 2073 For *Cadmus sorowes* Bergen prints *his sorwes*
- 2086 The word *lones* should be *leones* or *liones*
- 2090 For *hent* Bergen prints *rente*
- 2122-2149 Lines 2143-2149 (1 stanza) and 2122-2142 (3 stanzas) are reversed
- 2126 For *inguraunce* (sic), Bergen prints *enqueraunce*
- 2201 For *sought* Bergen prints *slouh*
- 2214 The word *solued* appears to be an error for *folued* (compare Bergen's *folwid*)
- 2249 The word *humeus* should be *humurs* or *humours* (per Bergen)
- 2261 For *alleuate* (from *elevaten*?) Bergen prints *alterat*
- 2339-2352 This stanza collapses two stanzas (per Bergen), so that rhyme scheme and sense are affected; lines 2340-2345 and line 2350 are omitted in MS
- 2347 Pen trials in MS just under this line (bottom right margin of fol. 9v)
- 2349 *Lut* is an error for *Cut* (per Bergen); for *were ware or se* Bergen prints only *wer war* (i.e., *or se* is an addition) – three dots (·) next to this line seem to indicate awareness of the errors
- 2363 For *fame* Bergen prints *shame*
- 2377-2387 Washed washed notes or pen trials (early modern) at outer margin here, now illegible
- 2381 For *fere* Bergen prints *dreed*
- 2388/2395 Scribe combines lines 2388 and 2395 (*Touchyng the eende off ther furious discord* and *Sauff whan she hadde fulfillid hir purpos*, per Bergen) and omits lines 2389-2394
- 2397 For *Reuokyd* Bergen prints *Resorted*
- 2398 For *His* Bergen prints *Hir*
- 2402 For *This* Bergen prints *Thus*
- 2405 Ink blot over capital *S* in *Sithen*, perhaps a correction
- 2409 Large blue capital *T* (three lines tall) at start of line
- 2411 For *Bochas* Bergen prints *Ouide*

- 2430 For *ligge* Bergen prints *liuen*
 2448 For *fest* Bergen prints *felt*
 2491 For *in parti* Bergen prints *in iupartie*
 2528 Two slash marks in the outer margin here, similar to those that often act as guides for rubricated paraph marks
 2533 For *and glorie* Bergen prints *off glory*
 2537 For *priuelie* Bergen prints *secrelie*
 2540 For *hym* Bergen prints *it*
 2559 For *ffor to gete me* Bergen prints *Forgete my*
 2585 The word *me* omitted in Bergen
 2589 The word *I* omitted in Bergen
 2590 For *yeue me youre* Bergen prints *youe to you myn*
 2591 For *ought not* Bergen prints *auhthe inouh*
 2596 For *so sore* Bergen prints *to sore*
 2601 For *astodied* Bergen prints *astonyd*
 2606 Bergen prints *look* (as the word should be), but there is an extra *o* in MS
 2627 Scribe likely missed the second *r* in *contraius*; Bergen prints *contrarious*
 2615-2616 Bergen's lines are different here: *For euery-wher, wher ye do returne, / And eueri place wher-as ye soiourne*
 2620 For *actez ben* Bergen prints *accus is*
 2623 For *vengeable* Bergen prints *disnaturel*
 2630-2631 For *þe* (before both *dominacion* and *regallie*) Bergen prints *ther*
 2667 For *outhlie* (here and elsewhere in this section) Bergen prints *ouglie*
 2677 For *poetis* Bergen prints *the poete*
 2692 For *þerin in partie* Bergen prints *ther in iupartie*
 2693 Strikethrough correction in red ink
 2705 For *liknes* Bergen prints *liklynesse*
 2709 For *truste in them ar sonyst* Bergen prints *assure hem rathest been*
 2723 Paraph mark is misplaced here (should be at line 2724)
 2724 For *rigure* Bergen prints *rigerous*
 2725 For *sorow* Bergen prints *sort*
 2726 For *to oon* Bergen prints *on*
 2729 For *soioured* (clearly an error) Bergen prints *socoured*
 2734 For *Somtyme* Bergen prints *Whilom*
 2737 Strikethrough correction in red ink
 2739 For *euerychon oute of thrall* Bergen prints *in especiall*
 2760 Double *and* is a scribal error
 2772 For *ix sterres* Bergen prints *the sterris*
 2780 For *yow* Bergen prints *now*
 2794 The word *eke* omitted in Bergen
 2796 For *he loste* Bergen has *he so loste*; the word *doughtris* in this line is written *dris*, apparently missing an abbreviation mark (?)
 2801 For *charite* Bergen prints *cheer*
 2804 For *þe booke* Bergen prints *my book*
 2812 For *intent ful onclene* Bergen prints *entent Phedra ful oncleene*
 2821-2843 Stanzas are out of order here: Bergen's lines 2829-2842 follow line 2821 in MS
 2833 For *oonlie in his rage* Bergen prints *in his furious rage*

- 2836-2837 Red paraph mark and Latin notation (partially lost due to trimming) in outer margin: *Nota de mulieribus inuenientibus / falsas fabulas ad decipiendum mar[es]*
- 2826 The word *cam* is an error for *can*
- 2863 For *in fere* Bergen prints *Ifeere*
- 2869 For *weddid* (which does not make sense here) Bergen prints *was ded*
- 2782 For *here* Bergen prints *herte*
- 2884 For *language* Bergen prints *doomys*
- 2885 Blue capital A (three lines in height) begins line
- 2889 For *mansse* Bergen prints *manace*
- 2896 For *drie* Bergen prints *drad*
- 2899 For *for the werres* Bergen prints *with hookes made lyk sithes*
- 2903 Missing line written in the outer margin (partially lost due to trimming); a line (red-ink over brown ink) connects it to its correct position in the stanza
- 2929-2941 Lines are out of order in one stanza (2929-2933) and one stanza is omitted (2934-2940, per Bergen)
- 2963 For *And wyselie* Bergen prints *Auysili*
- 2986 For *his* Bergen prints *hir*
- 2989 For *longe to suffre* Bergen prints *suffre hem longe to*
- 2998 *Thurgh* should be *Thof* or *Though*
- 3003 End of the first quire: the bottom margin contains the signature *Wyllham Fermer* and the catchwords (bottom right) *ffor fortune*
- 3013 For *hir* Bergen prints *his*
- 3017 For *euer eny wodlie* Bergen prints *on any worldli*
- 3042 For *sendith his myght* Bergen prints *yeueth liht*
- 3050 For *CCCC* (four hundred) Bergen prints *thre hundrid*; the scribe correctly writes *CCC* in instances below this (see 3061 and 3072)
- 3053 For *thyng* Bergen prints *signe*
- 3065 For *in wys* Bergen prints *in no parti*
- 3069 For *ffor to* (surely an error) Bergen prints *Force*
- 3109 For *fresshe from* Bergen prints *is fresshest in*
- 3115 For *bemys* Bergen prints *stremys down*
- 3122-3158 Lines 3123-3157 (5 stanzas: the end of the envoy for Gideon and the fall of Jabin) do not appear in the MS
- 3163-64 A brown-ink rhyming brace brackets these lines on the right margin.
- 3168 *His* is a scribal error; Bergen prints (correctly) *Hir* instead of *His*.
- 3168-82 A brown-ink line in the left margin highlights these lines.
- 3246 Bergen prints *he* instead of *it*.
- 3255 Bergen prints *brestis* instead of *pappes*.
- 3282 The word *reffris* appears to be an error for *reffus* (per Bergen); lines 3283-3291 (per Bergen) are not present in the manuscript.
- 3295-97 Lines 3295 and 3297 are reversed (per Bergen), and a red-ink bracket on the inner margin, connected to reversed lines, seems to indicate awareness of the error.
- 3361 The doubled word (*not not*) is a scribal error.
- 3366-67 Two half-lines are reversed here. Bergen prints: *There was noon helpe nor other remedie, / Bi the statut but that he must deie.*
- 3368 *forll* is deleted by red-ink strikethrough and brown-ink subpunction; the correction is in the left outer margin.

- 3376 Cropped note in outer right margin: *Spinx volucris penna pede ser[pentis] / fronte puella*
- 3384 For *go or fle*, Bergen prints *go nor fle*.
- 3387 Note in outer right margin: ¶ *Problema Serpentis*.
- 3388 For *.ij.*, Bergen prints *four*.
- 3423 For *staffe impotent*, Bergen prints *staff or potent*.
- 3426 For *crokyd*, Bergen prints *crossid*.
- 3446 Bergen prints *dispence* instead of *expence*.
- 3487 A blot of brown ink before the word *conuenience* indicates that a (now unreadable) letter was deleted.
- 3523-27 Lines 3524 and 3526 are reversed (per Bergen); and a red-ink bracket (over an earlier brown-ink one) on the inner margin, connected to reversed lines, seems to indicate awareness of the error.
- 3558 The words *in partie* should read *in iupartie* (as in Bergen).
- 3577 For *article*, Bergen prints *oracle*.
- 3612 For *tale*, Bergen prints *rumor*.
- 3638 For *Corvid*, Bergen prints *croked*.
- 3679-87 Lines 3680-3686 (per Bergen) are not present in the manuscript, but the missing stanza seems to be the result of eyeskip: the first half of line 3680 is present (*Sent vnto Thebes*), but the line is completed by the second half of 3687 (*Thebes þe myghty town*); eyeskip is on the word *Thebes*, and affects the text's sense.
- 3705 The words *had be* are an error for *had he*.
- 3711 For *promisse*, Bergen prints *promesse*.
- 3720 For *And*, Bergen prints *Nor*.
- 3724 *Sege of Thebes* refers to Lydgate's earlier authored work (ca. 1420) of the same name.
- 3739 Deletion here is with both red-ink strikethrough and brown-ink subpunction; correction is interline.
- 3752 A *nota* mark is in the outer left margin at this line.
- 3773 For *oper syde*, Bergen prints *everi side*.
- 3776 For *fame*, Bergen prints *diffame*.
- 3780 Lines 3781-3787 (per Bergen) are not present in the manuscript.
- 3796 For *ever to lyve in peyne*, Bergen prints *ever endure peyne*.
- 3828 For *by example of scripture*, Bergen prints *bexauple & bi scripture*.
- 3829 Lines 3830-3836 (per Bergen) are not present in the manuscript.
- 3844 Large blue capital *B* (three lines in height) at start of this line
- 3849 For *began* Bergen prints *be*
- 3861 For *par dieu* Bergen prints *parde*
- 3863 For *to write* Bergen prints *tendite*
- 3864 For *to indite* Bergen prints *to write*
- 3871 For *more pitevous* Bergen prints *mor froward nor pitous*
- 3878 For *resembler* Bergen prints *rassemblith*
- 3890 For *Who* Bergen prints *Whos*
- 3893 For the second instance of *a* Bergen prints *his*
- 3903 For *duplicate* Bergen prints *duplicite*
- 3904 For *who* Bergen prints *how*
- 3913 For *þat am* Bergen prints *that I am*
- 3913 For *as* Bergen prints *a*

- 3921 For *Thus* Bergen prints *This*
3931 For *departid* Bergen prints *partid*
3933 For *imbesile* Bergen prints *exile*
3938 Bergen omits *his*
3944 For *Iniurius* Bergen prints *injuries*
3945 For *eyther forgete* Bergen prints *outher part forgete*
3949 For *Wher* Bergen prints *Wheroff*
3963 For *shadowyd* Bergen prints *shroudid*
3966 For *þe pore* Bergen prints *ther peur*
3970 For *This* Bergen prints *Thus*
3973 For *þe* Bergen prints *he*
3991 For *wylde* Bergen prints *wili*
4006 Bergen omits *þus*
4011 For *þe* Bergen prints *these*
4012 For *This* Bergen prints *Thus*
4013 For *coniectyng* Bergen prints *aduertyng*
4025 For *innocencie* Bergen prints *tirannye*
4033 For *confis* Bergen prints *cruses*
4037 For *This dar I sey for* Bergen prints *Yis I dar seyten for bi*
4044 For *erroure* Bergen prints *horroure*
4046 For *Shrowyd* Bergen prints *Shrowded*
4047 For *But alas* Bergen prints *But I allas*
4048 For *no oper* Bergen prints *nouther*
4050 For *þeir blood ek did I drynk* Bergen prints *& off ther blood dede drynke*
4051 For *to* Bergen prints *in*
4052 For *I not* Bergen prints *I may nat*
4057/4058 Scribe combines two lines here, copying the a-verse of line 4057 and the b-verse of 4058; this results in a short stanza
4060 For *wher* Bergen prints *wheroff*
4072 For *coverid* Bergen prints *conveied*
4086 For *all voyde* Bergen prints *abraid*
4100 For *rote of all my mortal* Bergen prints *roote & ground off al my*
4107 Bergen omits *as*
4115/4116 Scribe combines two lines here, copying the a-verse of line 4115 and the b-verse of 4116; this results in a short stanza
4119 For *Demyng* Bergen prints *Deemyng euer*
4141-4145 Lines are out of order here and several correcting annotations appear: deletion in line 4143 is by subpunction, and the word *he* is added both in the left margin and interline with a caret; a bracket-style line in the left margin (written in red ink over brown ink) then connects line 4142 (currently at the end of the stanza) to its correct position after line 4141
4147 For *agayn* Bergen prints *how ageyn*
4147-4148 Scribe copies these lines twice (result of eyeskip with *Of his* and *By his*) and deletes the second instance, where a brown-ink curved line is visible beneath a red-ink cross out
4154 For *falslie* Bergen prints *he*
4158 For *deyne* Bergen prints *ryue*
4160 For *Vn* (which likely should be *Vnto*) Bergen prints *On me*

- 4174 For *Whiez* (which makes little sense here) Bergen prints *Which*
 4177 For *theis* Bergen prints *ther*
 4187-4189 Line 4188 does not appear in MS, resulting in short stanza
 4195-4200 Lines are out of order here; a line at the left of the stanza (red ink over brown ink) connects lines 4196-4197 to their correct position after 4195; a small tick mark next to 4196 (in brown) also visible
 4198 For *This* Bergen prints *Thus*
 4206 For *endid* Bergen prints *fyned*
 4224 Deletion by strikethrough with red ink over brown ink
 4231 For *vntrouth* Bergen prints *on trowth*; for *insure* Bergen prints *assure*
 4233 For *ouersidnes* (?) Bergen prints *cursidnesse*
 4234 For *to vnknyt* Bergen prints *so knet*
 4318 For *Hymself* Bergen prints *Hirsilff*
 4322-4223 The scribe accidentally repeats lines 4318-4319 from the previous stanza. Line 4322 is struck (presumably accidentally) as part of the deletion of the following two lines, marked with a wavy red-ink line in-text and a brown-ink "x" at the inner margin next to line 4223.
 4365 For *terrible* Bergen prints *treble*
 4381 The word *euerylchonis* an error for *euerychon*
 4402 For *it fonde* Bergen prints *it is founde*
 4403 For *þer fyrste habounde* Bergen prints *there habounde*
 4435 For *hadde* Bergen prints *ladde*
 4436 For *fleshlie* Bergen prints *falsli*
 4439 For *haue bien slayn ne had hir* Bergen prints *ha be sleyn, hadde nat hir*
 4444 For *forshorn* Bergen prints *forswore*
 4448 For *prowe* Bergen prints *throwe*
 4449 For *hir* Bergen prints *his*
 4452 For *passid* Bergen prints *parcel*
 4472 For *sorow* Bergen prints *sore*
 4537 For *his* Bergen prints *hir*
 4542 For *þeir wele* Bergen prints *her wheel*
 4558 Large blue capital A (three lines in height) at start of line; for *all þat* Bergen prints *Althouh*
 4565 For *is moste* Bergen prints *that chaung is most*
 4569 For *puissaunce* Bergen prints *hih puissaunce*
 4598 For *so* Bergen prints *do*
 4602 For *labour* Bergen prints *studie*
 4612 For *and* Bergen prints *or*
 4623 For *crokid* Bergen prints *crabbid*
 4624-4626 Annotation in right outer margin (brown ink with red-ink paraph): ¶ *Nota de lingua / bona et mala / et de adulatoribus*
 4628 For *well* Bergen prints *riht weel*
 4634 For *Afyr* Bergen prints *Lich*
 4644 In Bergen this line reads: *Shet up his doomys betwixe lokkis tweyne*
 4650 Bergen omits *And*
 4660 For *actes* Bergen prints *accus*
 4676 Bergen omits *þeir*
 4678 For *his* Bergen prints *in his*

- 4684 For *shal* Bergen prints *ye shal*
4696 Bergen omits *wel*
4699 For *Kepte* Bergen prints *Kept hym*
4700 For *no wey haue* Bergen prints *nat haue it*
4722 For *lyfe* Bergen prints *lyne*
4730 Annotation in outer right margin: *notate mulieres*
4750-4751 Brown-ink X mark appears in right margin here
4752 For *repreve* Bergen prints *preue*
4761 For *contrarie* Bergen prints *so contrarie*
4763 For *chiche* (scribal error) Bergen prints *which*
4765 For *ffor* Bergen prints *Nor*
4780 For *seruauntes* Bergen prints *sergauntis*
4782 Bergen omits *may*
4783 For *portes* Bergen prints *porteris*
4785 For *agayn* Bergen prints *ageyn hem*
4795 For *with myrth* Bergen prints *meryly*
4799 For *wylfull* Bergen prints *woful*
4802 For *moste* Bergen prints *ay most*
4806 For *ay inforsyng* Bergen prints *afforcyng ay trouthe*
4817 For *þeir* Bergen prints *hir*
4821 For *and* Bergen prints *nor*
4828 For *foule* Bergen prints *fell*
4829 For *intendaunce* Bergen prints *entendement*
4834 For *youre* Bergen prints *ther*
4845 Large blue capital W (three lines in height) at start of line
4855 For *cam* Bergen prints *gan neihhe*
4860 For *oon* Bergen prints *Oene off*
4862 For *to torne* Bergen prints *to-forn*
4884 For *Squenchild* Bergen prints *Queynt*
4885 For *þer* Bergen prints *thus*
4891 For *nede* Bergen prints *mede*
4894 For *myght in* Bergen prints *cauhte an*
4903 For *amonge* Bergen prints *a-mong hem*
4908 For *hymself* Bergen prints *hym folk*
4913 For *glad faynn* Bergen prints *ful glad & fayn*
4927 For *hir* Bergen prints *ther*
4943 For *godde* Bergen prints *God wot*
4954 For *dwere* Bergen prints *weer*
4964 For *all* Bergen prints *a-geyn al*
4866 For *outhlie* Bergen prints *ougli*
4974 For *þus* Bergen prints *these*
4981 For *þat* Bergen prints *that thei*
4984 For *nat perteineth vnto* Bergen prints *apparteneth to no*
4996 For *is* Bergen prints *which is*
4997 For *with hir cursid hande* Bergen prints *maad hire with hir hond*
5006 Annotation in outer right margin, partially lost to trimming: ¶*Nota de tribus sororibus fat[alibus]*
5007 For *yow* Bergen prints *Ioue*

- 5009 For *must* Bergen prints *may nat*
- 5024 For *alyve* Bergen prints *heer a-lyue*
- 5028 For *outhlie* Bergen prints *ougli*
- 5030-5037 Bust of a figure in profile sketched in right outer margin, very faint (possibly dry point, damaged by mold) – likely medieval, unclear whether male or female
- 5037 For *hirsself* Bergen prints *hir liff*
- 5043 For *somtyme* Bergen prints *whilom*
- 5065 For *nobles* Bergen prints *noble*
- 5069 For *age* Bergen prints *ago*
- 5085 For *reforme* Bergen prints *reuerse*
- 5113 For *Som* Bergen prints *Sum man*
- 5115 For *preferres be to* Bergen prints *preferrid bi*
- 5117 For *ffame hir* Bergen prints *Famys*
- 5122 For *haue* Bergen prints *haue be*
- 5141 For *Ciciline* Bergen prints *Stillene*
- 5155 For *nature* Bergen prints *power*
- 5160 For *This* Bergen prints *Thus*
- 5188 For *hede* Bergen prints *good heede*
- 5195 For *diffyse* Bergen prints *despise*
- 5196 Extra paraph at the beginning of this line, though it is not the beginning of stanza
- 5204 For *nobles* Bergen prints *his noblesse*
- 5211 For *insentente* Bergen prints *sholde in sentement*
- 5213 For *distres many maner* Bergen prints *discrece in ony manys*
- 5219 For *yf* Bergen prints *yaff*
- 5220 For *Geaunt* Bergen prints *tiraunt*
- 5237 For *of* (both instances) Bergen prints *on*
- 5238 For *He laude þat increce* Bergen prints *The land tencrece*
- 5243 For *mordir his gastes* Bergen prints *slayen straungers*
- 5259 For *his* Bergen prints *this*
- 5261-5264 Line 5262 out of place here (mistakenly copied at the end of the stanza); a line in the left margin (red ink over brown ink) connects it to its correct place after 5261
- 5275 For *peysid* Bergen prints *reised*
- 5296 For *ffaynn* (surely a scribal error) Bergen prints *Spaigne*
- 5325 For *contagius* Bergen prints *outraious*
- 5329 Line is repeated and appears both at bottom of fol. 20rb and top of fol. 20va
- 5333 For *passyng* Bergen prints *goyng*
- 5334 For *Oathus* Bergen prints *Cachus*, and the scribe here notes the error as well: in the left margin is a brown-ink annotation: *Cachus*
- 5365 For *beforn* Bergen prints *be force*
- 5367 Deletion is by both brown-ink subpunction and red-ink strikethrough
- 5373 For *pray* Bergen prints *parti*; for *wente* Bergen prints *hente*
- 5378 For *gardey* (missing a macron) Bergen prints *gardeyn*
- 5384 For *Coruz* (copying error for *Thoruz*?) Bergen prints *Thoruh*
- 5393 For *connyng* Bergen prints *ful cunnyng*
- 5401 For *grete* Bergen prints *hih*
- 5406 For *sometyme* Bergen prints *whilom was*
- 5407 For *regioun* Bergen prints *hous*
- 5409 For *thought* Bergen prints *thoruh*

- 5414-5420 Scribe initially skipped two lines (5415-5416) but corrected the error: four lines are deleted (5417-5420) with a brown-ink cross out and a red-ink wavy line; missing lines are then added, and the deleted lines are copied again in the correct position
- 5421-5424 Line 5422 out of place here, though there is no indication that the scribe realized the error
- 5421 For *þe* Bergen prints *in the*
- 5422 For *ferre* (*serre*?) Bergen prints *Lerne*
- 5425 Bergen omits *did* and prints *to* for *so*
- 5435 For *of* Bergen prints *or*
- 5444 For *lenyth* Bergen prints *lesith*
- 5450 Deletion is with red-ink strikethrough; for *sometyme* Bergen prints *whilom*
- 5457-5461 Line 5458 is out of place here (copied at end of stanza, between 5460 and 5461); red-ink line in left margin connects it to correct placement after 5457
- 5460 For *armys* Bergen prints *hornys*
- 5465 For *outhlie* Bergen prints *ougli*
- 5471 For the first instance of *his* Bergen prints *he*
- 5500 For *toknewe* Bergen prints *tognew*
- 5506-5509 Lines 5507 and 5508 are reversed here; red-ink and brown-ink lines in the left margin mark the problem
- 5513 For *and* Bergen prints *in*
- 5314 Bergen omits *all*
- 5515 Deletion with red-ink strikethrough
- 5526-5527 Strikethroughs in both brown ink and red ink
- 5539 For *myghty* Bergen prints *knyhtli*
- 5548 For *Yeve* Bergen prints *You*; for *youre* Bergen prints *thoruh prudent*
- 5551 For *oper* Bergen prints *off other*
- 5661 For *ameroreli* Bergen prints *amerousli*
- 5678 For *hit þe well* Bergen prints *at the welle*
- 5680 Scribe writes *Biblis* in the right margin beside this line
- 5688 For *grevaunce* Bergen prints *gouernaunce*
- 5695-5700 Line 5696 (per Bergen) initially copied out of order here; a red- and brown-ink bracket marks the error and points to where the line should go. At line 5698, the word *coverte* was initially miscopied, and the error (*couerute*) is deleted by subpunctuation and red-ink strikethrough.
- 5779 Scribe writes *Orpheus* in the left margin beside this line
- 5787 For *All fully* Bergen prints *Beestis, foulis*
- 5790 For *Mourius* Bergen prints *Mercurius*
- 5805 Scribe deletes *his* by subpunctuation; *their* added interline
- 5820 For *he muste* Bergen prints *he felte he muste*
- 5822 For *trouth enbracid but ayre* Bergen has *in trouth enbracid nothyng but hair*
- 5857 Brown-ink blot here makes scribe begin the line at an indented position
- 5864 For *sure by* Bergen prints *surli*
- 5918 Scribe miscopied *reigned* twice before striking through both errors
- 5953 The word *nowe* is not present in Bergen
- 5955 For *meke* Bergen prints *noble*
- 5960 For *ful* Bergen prints *most*
- 5965 For *Of* Bergen prints *To*

- 5980 Scribe begins to copy line 5978 again but then strikes it through
- 5996 For *By Menelaus and by kyng lamedoun* Bergen prints *Menelay and kyng Agemenoun*
- 6006 For *broþer Elenus* Bergen prints *brother callid Helenus*
- 6017-20 Scribe mistakenly placed line 6020 at line 6017 but then drew a red line indicating the correct placement
- 6093 Scribe mistakenly repeats *blys* and then strikes it out
- 6104 For *dare* Bergen prints *thar*
- 6118 For *is ferther* Bergen prints *sorore*
- 6122 For *of malice* Bergen prints *of hir malice*
- 6137 For *hynyng* Bergen prints *shynyng*
- 6157 For *plesaunce* Bergen prints *patience*
- 6161 The mistakenly copied word *convertoure* is struck through in red ink and subpuncted
- 6163 For *Pus* Bergen prints *Thou*
- 6178 For *ioy in* Bergen prints *ioy and in*; scribe begins to write *an* but strikes it out
- 6190 The word *disturbaunce* is begun and written out above *perturbaunce*
- 6191 For *discipline* Bergen prints *disciple*
- 6208 For *chere of his intent* Bergen prints *cheer and stable off his entent*
- 6222 Scribe mistakenly begins *teng* for *tonges* and strikes it out
- 6229 Scribe mistakenly begins *town* for *tunne* and strikes it out
- 6231 For *þe sonne bemys* Bergen prints *hete off Phebus bemys*
- 6242 In the lower right margin after this line are the catchwords *not drawe*, indicating the end of a quire
- 6249 For *his bemys hide* Bergen prints *lettith his bemys*
- 6250 For *say* Bergen prints *and sithe*
- 6252 For *This* Bergen prints *Though*
- 6268 For *Pat on* Bergen prints *The ton*
- 6288 For *Afyr lyst of þem* Bergen prints *Afftir ther lust*
- 6312 For *knyghtlie* Bergen prints *kingli*
- 6313 Scribe mistakenly writes *he* rather than *his* and strikes out his error
- 6321 For *ffrom* Bergen prints *For*
- 6332 For *ffyre in youre* Bergen prints *Fix in your mynde*
- 6343-6347 Red-ink bracket (over a brown-ink bracket) marks where line 6344 is out of order (per Bergen)
- 6345 Brown-ink strikethrough where scribe started to write *stronge* too early
- 6441-6447 Brown-ink bracket at the right margin frames this stanza (partially obscured by damage to the leaf)
- 6443 Brown-ink strikethrough where scribe started to write *she* too early
- 6452 Brown-ink strikethrough on *et*
- 6482 Scribe deletes *among* by subpunction and adds *vpon* interline with caret indicating correct placement
- 6527 For *wanne* Bergen prints *iawne*
- 6543–6546 Lines misordered (per Bergen); brown- and red-ink bracket shows where 6544 should go; a lighter brown-ink bracket also marks the error on the inner-column margin at 6543-6544
- 6551 Scribe deletes *corvid* by subpunction
- 6602-6605 Brown-ink bracket frames these lines at outer margin

- 6646 For *awiten all* Bergen prints *tatwiten women all*
- 6660 For *þat outward* Bergen prints *which outward thei*
- 6706 For *his* Bergen prints *this*
- 6708-6711 Lines misordered here (per Bergen); 6709 and 6710 are reversed
- 6733 For *evel lernyd* Bergen prints *wernyd*
- 6759 For *hir* Bergen prints *al*
- 6762 Scribe mistakenly wrote *quaq* for *quakyng*; deletion by subpunction
- 6770 Bergen omits *also*
- 6787 For *ye* Bergen prints *she*
- 6794 For *Crete* Bergen prints *Grece*
- 6797 Scribe inserts *worthie* above *sonnes* with caret
- 6803 Scribe writes *allon* twice; deletion of first by red strikethrough and subpunction
- 6805 Scribe began to write *iony* for *ioynynd*; deletion by subpunction
- 6808-6811 *Nota* mark and a brown-ink bracket mark these lines
- 6827 Scribe mistakenly writes *fful* for *ffor* at start of line; deletion by subpunction
- 6833 Large red capital A (three lines in height) at start of line
- 6844-6845 Faded bracket at right margin (in brownish-green ink) marks these two lines
- 6845 For *stronglie* Bergen prints *straungeli*
- 6854 For *wher* Bergen prints *whan*
- 6855 For *odible* Bergen prints *horrible*
- 6856 For *ffor he fell almoste* Bergen prints *For ire almost he fill*
- 6858 For *horrible* Bergen prints *odible*
- 6864 For the first instance of *presence* Bergen prints *face*
- 6870 For *it* Bergen prints *he*
- 6872 For *holo* Bergen prints *hool*
- 6877 For *compile* Bergen prints *compleyne*
- 6882 For *swownyng* Bergen prints *swouhe*
- 6889 For *Somtyme* Bergen prints *Whilom*
- 6892 For *Wele and wanhope* Bergen prints *Welle off wanhope*
- 6896 For *somtyme* Bergen prints *whilom*
- 6897 For *sours* Bergen prints *sorwes*
- 6897-6923 Line in brownish-green ink marks these lines at left outer margin
- 6915 For *maiste sum* Bergen prints *maist afftir sum*
- 6921 For *so* Bergen prints *nat so*
- 6925 For *outrence* Bergen prints *offence*
- 6927 For *pore* Bergen prints *pure*
- 6946 For *ferful* Bergen prints *sorweful*
- 6950 For *þeis* Bergen prints *thilke*
- 6962 For *ladie* Bergen prints *lord*
- 6966 For *somtyme* Bergen prints *whilom*
- 6981 For *it hide* Bergen prints *it nat hide*
- 6988 For *make* Bergen prints *marke*
- 6996 For *þe* Bergen prints *his*
- 7000 Erasure by subpunction and red-ink strikethrough; correction interline
- 7002 Bergen omits *at*
- 7022 For *and* Bergen prints *al in*
- 7025 For *hir* Bergen prints *his*
- 7029 For *toke* Bergen prints *stood*

- 7031 For *The swerde in hir right hand* Bergen prints *Withoute abood the sharpe suerd*
 7035 For *hymselfe* Bergen prints *the silff*
 7048 For *which* Bergen prints *such*
 7050 For *small* Bergen prints *fynal*
 7052 For *And agayn right hasty* Bergen prints *Ageyn al riht & hasti*
 7068 For *perturbeth youre* Bergen prints *perturben the*

Book II

- 127-61 These lines (5 stanzas) are out of place; they appear in this MS immediately after the final line of Book I (per Bergen) and before the marked (i.e., rubricated) beginning of Book II
- 130 For *ye* Bergen prints *he*
 137 For *many a* Bergen prints *manyfold*
 140 For *fall* Bergen prints *fate*
 149 For *make intencion* Bergen prints *made mencioum*
 157 For *inhaunce* Bergen prints *auaunce*
 159 For *of sentence* Bergen prints *& sentence*
 161-1 Start of Book II's prologue (per Bergen) begins after lines 127-161 in this MS; there is a line space between the *Incipit* rubric and line 1
- 1 Large blue capital *T* (four lines in height) at start of line
 6 For *not* Bergen prints *inouh*
 7-21 Line with a loop at the top (in dark, brownish-green ink) marks these lines at the inner margin
- 9 For *gladnes* Bergen prints *al gladnesse*
 21 For *pat* Bergen prints *ther*
 33 The word *deserue* is written above the word *discerne*, in a hand different from the main scribe's
 42 For *eclipsid* Bergen prints *cliptik*
 59 For *oper* Bergen prints *ther*
 61 Three dots (·:) appear next to this line at the left margin, seemingly to mark the correction or awareness of errors in this (and this next?) line
 62 For *gyftys* Bergen prints *giltes*
 65 For *conseruith* Bergen prints *confermeth*
 71 For *and oute crie* Bergen prints *an outcri*
 76 For *hert and thought* Bergen prints *herte, will & thouht*
 82 For *forme* Bergen prints *ferme*
 83 For *Both þeis* (surely an error) Bergen prints *By othris*
 94 For *do bite* Bergen prints *kerue & bite*
 95 First correction by subpunction (in brown ink), second by red-ink over brown-ink strikethrough (correct word is written with brown ink)
- 126 Book II prologue ends here in this MS's arrangement; remaining stanzas (lines 127-161) are placed earlier, at end of Book I
- 162 *This* has two first letters, one large blue initial and the other in brown ink.
 186-187 Lines are out of order (per Bergen); 187 was begun incorrectly and then struck through, and a red-ink bracket on the inner margin shows where 186 should be.
- 240 *Nota* mark in outer margin at this line
 271 For *right wel avowe whatever* Bergen prints *riht weel whatever*
 290 For *Of godde abiecte* Bergen prints *As abiect*

- 338-342 Lines 340-341 mistakenly copied after 338 and then struck through; after the strikethrough, lines resume correct order such that 340-341 are written again.
- 348 For *Or to haue slayn* Bergen prints *Or taslaie hym*
- 381 For *or swetnes* Bergen prints & *suetnesse*
- 387 For *Ieopartie* scribe first wrote *perill*; *perill* is deleted by subpunction.
- 390 For *may it denye* Bergen prints *ye may it nat denye*
- 458-465 Lines 459-464 (per Bergen) are omitted here, so that two stanzas are spliced together and rhyme scheme broken
- 494-498 Lines are misordered here: a light brown-ink bracket on the outer margin shows were 495 should (per Bergen) be placed
- 525 For *Vnto* Bergen prints *And to*
- 632 For *governde* Bergen prints *gouernynng*
- 648 For *Mestetus* Bergen prints *Mistith*
- 666 Deletion of *wordes* by subpunction and corrected to *woodis*
- 692 For *And of* Bergen prints *off*
- 717 For *Remeus* Bergen prints *Semeias*
- 721 For *This was goddes wyll* Bergen prints *It was Godis will*
- 735 For *while he bars* Bergen prints *whil that he bar*
- 746 For *ffollowe* Bergen prints *Fulli*
- 761 For *All voide* Bergen prints *Tauoide*
- 762 For *But liste* Bergen prints *But God list*
- 765 For *Delyueryd* Bergen prints *Delyuered was*
- 777-785 A full stanza (lines 778-784, per Bergen) is omitted here, at the start of the envoy; at line 785, in the right margin, the scribe writes *Lenvoie*
- 1487 Scribal error, *ffor folke* should be *forsook* (per Bergen); scribe deletes *aron* by subpunction, corrects to *aruon*
- 1516-1518 Scribe omits line 1517 (per Bergen), creating a shortened, 6-line stanza
- 1637 *To be ouerledde* deleted by red-ink strikethrough; correction inserted interline and runs into damaged outer margin
- 1647 Scribe crosses out *pe*, corrects to *peire*
- 1654 Scribe deletes *hof* by subpunction and inserts *purgh* with caret interline; *purgh* also written in left margin
- 1667 Line starts with large blue capital A, three lines tall
- 1681 Line starts with large blue capital O, two lines tall
- 1683-1684 These lines are written in reverse order (per Bergen); 1684 has a capital B next to it on the outer margin, and 1683 has a capital A, signaling the correct order
- 1688 Line starts with large blue capital N, three lines tall
- 1699 Scribe omits line (per Bergen, *Hym to destroie withoute merci or pite*) but leaves the line space blank
- 1719 *Tyl efte agayn* struck through in red ink.
- 1731 *by bledynng ded faile* struckthrough in red ink; scribe adds *caught his fatal wounde* above the line in brown ink with caret to indicate correct placement
- 1744 Large blue capital N, three lines tall; scribe strikes through *d* in brown ink
- 1755 Scribe writes *in* between lines with a caret indicating correct placement
- 1757 For *purpos* Bergen prints *caste*
- 1764 Scribe strikes through *f* in brown ink before writing *foule*
- 1776 For *contagius* Bergen prints *sodeyn*
- 1794 For *to haue* Bergen prints *ta*

- 1802 Three dots in triangle form mark this line in the outer margin
- 1826 For *of age lyghte* Bergen prints *off myht*
- 1846 Scribe strikes through *h* in brown ink before the word *cowde*
- 1849 Scribe strikes through *intre* in brown ink before *entres*
- 1851 Cross-shaped signe de renvoi direct placement of this line, which is written in the outer margin
- 1860 For *By vnrightful* Bergen prints *Born rihtful*
- 1863 In the outer margin next to this line, written in brown ink, is *Lenvoie*
- 1880 For *destrucciones* Bergen prints *extortaciouns*
- 1890 Scribe strikes through *g* in brown ink before the word *warnyng*
- 1898 Large blue capital (three lines in height) at start of line
- 1917 For *þus she* Bergen prints *this Siche*
- 1919 For *greteli* Bergen prints *greuousli*
- 1920-1922 Line 1921 (per Bergen) not present in MS, resulting in short stanza
- 1924-1925 Rhyming brace in light brown ink connects these lines (inner margin)
- 1928 For *vnstable* Bergen prints *onstaunchable*
- 1935 For *she* Bergen prints *sithe*
- 1942 For *Boldest* Bergen prints *Bauys*
- 1972 For *in* Bergen prints *hir*
- 1982 For *diuinacions* Bergen prints *dyuynours*
- 1998 Deletion with brown-ink subpunction and red-ink strikethrough
- 2019 For *lyue* Bergen prints *wyue*
- 2023 Deletion with brown-ink subpunction and red-ink strikethrough
- 2032 For *his* Bergen prints *hir*
- 2042 For *þei were no* Bergen prints *for he was nat*
- 2057 For *attemp or tame* Bergen prints *tattempten or tattame*
- 2059 For *raþer* Bergen prints *rather deie*
- 2061 For *cuntre* Bergen prints *centre*
- 2075 For *youre* Bergen prints *his*
- 2078 For *Wheþer* Bergen prints *Wher*
- 2100 For *þat þei* Bergen prints *nat be*
- 2108 For *nere* Bergen prints *mor*
- 2124 For *And* Bergen prints *Go*
- 2130 For *saile* Bergen prints *soile*
- 2139-2140 Rhyming brace in light brown ink on outer margin connects these two lines
- 2141-2142 Rhyming brace in light brown ink on outer margin connects these two lines
- 2148-2149 Rhyming brace in light brown ink on outer margin connects these two lines
- 2156-2170 Long bracket in light brown ink on outer margin marks these fourteen lines
- 2159 Bergen omits *full*
- 2162 For *Ones* Bergen prints *Amysse*
- 2171 Annotation in left outer margin (in brown ink): *Lenvoie*
- 2183 For *socreteli* Bergen prints *cleerli*
- 2192 For *beaute* Bergen prints *bounte*
- 2198 For *trouth* Bergen prints *vertu*
- 2199 Annotation in left outer margin (in brown ink with red paraph): ¶ *Alia lenvoie*
- 2221 For *gete in frendes* Bergen prints *gete frendes*
- 2233 Below rubricated title for Sardanapalus section, scribe leaves last three available lines of this column blank

- 2234 Large blue initial (three lines in height) at start of line
- 2239 For *outhlie* Bergen prints *ougli*
- 2242 For *disers* Bergen prints *Assiriens*
- 2265 For *goode* Bergen prints *gret*
- 2270 Bergen omits *al*
- 2273 For *syluer white* Bergen prints *siluer-briht*
- 2276 For *was* Bergen prints *nas*
- 2289 First two letters of *Terrible* show evidence of erasure by scraping (correct letters written over the scraped parchment)
- 2294 For *an ordinaunce* Bergen prints *a coniuracioun*
- 2301 End of the third quire: bottom right margin shows catchwords, slightly cropped at lower edge: *Wher among women*
- 2305 For *surefetoures* Bergen prints *sergauntis riotous*
- 2307 For *aboutht but fooles and riotoures* Bergen prints *off armys but folkis vicious*
- 2320 For *in myddes of his riches* Bergen prints *myd his riche*
- 2321 Bergen omits *And*
- 2326 For *specifie* Bergen prints *certefie*
- 2328 For *Tirannie* Bergen prints *glotenye*
- 2331 Bergen omits *In*
- 2336 For *þe traces* Bergen prints *his tras*
- 2338 For *euer* Bergen prints *ay*
- 2361 Dor *Reson* Bergen prints *Be soun*
- 2366-2367 The rubric *De Inuentoribus diuersarum artium* is in the lower margin, with placement directed by a signe-de-renvoi
- 2392 For *all þis* Bergen prints *as thei*
- 2406 For *In þe sight* of Bergen prints *Onto-for*
- 2415-2419 Latin annotation in the left margin here (with a large red paraph mark): *Ennok prius inuenit litteras heb[raicas] que conseruate fuerant dura[mine?] in columpna lapidea*
- 2434 For *gan sith* Bergen prints *gon sithen*
- 2452 For *Carventes* Bergen prints *Carmentis*
- 2462 For *þem redresse* Bergen prints *hym dresse*
- 2479 For *peces* Bergen prints *pipes*
- 2498 Erasure of *Astronomie* by brown-in subpunction and red-in strikethrough
- 2501-2503 Scribe omits line 2502 (per Bergen: *Piroides, for gret auantage*), and stanza is one line short
- 2512 For *nouþer* Bergen prints *outher*
- 2518 For *a pyntaile* (nonsensical in this context) Bergen prints *aquitaile*
- 2520-2528 Scribe omits whole stanza here
- 2536 For *dissolence* Bergen prints *insolence*
- 2538 The word *reuersence* should be *reuerence*
- 2540 For *and wylful rebelnesse* Bergen prints *off wilful reklesnesse*
- 2567-2569 Faint brown-ink bracket around these lines, outer margin
- 2589 Scribe deletes *his* by subpunction (apparently because of an ink blot) and adds *his* again interline
- 2605 Marginal annotation at this line (in main scribe's hand) reads [¶] *Cons]pice scilicet in Iosephum*
- 2612-2618 Brown-ink rhyme braces mark this stanza, inner margin

- 2622-2623 Brown-ink rhyme braces on these lines, inner margin
- 2631-2632 Brown-ink rhyme braces on these lines, inner margin
- 2745-2765 Consistent brown-ink rhyme braces mark these three stanzas, inner margin
- 2651-2653 Faint brown-ink rhyme braces on these lines, outer margin
- 2661-2667 Brown-ink rhyme braces mark this stanza, outer margin
- 2678-2681 Brown-ink rhyme braces on these lines, outer margin
- 2689-2702 Brown-ink rhyme braces mark these two stanzas, outer margin
- 2710-2714 Brown-ink square bracket frames these lines at outer margin
- 2762 For *Lesse þan synne* Bergen prints *List that the fyn*
- 2773-2775 Brown-ink rhyme brace marks lines at *discerne* and *lanterne*
- 2787-2793 Brown-ink rhyme braces mark this stanza, outer margin
- 2965-2966 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 2567-2568 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 2970-2974 A three-pronged, brown-ink bracket connects lines 2970, 2973, and 2974, though this bracketing does not connect to the rhyme scheme
- 2981-2982 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 3006 This line added in the right margin with a signe-de-renvoi to guide placement; in Bergen the line reads *She that be name was callid Mundanes*
- 3005-3008 A brown-ink bracket on the inner margin connects these lines
- 3011/3013 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 3012-3015 A three-pronged brown-ink rhyming brace joins lines 3012, 3014, and 3015
- 3018/3020 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines lines
- 3021-3022 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 3025/3027 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 3027 For *divinaunce* Bergen prints *ordenaunce*
- 3029 The word *yeve* is added both in the margin and interline, with a carot marking insertion; *yef* is deleted by subpunction
- 3030-3031 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 3036-3039 A brown-ink bracket on outer margin frames these four lines
- 3046/3048 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 3047/3049 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 3053 For *by* Bergen prints *the*
- 3053/3055 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 3063 For *visions* Bergen prints *vicious*
- 3074 For *philosophre* Bergen prints *clerk*, and for *Diogenes* he prints *Demostenes*
- 3082/3085 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 3106-3108 A brown-ink bracket on outer margin frames these three lines
- 3109/3111 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 3114-3115 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 3123-3129 This entire stanza is marked with rhyming braces, revealing the poem's standard ababbcc rhyme scheme
- 3133-3134 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 3134 For *herd beforne* Bergen prints *heer-toforen*
- 3140-3041 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 3142-3143 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 3168-3169 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 3219-3220 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 3233-3234 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines

- 3248-3249 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
3252-3253 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
3261 For *Hough* is Bergen prints *His*
3289 For *veinglorie* Bergen prints fals *veynglorie*
3289-3290 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
3291/3293 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
3292/3294 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
3298 For *tene* Bergen prints *sooth*
3303-3304 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
3306/3309 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
3312-3315 A brown-ink bracket on outer margin frames these four lines
3317-3318 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
3322-3324 The scribe leaves a space here for line 3323, which is missing from this manuscript; Bergen supplies *To yeue exauple to pryncis in sothnesse*
3343-3344 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
3345-3346 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
3347-3353 Brown-ink rhyme braces mark this stanza, outer margin
3373-3374 Brown-ink rhyme brace marks lines at *kepe* and *slepe*
3394-3395 Brown-ink rhyme brace marks lines at *slouthe* and *trouth*
3457-3458 Brown-ink rhyme brace marks lines at *askape* and *shape*
3462-3463 Brown-ink rhyme brace marks lines at *astate* and *fortunate*
3466-3468 Brown-ink rhyme brace marks lines at *rede* and *brede*
3410-3437 Consistent brown-ink rhyme braces mark these four stanzas, inner margin
3483-3484 Brown-ink rhyme brace marks lines at *pleynn* and *veyn*
3490-3493 Brown-ink rhyme braces on these lines, outer margin
3499 Scribal error: *mysvid* should be *mysvsid*
3528 Scribe inserts *represe* interline with caret but neglects to delete incorrect *represe*
3534-3535 Brown-ink rhyme brace marks lines at *prowe* and *lowe*
3567-3563 Brown-ink rhyme braces mark this stanza, inner margin
3571-3575 Brown-ink rhyme braces on these lines, inner margin
3611-3615 Brown-ink rhyme braces on these lines, outer margin
3632-3638 Brown-ink rhyme braces on lines that continue to rhyme across two stanzas, at *visage*, *image*, *aswage*, *rage*, and *avauntage*
3645 Line is missing but scribe leaves space for it
3580 For *Ye* Bergen prints *Yit*
3639-3640 Brown-ink rhyme brace marks lines at *sorowe* and *morow*
3646-3647 Brown-ink rhyme brace marks lines at *variaunce* and *grevaunce*
3648 For *importable* Bergen prints *intolerable*
3648-3654 Brown-ink rhyme braces mark this stanza, inner margin
3681-3682 Brown-ink rhyme brace marks lines at *cruelte* and *be*
3683-3684 Brown-ink rhyme brace marks lines at *menace* and *reuerance*
3690-3696 Brown-ink rhyme braces mark this stanza, inner margin
3697-3699 Brown-ink rhyme braces on these lines, inner margin
3722 Line inserted in the outer margin (with some text lost to trimming); cross-shaped signe-de-renvoi shows insertion position
3730-3731 Brown-ink rhyme brace marks lines at *cure* and *aventure*
3989-3990 Brown-ink rhyme brace marks lines at *olde* and *tolde*
4031-4032 Brown-ink rhyme brace marks lines at *reprefe* and *myschefe*

- 4037 Line inserted in the outer margin (with some text lost to trimming); cross-shaped signe-de-renvoi and red-ink line show insertion position
- 4045-4046 Brown-ink rhyme brace marks lines at *spylle*, *stille*, and *wyll*
- 4047-4049 Brown-ink rhyme brace marks lines at *depose* and *cloos*
- 4076-4088 Brown-ink rhyme braces used intermittently throughout these two stanzas
- 4096-4102 Brown-ink rhyme braces mark this stanza, inner margin
- 4118-4022 Brown-ink rhyme brace marks lines at *multitude*, *rude*, and *conclude*
- 4124-4137 Brown-ink rhyme braces mark these two stanzas, somewhat marred by outer margin damage
- 4162-4163 Brown-ink rhyme brace marks lines at *vengeable* and *stable*
- 4166-4168 Brown-ink rhyme brace marks lines at *delite* and *write*
- 4201-4207 Brown-ink rhyme braces mark this stanza, inner margin
- 4229-4242 Brown-ink rhyme braces used intermittently throughout these two stanzas
- 4262-4263 Brown-ink rhyme brace marks lines at *obserue* and *deserue*
- 4278/4280 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 4279/4282 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 4283/4284 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 4285/4287 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 4288/4289 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 4290 For *make* Bergen prints *meete*
- 4300 For *With intretyng* Bergen prints *Withoute entretyng*
- 4300/4303 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 4305 For *singler* Bergen prints *synguler*
- 4309/4310 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 4314/4316 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 4321/4324 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 4325/4326 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 4334 For *But* Bergen prints *First*
- 4341 The word *full* is subpuncted and corrected to *fell*, for which Bergen prints *fill*
- 4347 For *he did by his* Bergen prints *he dede was doon by his*
- 4352-4359 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 4360-4361 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 4381/4382 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 4383/4385 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 4396 The word *nede* is subpuncted and corrected to *ende*
- 4402/4403 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 4411 The word *varyyng* is subpuncted and *variant* written interline above it
- 4412-15 Brown-ink rhyming braces join lines 4412, 4415, and 4415
- 4419/4421 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 4421/4422 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 4423 For *inclineth* Bergen prints *englueth*
- 4428-4429 Scribe leaves a line space after 4428, showing awareness of the short stanza; the missing line is actually 4431, per Bergen *Be treynes founde off deceit and tresoun*
- 4430 For *intripte* Bergen prints *entriked*
- 4436 The word *ful* is written interline between *guerdon* and *couenable*
- 4451/4452 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
- 4455 For *Though* Bergen prints *How*
- 4458/4459 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines

- 4462 For *beldyng of Bergen* prints *bildyng gan off*
 4463/4464 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
 4479 The word *reigne* is crossed out in red ink and subpuncted; *lyne* is written interline above *reigne*
 4487 The word *yeres* is crossed out in red ink and subpuncted; *longe os* written interline above
 4493/4494 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
 4497 For *Pe image* Bergen prints *Yimages*
 4504 For *Pe dictatours* Bergen prints *Off dictatours*
 4505/4506 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
 4514 For *whis* Bergen prints *which*
 4526 For *Of* Bergen prints *Alle*
 4532-4533 These lines are added in the margin with a cross-shaped signe-de-renvoi marking where they belong in the main body of the text
 4538-4541 Brown-ink rhyming braces join lines, 4538, 4540, and 4541
 4572/4574 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
 4582/4583 A brown-ink rhyming brace joins these two lines
 4586 *Lenvoie* is written in the left margin, next to the paraph mark

Book VI

- 3501 Large blue capital F (three lines in height) at start of line
 3548 For *þef* Bergen prints *cherl*
 3550 For *Moena* Bergen prints *cherl*
 3570 For *his* Bergen prints *an*
 3622 For *þe* Bergen prints *cheef*
 3656 For *no* Bergen prints *mene*
 3656 Bergen omits *to*
 3658 For *his* Bergen prints *this*

Book VII

- 3 For *purposid* Bergen prints *oppressid*
 25 Bergen omits *quene*
 26 For *worþi* Bergen prints *writeth*
 28 For *agayn* Bergen prints *he geyn*
 32 For *yell* Bergen prints *houle*
 54 The word *coniuration* is cancelled by subpunction
 57 For *beforn* Bergen prints *tofor*
 62 The word *roiall* is an error for *cruel* (per Bergen); three dots (∴) and a figure-eight symbol (8) next to this line seem to indicate awareness of the error
 82 For *warden* Bergen prints *garden*
 88 *And* (per Bergen) is omitted at the start of this line
 96 *Ve* is an error for *He* (per Bergen); three dots (∴) next to this line seem to indicate awareness of the error
 108 Three dots (∴) next to this line seem to indicate is an error, but the line matches Bergen
 111 For *that* Bergen prints *ffor*, and for *many* Bergen prints *anoye*
 155 For *ealuie* Bergen prints *reum*
 155-57 Line 156 (per Bergen) is not in this MS, creating a short stanza here

- 201 Bergen prints *Ech tiraunt gladli eendith with myschaunce* for this line
 216 Four dots (::) next to this line seem to indicate an error, but the line matches
 Bergen
 244 For *chaunces* Bergen prints *clauses*
 246 Line begins with large blue initial O (three lines in height); a small *o* guide letter
 is visible
 278 Line begins with large blue initial C (three lines in height)
 287 For *Of* Bergen prints *In*
 293 *At vien a myghty gret cite* is inserted in the margin with a red-line indicating
 correct placement
 297 The words *Tibire accusyd* are cancelled by subpunction and struck through in red
 306 For *þoo* Bergen prints *thes*
 312 For *Before Bochas* Bergen prints *Tofor Iohn Bochas*
 320 Line begins with large blue initial T (4 lines in height)
 329-332 Line 329 is out of place, preceding line 330 (per Bergen); a bracket in the inner
 margin (red ink over brown) indicates the proper position of the line
 342 For *callid*, Bergen prints *named*
 345-346 Bottom right margin contains catchwords *Of Emylia in avoutre*
 352 The word *oute* is added interline, with a carot marking insertion
 355 The word *not* is deleted by a red-ink strikethrough and brown-ink subpunction
 359 For *corage* Bergen prints *outrage*
 360 For *A myghtis* Bergen prints *Anihter*
 361 For *And as a* Bergen prints *At the*; for *indede* Bergen prints *for meede*
 382 For *þe* Bergen prints *his*
 384 For *comynd* Bergen prints *conioyned*
 387 For *Thin* Bergen prints *Withynne*
 394 For *subiecte* Bergen prints *soget*
 398 Line was originally omitted but is copied below column a (by scribe); a cross-
 shaped signe-de-renvoi marks the correct insertion point
 402 Light brown slash marks on both sides of *contrarie* indicate the correct order of
 words in this line should be *þat founde is contrarie*
 409 For *and chevalrie* Bergen prints *and his cheualrie*
 411 Light brown (scribal) slash mark indicates separation of *þow* and *calligula*, which
 are otherwise written continuously
 461 For *princis . princesses* Bergen prints *princis*
 480 For *In such* Bergen prints *Which in such*
 483 For *by report* Bergen prints *the report*
 487 For *forfete*, Bergen prints *surfet*; for *slogardie*, Bergen prints *glotonie*
 492 For *þe empire* Bergen prints *thoruh empire*
 495 For *verri* Bergen prints *worthy*
 497 For *þe* Bergen prints *so*
 506 For *temple in a place* Bergen prints *temple a place*
 508 For *But* Bergen prints *Put*
 511 For *callid* Bergen prints *named eek*
 513 For *þin own myght* Bergen prints *thyn imperial myht*
 526 For *Pollux and Castor* Bergen prints *Pollux Castor*
 527 For *which þu arte* Bergen prints *whiche place thou art*
 535 For *wheþir* Bergen prints *wher-so*

- 540 The word *to* is added interline, with a carot marking insertion
- 541 The word *þu* is deleted by a red-ink strikethrough and brown-ink subpunction
- 544 For *þu shettist vp* Bergen prints *Shettist up*
- 545 For *All þe Garners* Bergen prints *Ther gerneris*
- 548 For *compleyned* Bergen prints *constreynd*
- 571 For *þeir* Bergen prints *your*
- 572 For *þeir* Bergen prints *your*; for *þus* Bergen prints *þer*
- 574 For *þeir* Bergen prints *your*
- 582 For *turnement* Bergen prints *torment*
- 593 Line begins with large blue initial *T* (4 lines in height)
- 611 For *Of estate* Bergen prints *To estat*
- 620 For *þought* Bergen prints *youth*
- 626 For *vicius of his* Bergen prints *vicious as of his*
- 638 For *fyrst crownyd* Bergen prints *was crownid*
- 646 For *myn auctor doþ specifie* Bergen prints *myn auctor of hym doth specefie*
- 694 For *vice doþ to othir doþ* Bergen prints *vice to othir doth*
- 706 For *by þe stori* Bergen prints *his stori*
- 708 Brown ink smudge before *Such* causes line to be indented
- 709 *Ande* is deleted by a red-ink strikethrough
- 725 For *liknes of man* Bergen prints *likenesse of [wo]man*
- 728 For *Didde* Bergen prints *He*
- 747 For *he gan fyrst* Bergen prints *first he gan*
- 754-767 Stanzas are out of order here: Bergen's lines 761-767 follow line 754 in MS
- 768 For *whan* Bergen prints *as*
- 778-777 Lines are out of order here: Light brown (scribal) letters *a* and *b* in the left margin indicate the correct order; for *of* in 778 Bergen prints *on*
- 781-789 Lines 782-788 (per Bergen) are not present in MS
- 793 Line was originally omitted but is copied in the left margin (partially lost due to trimming), a red-ink line indicates the correct insertion point
- 794 For *of* Bergen prints *on*
- 805 For *myghti* Bergen prints *massif*
- 806 For *turnement* Bergen prints *torment*
- 810 Line begins with large blue initial *B* (4 lines in height); light brown guide letter *b* visible
- 816 For *And* Bergen prints *As*
- 829 For *Ettho* Bergen prints *Oththo*
- 844 For *Ettho* Bergen prints *Oththo*
- 846 For *Ettho* Bergen prints *Oththo*
- 850 For *Ettho* Bergen prints *Oththo*
- 852 For *sure namyd* Bergen prints *this same*
- 854 For *and outrageous* Bergen prints *& deedis outraious*
- 858 For *Ettho*, Bergen prints *Oththo*
- 861 For *Ettho* Bergen prints *Oththo*
- 863 This line collapses two lines (per Bergen), *Fortunys mutabilite* from line 863 and *The fourte tyme* from line 864 are omitted
- 865-866 Annotation at left margin (three dots in a triangle formation) before blank line; line is omitted because of the combination of lines 863-864
- 869 For *Ettho* Bergen prints *Oththo*

- 900 For *Pe* Bergen prints *Off*; for *gredy*, Bergen prints *greuous*
- 906 For *To* Bergen prints *No*
- 914-922 Lines 915-921 (per Bergen) are not present MS
- 926 For *hym Vitellus* Bergen prints *hym cam Vitellius*
- 929 Large blue capital *D* (that is three lines in height) starts the line
- 932 For *euer* Bergen prints *owher*
- 946 For *his ere* Bergen prints *hir ere*
- 957 Scribe adds *in* interline above *And*
- 959 This line was first omitted but is added in the lower left margin under column a; a cross-shaped signe-de-renvoi indicates correct placement
- 983 For *hiduus* Bergen prints *his*
- 986 For *þe* Bergen prints *þer*
- 999 For *of* Bergen prints *for*
- 1016 For *hadde sent* Bergen prints *had sett*
- 1021 For *afforn drunkyn* Bergen prints *booste afforne*
- 1022 For *ofte* Bergen prints *booste*
- 1024 For *his* Bergen prints *this*
- 1039 For *werres it wolde be non oper* Bergen prints *werris Vespasyanis brothir*
- 1040 For *vaspasianus broþer* Bergen prints *it wolde be non othir*
- 1044 For *set* Bergen prints *sente*
- 1068 For *for his* Bergen prints *this*
- 1077 For *clottid* Bergen prints *blottid*
- 1104 Large blue capital *H* (three lines in height) begins this line
- 1111 For *corage* Bergen prints *outrage*
- 1133 For *.j.* Bergen prints *foure*
- 1137 Scribe adds *governe* interline using a caret to indicate correct placement
- 1153 For *Pe worlde* Bergen prints *The olde world*
- 1160-1166 Lines are out of order here: 1060–1066 follow 1167–1173 (per Bergen)
- 1163 For *fals* Bergen prints *foul*
- 1176 For this line Bergen prints *Knythod in prowess gaff out so cleer a liht*
- 1178 For *of* Bergen prints *in*
- 1181 For *all maner robbers* Bergen prints *al robbours*
- 1188-1194 These lines omitted in MS
- 1195-1197 A smudge of blue ink is visible in the outer right margin here
- 1202-1208 These lines omitted in MS
- 1229 For *for* Bergen prints *hir*
- 1235 For *þe* Bergen prints *this*
- 1245 For *Of his disordinance and* Bergen prints *On the disordynat*
- 1248 For *be þis lecherie* Bergen prints *for their ribaudie*
- 1249 For *envius* Bergen prints *enmyes*
- 1251-1257 These lines are out of order (per Bergen): lines 1258–1264 appear here
- 1269 For *sylver* Bergen prints *siluestre*; scribe adds *colde* interline using a caret to indicate correct placement
- 1272 For *made* Bergen prints *wouen*
- 1273 For *Record of þis* Bergen prints *Record the*
- 1278 This line is different in Bergen: for *Hadde of his howsholde holy þe governaunce* Bergen prints *Set for cheeff merour of al good gouernaunce*
- 1300-1306 Lines omitted in MS

- 1320 For *þeire* Bergen prints *your*
 1322 For *shewand* Bergen prints *shynende*
 1323 For *þeir* Bergen prints *your* (in both instances of the word)
 1335 Large blue capital *T* (three lines in height) begins this line
 1344 Lines 1344-1345 (per Bergen) are collapsed into this one line: scribe omits *of ther wrechidnesse* from line 1344 and *Bespreynt* from line 1345
 1346 For *Knowyng* Bergen prints *Cunnyng*
 1348 For *þe festes* Bergen prints *sum feeste*
 1360 For *by* Bergen prints *in*
 1372 For *þe* Bergen prints *Ther*
 1379 For *linages* Bergen prints *lynages of Iacob*
 1398 For *poetes* Bergen prints *prophetis*
 1475 For *he was sent* Bergen prints *he went ageyn*
 1481 For *myght entre ne issn* Bergen prints *non myhte entre nor non myhte issen*
 1516 For *list* Bergen prints *rebelle*
 1549 For *cladde* Bergen prints *brouht*
 1552 For *a Callid* Bergen prints *a castell callid*
 1559 For *þe* Bergen prints *this*, and for *famus* he prints *statli*
 1583 For *sharp* Bergen prints *large*
 1598 For *ouplie þing to kenne* Bergen prints *ougli tokne*; for *put* Bergen prints *toke*
 1600 For *conuersion* Bergen prints *subuersioun*
 1603 For *frowarde* Bergen prints *inward*
 1633 For *þe eke þe occident* Bergen prints *occident*
 1635 Strikethrough of *Ierusalem* in red ink
 1653 For *comyn* Bergen prints *nat komen*

Book VIII

- 3 For *Bought* Bergen prints *Rought*
 5 For *disparkyld* Bergen prints *disparpiled*
 59 For *on* Bergen prints *ouer*
 81 For *laureate* Bergen prints *aureat*
 114 For *man* Bergen prints *anon*
 128 For *Rulith* Bergen prints *Renveth*
 141 The word *heyns* should be *hevyns*; for *hevyns* Bergen prints *Grace*
 172 For *prince* Bergen prints *preent*
 203-285 No red paraps marks the stanzas in this section; double line cues in brown-ink show where the paraps should be
 211 Bergen prints *Thoruh hih presumpcioun, of hym it is eek told*, while this manuscript has *þurgh high of it is eke tolde*
 213 The scribe has just written *silu*; the *er*-abbreviation mark is absent
 272 For *porcenius* Bergen prints *Poscennyus*
 274 For *peple* Bergen prints *meyne*
 286 For *Bitaine* Bergen prints *Breteyne*
 292 For *occupacioun* Bergen prints *delectacioun*
 315 The word *foule* is not in Bergen
 323 For *poude* Bergen writes *prudent*; it seems likely that the scribe made a mistake and meant to write either *proude* or *proudent* (?)

- 373 For *Maa* Bergen prints *Nicea*; if the scribe was copying *Nicea*, it is possible that the minims of /ni/ were understood as /m/ and a /ce/ ligature misread as /a/
- 379 The main scribe writes *Sixtus* in the inner margin here
- 428 The *H* of *His* was first written in brown ink and then written over again in blue ink
- 429 The scribe sets brown-ink lines around *envie* (similar to the double lines that usually serve as cues for paraph marks; based on the rhyme scheme and comparison with Bergen, this is likely intended to correct word-order inversion: *bare envie grete* should read *bare grete envie*)
- 437 For *Titre* Bergen prints *Tigre*
- 438 Deletion of *Septemtron* with red-ink strikethrough
- 446-448 The deleted lines are the result of eyeskip (the should come later at 450-452); a wavy red-ink line indicates the mistake
- 454-458 The scribe first skipped these five lines but adds them in the bottom margin; a cross-shaped signe-de-renvoi indicates where to insert them
- 461 For *Pis was to bow down his corps* Bergen prints *This was his offis, to bowe down his corps*
- 462 For *lepe* Bergen prints *worpe*
- 467-471 Water damage here appears to have happened while the scribe was writing; ink is blurred and running
- 484 For *his booke wel tell* Bergen prints *this mateer weel*
- 495 For *liggist* Bergen prints *listow*
- 551 For *sacrificis* Bergen prints *sacrefises & rihtes*
- 602 For *can* Bergen prints *cannat*
- 649 For *schryne* Bergen prints *shyne*
- 651 The word *grete* is above the line, with a *nota* mark; the line should read *Chose and þe Olifaunt in parthos with grete peyne*
- 1190 For *þeir* Bergen prints *his*
- 1192 For *se* Bergen prints *heere*
- 1195 For *Be* Bergen prints *The*
- 1235-1240 Line 1238 missing in MS, line 1236 and 1237 out of place; scribal annotations in the middle margin indicate the error: *.a.* before *Receyvid* and *.b.* before *Did*
- 1253 For *all þe nyght* Bergen prints *day & niht*
- 1255 For *his* Bergen prints *this*
- 1278 Strikethrough of *vpon* in red ink
- 1291 For *In wyll* Bergen prints *I wil*
- 1300-1301 Lines 1300 and 1301 are out of place; annotations in the inner margin indicate the error: *b.* before *Pat* and *a* before *What*
- 1322 For *þe* Bergen prints *ther*
- 1325 Eye-skip error marked with red-ink strikethrough and subpunction; *he gaue* is inserted above the line with a carot guiding placement
- 1373-1279 Bergen prints a stanza that is missing in the MS
- 1407 For *his* Bergen prints *this*
- 1429 For *vision* Bergen prints *auyseoun*
- 1444 For *Grece of Bisante* Bergen prints *Grece the name of Bizante*
- 1445 For *Constantine* Bergen prints *Constantynople*
- 1450 Strikethrough correction is in red ink

- 1453 For *þeir* Bergen prints *your*
1460 For *comynte* Bergen prints *comete*
- 2668 Strikethrough of *Bochas* in red ink
2701 Scribe deletes *sicure* by subpunction
2720 Scribe deletes *magnificence* by subpunction
2727 For *Melyne* Bergen prints *Merlyn*
2731 No red paraph starts this stanza; a brown-ink double line provides the cue for one
2764 Scribe adds *in* interline with caret to indicate proper placement
2770 For *languysssh endure* Bergen prints *languisshe and endure*
2791 For *of* Bergen prints *bi*
2803 Scribe deletes *fro ferre* by subpunction
2804 For *or* Bergen prints *and*
2817 For *lerne* Bergen prints *haue*
2821 For *clere* Bergen prints *sheene*
2826 For *and* Bergen prints *fond*
2838 For *to be* Bergen prints *take*
2840-2841 Lines 2840 and 2841 are reversed; annotation in the inner margin indicates the error: *b.* before *Not* and *a.* before *Them*
- 2854 For *represe* Bergen prints *redresse*
2864 For *Dis* Bergen prints *Thus*
2871 For *Dis* Bergen prints *Thus*
2913 For *callid* Bergen prints *namyd*
2914 Scribe adds *it* interline with caret to indicate proper placement
2919 For *xij* Bergen prints *ful thretteene*
2921 For *Pe feste* Bergen prints *Feste*
2925 For *of* Bergen prints *and*
2926 For *Of* Bergen prints *To*
2945 For *liste* Bergen prints *gan*
2946 For *Barons* Bergen prints *Bretouns*
2949 For *damage* Bergon prints *no damage*
2964 For *þeir* Bergen prints *your*
2965 For *grace and shorte* Bergen prints *grace shorte*
2973 For *plentevus* Bergen prints *bounteuous*
2975 For *þinges* Bergen prints *kings*
2979 For *whome were* Bergen prints *whom ther wer*
2988 For *þei* Bergen prints *ye*
2994 Scribe adds *he* interline above *æ*
3020 For *þe* Bergen prints *with*; scribe adds *þe* interline with caret to indicate proper placement
- 3025 Scribe adds *grete* (not in Bergen)
3029 Scribe adds *tyme* (not in Bergen)
3050 Scribe deletes *gaue* by subpunction; for *hym grete homage* Bergen prints *hym homage*
3052 For *in grete rebellion* Bergen prints *into rebellioun*
3054-3056 Line 3055 is missing in MS, creating a short stanza
3056 For *Gaue þem libertes* Bergen prints *Gaf libertes*; for *þeir* Bergen prints *gret*
3073 For *com* Bergen prints *myhte*

- 3081 Striktethroughs are in red ink
 3083 For *leve* Bergen prints *leyn*
 3094 For *seyn befor* Bergen prints *tofor*
 3101 For *fantasie* Bergen prints *Fairye*

Book IX

- 2434 Red-ink signe-de-renvoi guides placement of the rubric, which is written in the lower margin
 2437 For *ffyrst* Bergen prints *Fiffte*
 2445 For *all his lyve* Bergen prints & *al his lyne*
 2452 For *excellent* Bergen prints *excellent of beute*
 2456-2458 MS omits line 2457 here (per Bergen): *His douhtir Isabell was weddid to Edward*
 2465 The word *sentence* is struck through in brown ink
 2474 The word *high* is inserted between lines with a caret guiding placement
 2490 For *þeir* Bergen prints *thes*
 2508 For *kyng* Bergen prints *kniht*
 2510 For *Erbelynys* Bergen prints *Gibelynes*; rubricated title for next section is inserted at inner margin (alongside end of previous section)
 2511 Line begins with blue capital A (three lines in height)
 2522 For *o verrey soþfaste light* Bergen prints *daysterre and souereyn liht* (though he notes several other manuscripts that show the variant)
 2548 For *rehersid* Bergen prints *refusid*
 2563 For *brode* Bergen prints *blood*
 2578 For *strange* Bergen prints *gret*
 2590 For *þurgh all lumbardie* Bergen prints *thoruhout al Itaile*
 2630 Strikethrough in red ink over brown ink
 2636 For *þem* Bergen prints *hym*
 2642 For *Perypon* Bergen prints *Wherupon*
 2667-2669 Line 2668 (per Bergen) not present in MS, creating a short stanza here
 2697 For *lorde* Bergen prints *lad*
 2723 The word *sore* is repeated (in lighter brown ink) in the outer margin
 2763 For *auter woo* Bergen prints *vttir foo*; a triangular arrangement of three dots marks this line in the outer margin
 2778 For *espie* Bergen prints *appese*
 2783 For *Pat on* Bergen prints *The toun*
 2796-2797 For *ledde hym forþe anon / To his worship* Bergen prints *hauyng no reward / To his disworshep*
 2805 Large capital *B* in blue begins this line, three lines high; the rubric, which has been trimmed, is written in the inner margin
 2811 For *þe* Bergen prints *hir*
 2848 Scribe deletes *his* with brown-ink strikethrough
 2862-2866 Lines are copied out of order here (per Bergen), and the misplaced line 2863 is struck through with brown-ink, creating a short stanza
 2870 For *renounyd* Bergen prints *Raymond*
 2879 For *þe* Bergen prints *his*
 2896 For *specifie* Bergen prints *certefie*
 2906 For *swet* Bergen prints *soote*
 2912 For *þe* Bergen prints *To*

2939
2961

The word *face* is struck through in red ink
For *To philipot* Bergen prints *To whom Philipot*